



Home > IFRS Sustainability Standards Navigator > IFRS S2 Climate-related Disclosures

IFRS S2 Climate-related Disclosures

Follow

Industry-based Guidance 2023 Issued

SHOW SECTIONS



Actions:

Available documents:

- ☐ Standard
- ☐ Accompanying Guidance
- ☒ Industry-based Guidance
- ☐ Basis for Conclusions

Search within Standards Collection (Optional)

- ☐ Phrase search ☐ Word search



Collapse all -

IFRS Sustainability Disclosure Standards can be used for free for personal non-commercial use, such as corporate disclosure. All other uses, such as reporting software, investment analysis, data services, and product development is not permitted without a separate licence from the IFRS Foundation. Please contact the

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	environmental or social standard, by standard			

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of (1) Tier 1 suppliers and (2) suppliers beyond Tier 1 ¹	Quantitative	Number	CG-AA-000.A

Raw Materials Sourcing

Topic Summary

The Apparel, Accessories & Footwear industry relies on many raw materials including cotton, leather, wool, rubber, and precious minerals and metals, as inputs for finished products. Sustainability impacts related to climate change, land use, resource scarcity and conflict in regions where the industry's supply chain operates affect the industry's ability to reliably source materials. The ability of entities to manage potential material shortages, supply disruptions, price volatility and reputational risks can be more difficult when supply chains lack transparency. Failure to effectively manage this issue can delay shipments and depress earnings, reduce margins, constrain revenue growth or increase costs of capital. The types of risk associated with sourcing materials can require varying solutions, including engaging with suppliers, enhancing transparency by using certification standards, using innovative alternative materials, or introducing circular economy practices. Entities that are proactive may reduce their exposure to price volatility and potential supply disruptions, while improving their brand reputation and developing new market opportunities.

Metrics

CG-AA-440a.3. (1) List of priority raw materials; for each priority raw material: (2) environmental or social factor(s) most likely to threaten sourcing, (3) discussion on business risks or opportunities associated with environmental or social factors and (4) management strategy for addressing business risks and opportunities

- 1 The entity shall disclose its priority raw materials purchased for finished goods.
 - 1.1 The entity shall identify priority raw materials using the definition of 'priority materials' outlined in the Priority Material section of the *Textile Exchange's Materials Terminology Guide*.
 - 1.2 Priority raw materials may include synthetic fibres, natural fibres, manufactured cellulosic materials, materials derived from animals and any other materials used directly to make apparel, accessories or footwear products, which may include cotton, rayon, viscose, polyester, acrylic, spandex, nylon, rubber, foam, leather, wool, cashmere, mohair, flax, silk, hemp and down.

- 1.3 The entity shall identify priority raw materials using the categorisation scheme presented in the Materials Portfolio section of the Textile Exchange's *Materials Terminology Guide*.
- 1.4 The scope of disclosure shall include priority raw materials present in finished goods and shall exclude raw materials used in packaging and manufacturing.
- 1.5 Priority raw materials include materials purchased by the entity or its suppliers for the purposes of producing the entity's finished goods.
- 1.6 If the entity is vertically integrated across the value chain and does not purchase its priority raw materials from a third-party supplier, it shall identify the priority raw materials sourced from its owned operations and used in the production of its finished goods.

2 For each priority raw material, the entity shall identify the important environmental or social factors most likely to threaten its ability to source or purchase each material.

2.1 Environmental factors may include:

- 2.1.1 Climate change impacts (for example, extreme weather events or water stress)
- 2.1.2 Regulation on greenhouse gases (GHG)
- 2.1.3 Environmental regulations for suppliers
- 2.1.4 Land use practices
- 2.1.5 Production methods that result in water pollution, soil degradation, deforestation or loss of biodiversity

2.2 Social factors may include:

- 2.2.1 Suppliers' animal welfare, labour and human rights practices
- 2.2.2 Materials sourcing from regions of conflict
- 2.2.3 Regulations on labour practices or human rights

3 For each priority raw material, the entity shall discuss the business risks and opportunities associated with environmental or social factors.

3.1 Business risks and opportunities may include:

- 3.1.1 Access to, and availability of, the priority raw material
- 3.1.2 Ability to trace the priority raw material
- 3.1.3 Price volatility of the priority raw material
- 3.1.4 Regulatory compliance issues associated with the priority raw material
- 3.1.5 Customer demand for products containing the priority raw material
- 3.1.6 The entity's brand value and reputation

- 4
- For each priority raw material, the entity shall discuss its management strategy for addressing business risks and opportunities associated with environmental or social factors most likely to threaten its ability to source priority raw materials.
- 4.1
- Relevant strategies may include:
- 4.1.1
- Enhancing supply chain monitoring and traceability of raw materials suppliers through due diligence practices, research into traceability or the use of traceability systems, technology, supplier screening, supplier audits or certifications, or a list of countries from which the entity sources each priority raw material
- 4.1.2
- Supporting raw material suppliers through supplier training or engagement programmes or introducing regenerative agricultural practices
- 4.1.3
- Partnering with industry groups or non-governmental organisations to address environmental or social factors in supplier regions
- 4.1.4
- Investing in the design phase or in research and development to identify substitutable or alternative materials less impacted by environmental and social factors
- 4.2
- If the entity identifies cotton as one of its priority raw materials, it shall discuss its vulnerability to cotton-growing regions with water stress and how it manages the risk of price variability because of sourcing cotton from these regions.
- 4.2.1
- The entity may identify its known sources of cotton for High (40%–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress using the World Resources Institute’s (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 4.3
- The entity shall disclose any relevant performance measures or targets used to assess the effectiveness of its management approach, as well as its progress against such targets.
- 4.4
- Disclosure corresponds to the Sustainable Apparel Coalition’s Higg Brand & Retail Module.

5

The entity may use the following table format to organise disclosure.

Priority Raw Material (Name)	Environmental or Social Factors	Discussion of Business Risks or Opportunities	Management Strategy

CG-AA-440a.4. (1) Amount of priority raw materials purchased, by material, and (2) amount of each priority raw material that is certified to a third-party environmental or social standard, by standard

- 1 For each priority raw material, the entity shall disclose the amount of materials purchased, in metric tons, during the reporting period.
 - 1.1 The entity shall identify priority raw materials using the definition of 'priority materials' outlined in the Priority Material section of the Textile Exchange's *Materials Terminology Guide*.
 - 1.2 Priority raw materials may include synthetic fibres, natural fibres, manufactured cellulosic materials, materials derived from animals, and any other materials used directly to make apparel, accessories, or footwear products, which may include cotton, rayon, viscose, polyester, acrylic, spandex, nylon, rubber, foam, leather, wool, cashmere, mohair, flax, silk, hemp and down.
 - 1.3 The entity shall identify priority raw materials using the categorisation scheme presented in the 'Materials Portfolio' section of the Textile Exchange's *Materials Terminology Guide*.
 - 1.4 If the entity purchases finished goods rather than unprocessed raw materials, it shall calculate the initial amount, in metric tons, of priority raw materials required for production.
 - 1.4.1 The entity shall account for material loss and wastage throughout production and should reference the Textile Exchange's *Fibre Uptake Calculations & Reporting Best Practices Guide and Fibre Conversion Methodology*.
 - 1.5 If the entity does not measure the weight of a material, it shall provide an alternative measurement, such as surface area.
 - 1.6 The purchased amount of each priority raw material shall reflect the material in its original state and should not be presented with further data manipulation, such as reporting it as 'dry weight' consistent with guidance for Global Reporting Initiative (GRI) *Disclosure 301-1 Materials used by weight or volume*.
 - 1.7 If estimation is required, the entity shall disclose the methods used.
 - 1.8 The scope of disclosure shall include priority raw materials present in finished goods and exclude raw materials used in packaging and manufacturing.
 - 1.9 Priority raw materials include materials purchased by the entity or its suppliers for the purposes of producing the entity's finished goods.
 - 1.10 If the entity is vertically integrated across the value chain and does not purchase its priority raw materials from a third-party supplier, it shall identify the

priority raw materials sourced from its owned operations and used in the production of its finished goods.

2 For each priority raw material, the entity shall disclose the amount, in metric tons, purchased that is certified to a third-party environmental or social standard, by standard.

2.1 Third-party environmental or social standards are defined as standards developed by a third party and address environmental or social factors likely to threaten an entity's ability to reliably source its priority raw materials.

2.2 Third-party environmental and social standards may include:

2.2.1 Textile Exchange's Recycled Claim Standard (RCS), Global Recycled Standard (GRS), Organic Content Standard (OCS), Responsible Down Standard (RDS), Responsible Wool Standard (RWS) and Responsible Mohair Standard (RMS)

2.2.2 Global Organic Textile Standard (GOTS)

2.2.3 Cotton Made in Africa (CmiA)

2.2.4 Fair Trade Certified

2.2.5 Organic Fair Trade

2.2.6 Leather Working Group (LWG)

2.2.7 Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) Certification

2.2.8 Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification (PEFC)

2.2.9 Better Cotton Initiative (BCI)

2.3 The scope of certified priority raw materials includes materials derived from a process certified to a third-party environmental or social standard.

2.4 The entity may disclose priority raw materials not certified to a third-party environmental or social standard, but that contribute to the entity's strategy to secure reliable sourcing.

2.4.1 Materials may include reclaimed cotton and wool, mechanically or chemically recycled natural, synthetic or semi-synthetic fibres.

2.4.2 Materials may include those certified to a standard/certification developed by the entity.

3 For each priority raw material, the entity shall discuss:

3.1 Why it has chosen the specified third-party certification(s)/standard(s)

3.2 How the certified materials contribute to managing the entity's business risks and opportunities

3.3 Any quantitative targets it has set for certified priority raw materials

4 The entity may use the following table format to organise disclosure.

Priority Raw Material (Name)	Amount Purchased (Metric Tons)	Amount Certified, By Standard	
		Certification/Standard & Associated Discussion (Technical Protocol #3 - 3.3)	Amount Certified

Volume 2—Appliance Manufacturing

Industry Description

Appliance Manufacturing industry entities design and manufacture household appliances and hand tools. Entities in this industry sell and manufacture products all over the world, primarily selling products to consumers through retailers.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Product Lifecycle Environmental Impacts	Percentage of eligible products by revenue certified to an energy efficiency certification	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by revenue	CG-AM-410a.1
	Percentage of eligible products by revenue certified to an environmental product lifecycle standard	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by revenue	CG-AM-410a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	Description of efforts to manage products' end-of-life impacts	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	CG-AM-410a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Annual production ²	Quantitative	Number of units	CG-AM-000.A

Product Lifecycle Environmental Impacts

Topic Summary

Entities in the Appliance Manufacturing industry seek to differentiate their products from those of competitors. One important differentiating factor is the lifecycle environmental impact of products and an entity's ability to design products with the entire lifecycle in mind, from creation and use to disposal. This includes appliance energy and water efficiency, which account for a significant proportion of a home's energy and water use, as well as designing for and facilitating safe end-of-life disposal and recycling. Entities designing and manufacturing products to decrease lifecycle environmental impacts are more likely to increase market share owing to a lower cost of ownership, and they may better manage increased regulation related to issues such as extended producer responsibility.

Metrics

CG-AM-410a.1. Percentage of eligible products by revenue certified to an energy efficiency certification

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its revenue from eligible products certified to an energy efficiency certification.
 - 1.1 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the revenue from products meeting the requirements for the applicable certification divided by total revenue from products eligible for certification by each certification.
 - 1.1.1 Eligible products are those in a product category for which certification exists, such as: heating and cooling product categories such as air purifiers, clothes dryers, clothes washers, dehumidifiers, dishwashers, freezers, refrigerators, air conditioners, boilers, ductless heating and cooling, furnaces, heat pumps and ventilation fans.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes products that meet the requirements of the most current version of the applicable certification requirements.

- 2.1 If the entity has products certified to a previous version of certification requirements, it shall disclose this information, including to which version its products are certified, a breakdown of how many products are certified to that version and the time line(s) for achieving certification to the most current requirements version.

- 3 For each jurisdiction where the entity sells products, the entity shall disclose the applicable certification programme.

CG-AM-410a.2. Percentage of eligible products by revenue certified to an environmental product lifecycle standard

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its revenue from eligible products certified to a third-party environmental product lifecycle standard.
 - 1.1 Environmental product lifecycle standard is defined as a certification programme or standard focused product design and materials, manufacturing processes, product performance during use-phase, and product end-of-life.
 - 1.2 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the revenue from products meeting the requirements for the applicable certification divided by total revenue from products eligible for certification by each certification.
 - 1.2.1 Eligible products are those in a product category for which certification exists, including: refrigeration appliances, washers, dryers, cooking appliances, air conditioners, microwave oven appliances, dehumidifier appliances and floor care appliances.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes products that meet the requirements of the most current version of the applicable certification requirements.
 - 2.1 If the entity has products certified to a previous version of certification requirements, it shall disclose this information, including to which version its products are certified, a breakdown of how many products are certified to that version, and its time line(s) for achieving certification to the most current requirements version.
- 3 For each jurisdiction where the entity sells products, the entity shall disclose the applicable certification programme or disclose the applicable international certification programme.

CG-AM-410a.3. Description of efforts to manage products' end-of-life impacts

- 1 The entity shall describe its efforts to manage the end-of-life impacts of its products, including those related to safe and proper disposal or recycling of constituent chemicals and other product components, which may include toxic heavy metals (for example, mercury and cadmium), rigid polymers, refrigerants and other metals (for example, steel and aluminium).
- 2 The entity shall describe the scope of its efforts, including to which product categories,

business segments or operating regions they relate.

- 3
- The entity shall discuss how it includes end-of-life considerations in product design such as:
- 3.1

Use of materials that are easily and commonly recyclable in existing recycling infrastructure
- 3.2

Eliminating or minimising the use of hazardous materials or materials that may otherwise pose environmental harm upon disposal (for example, refrigerants with ozone depleting potential or global warming potential)
- 3.3

Designing products for disassembly (i.e., designing products so they can be easily, rapidly, and cost-effectively disassembled with commonly available tools)
- 3.4

Proper labelling of products and their component materials to facilitate disassembly and recycling
- 4
- The entity shall discuss its participation in extended producer responsibility (EPR) initiatives, including:
- 4.1

Whether the entity directly conducts product take-back, recovery and recycling or if the entity supports infrastructure for product recovery and recycling through joint ventures, partnerships with retailers and others, or by funding research into recycling technologies
- 4.2

Whether the initiative is voluntary or mandatory
- 4.3

Relevant performance measures or targets for the initiative such as the total amount of material recovered and the total amount of material recycled

Volume 3—Building Products & Furnishings

-

Industry Description

Entities in the Building Products & Furnishings industry design and manufacture home improvement products, home and office furnishings, and structural wood building materials. The industry’s products include flooring, ceiling tiles, home and office furniture and fixtures, wood trusses, plywood, panelling and lumber. Entities typically sell their products through distribution channels to retail stores or through independent or entity-owned dealerships.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management in Manufacturing	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	CG-BF-130a.1
Product Lifecycle Environmental Impacts	Description of efforts to manage product lifecycle impacts and meet demand for sustainable products	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	CG-BF-410a.1
	(1) Weight of end-of-life material recovered, (2) percentage of recovered materials recycled	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%) by weight	CG-BF-410a.2
Wood Supply Chain Management	(1) Total weight of wood fibre materials purchased, (2) percentage from third-party certified forestlands, (3) percentage by standard and (4) percentage certified to other wood fibre standards, (5) percentage by standard ³	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%) by weight	CG-BF-430a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Annual production ⁴	Quantitative	See note	CG-BF-000.A
Area of manufacturing facilities ⁵	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	CG-BF-000.B

Energy Management in Manufacturing

Topic Summary

The Building Products & Furnishings industry creates value through energy-intensive manufacturing processes. Purchased electricity represents the largest share of energy

consumption across the industry, while entities also may use fossil fuel energy on-site. The price of conventional grid electricity and volatility of fossil fuel prices may increase because of evolving climate change regulations and new incentives for energy efficiency and renewable energy, among other factors, while alternative energy sources become more cost-competitive. Decisions regarding energy sourcing and type, as well as the use of alternative energy, can create trade-offs related to the energy supply's cost and reliability for operations. Since the industry operates on relatively narrow profit margins, reductions in energy consumption may have a significant influence on financial performance. The way an entity manages energy efficiency, its reliance on different types of energy and their associated sustainability risks, and access alternative energy sources are likely to impact financial performance.

Metrics

CG-BF-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of

Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.

3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Product Lifecycle Environmental Impacts

Topic Summary

Depending on the specific building product or furnishing, significant environmental impacts can arise during raw material sourcing, transportation, manufacturing, use-phase or end-of-life. Increasing consumer and regulatory preference for less impactful products has spawned the development of more sustainable products, broadly termed 'green building materials'. In addition, product lifecycle certification has arisen as a tool for entities and their customers to assess and improve a product's lifecycle impact. Certification programmes typically examine specific sustainability characteristics of a product category and include the use of closed-loop materials that minimise a product's end-of-life environmental impacts and reduce the need for extracting or producing virgin materials. Through product innovation and design that facilitates end-of-life product recovery and the use of less impactful materials, the adoption of product certification programmes, and partnerships with customers, manufacturers of building products can improve lifecycle impacts, reduce regulatory risk, meet growing customer demand and realise cost savings.

Metrics

CG-BF-410a.1. Description of efforts to manage product lifecycle impacts and meet demand for sustainable products

- 1 The entity shall discuss strategies to assess and manage the environmental impact of products throughout their lifecycle.
 - 1.1 Relevant strategies and efforts to assess product lifecycle impacts include the use of environmentally focused design principles, and the use of sustainability performance standards, screening tools and sampling methods, among others, including the operational processes used for these assessments.
 - 1.2 Relevant strategies and efforts to manage product lifecycle impacts include changes in materials selection, assessment of upstream environmental impacts, changes in manufacturing (resource intensity), recycled and renewable materials use, optimisation of packaging, design for consolidated shipping, design of low-energy-consumption products, design for product take-back and labelling for recycling, among others.
- 2 The entity shall discuss factors that drive demand for its sustainable building and furnishings products, including green building certification programmes, jurisdictional procurement criteria, demand from retailers or retail consumer demand.
- 3 The entity shall describe the scope of its efforts including to which product categories, business segments or operating regions they relate.
- 4 The entity may discuss its use of Life Cycle Assessment (LCA) and Environmental Product Declarations (EPD) in the context of its approach to reducing environmental impact and maximising product resource efficiency.
 - 4.1 Improvements to the environmental efficiency of products should be discussed in terms of LCA functional unit service parameters (time, extent and quality of function).
 - 4.2 LCA should be based on ISO 14040 and ISO 14044. EPD should be based on ISO 14025 and ISO 21930:2017 for construction products.
- 5 The entity may disclose the percentage of its products certified to third-party multi-attribute or single-attribute sustainability standards.
- 6 The entity may describe its extended producer responsibility (EPR) efforts, including:
 - 6.1 How end-of-life considerations are incorporated into product design, including using materials that are easily and commonly recyclable in existing recycling infrastructure
 - 6.2 Designing products for disassembly (designing products so they can be easily, rapidly and cost-effectively disassembled with commonly available tools)
 - 6.3 Proper labelling of products and their component materials to facilitate disassembly and recycling.

CG-BF-410a.2. (1) Weight of end-of-life material recovered, (2) percentage of recovered materials recycled

- 1 The entity shall disclose the weight, in metric tons, of materials recovered, including those recovered through recycling services, product take-back programmes and refurbishment services.
 - 1.1 The scope of disclosure shall include products, materials and parts at the end of their useful life that would have otherwise been discarded as waste or used for energy recovery, but have instead been collected.
 - 1.2 The scope of disclosure shall include both materials physically handled by the entity and materials of which the entity does not take physical possession, but for which it has contracted with a third party the task of collection for the express purpose of reuse, recycling or refurbishment.
 - 1.3 The scope of disclosure excludes products and parts that are under warranty and have been collected for repairs.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of end-of-life materials recovered that were recycled or remanufactured.
 - 2.1 Recycled and remanufactured materials are defined as waste materials reprocessed or treated by means of production or manufacturing processes and made into a final product or a component for incorporation into a product.
 - 2.2 The scope of recycled materials includes materials used, reused or reclaimed.
 - 2.2.1 Reused materials are defined as those recovered products or components of products used for the same purpose for which they were conceived.
 - 2.2.2 Reclaimed materials are defined as those processed to recover or regenerate a usable product.
 - 2.3 The scope of recycled materials includes materials sent for further recycling through the transfer to a third party for the express purpose of reuse, recycling or refurbishment.
 - 2.4 The scope of recycled and remanufactured products includes primary recycled materials, co-products (outputs of equal value to primary recycled materials), and by-products (outputs of lesser value than primary recycled materials).
 - 2.5 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the weight of incoming recovered material recycled or remanufactured divided by the total weight of incoming recovered material.
 - 2.6 Portions of products and materials discarded in landfills are not considered recycled. Only the portions of products directly incorporated into new products, co-products or by-products shall be included in the percentage recycled.
 - 2.7 Materials incinerated, including for energy recovery, are not considered reused, recycled or reclaimed.
 - 2.7.1 Energy recovery is defined as the use of combustible waste to generate energy through direct incineration, with or without other waste, but with

recovery of the heat.

- 3 The entity may disclose:
 - 3.1 Whether it directly conducts product take-back, recovery and recycling or if it contracts with a third party the task of collection for the express purpose of reuse, recycling or refurbishment
 - 3.2 If it supports infrastructure for product recovery and recycling through joint ventures, partnerships or by funding research into recycling technologies
 - 3.3 Whether its product take-back, recovery and recycling efforts are voluntary or mandatory
 - 3.4 Relevant performance measures or targets for its product take-back, recovery and recycling efforts such as the total amount of material recovered and the total amount of material recycled

Wood Supply Chain Management

Topic Summary

The Building Products & Furnishings industry uses large amounts of wood sourced from forests worldwide. Unsustainable production and timber harvesting can result in adverse environmental and social impacts, including biodiversity loss and harm to the livelihoods of forest-dependent communities. Entities inadvertently may source wood from areas susceptible to unsustainable forestry practices. Reports of illegal logging, environmental pollution or adverse impacts on communities can result in reputational repercussions that can damage an entity's brand value, affecting demand for their products. In addition, regulations banning the importation of illegally produced wood can result in supply constraints, penalties and further damage to brand value. To mitigate these risks, entities increasingly are adopting third-party certifications verifying wood is grown and harvested in a sustainable manner. Obtaining wood sourcing certifications also can provide entities with a potential growth channel because they can satisfy customer demand for certified products.

Metrics

CG-BF-430a.1. (1) Total weight of wood fibre materials purchased, (2) percentage from third-party certified forestlands, (3) percentage by standard and (4) percentage certified to other wood fibre standards, (5) percentage by standard

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of wood fibre materials (in air-dried metric tons) purchased during the reporting period.
 - 1.1 Wood fibre materials include wood-fibre-based raw materials, components, and semi-finished and finished goods.
 - 1.2 The scope of wood-fibre-based materials includes all inputs processed to be sold as finished goods, including recycled raw materials, virgin raw materials and goods consumed directly in the production process, excluding biomass for energy.

1.3 If wood fibre comprises a portion of a material, component or product, the entity shall include the portion in the total amount.

2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its total wood fibre materials purchased that have been sourced from forestlands certified to a third-party forest management standard.

2.1 Third-party forest management standards are those certifying forests are harvested in a sustainable manner and ensuring adherence to environmental and social criteria including legal compliance, land rights, community and worker relations, environmental impact and biodiversity, forest management plans and practices, land use, wildlife habitat conservation and water conservation, among others.

2.2 Third-party forest management standards include:

2.2.1 American Tree Farm (ATFS)

2.2.2 Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) (Forest Management and Chain of Custody certifications)

2.2.3 Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification (PEFC) Chain of Custody certifications

2.2.4 Forest certification systems endorsed by the PEFC

2.2.5 Sustainable Forest Initiative (SFI) Forest Management and Chain of Custody certifications

2.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the weight (in air-dried metric tons) of the entity's wood fibre materials purchased during the reporting period sourced from forestlands certified to one or more of the third-party forest management standards divided by the total weight (in air-dried metric tons) of wood fibre materials purchased during the reporting period.

2.3.1 Wood fibre certified to more than one third-party forest management standard shall be accounted for by the entity only once.

3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its total wood fibre materials sourced from forestlands certified to each applicable third-party forest management standard, separately by standard.

3.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the weight (in air-dried metric tons) of the entity's wood fibre materials purchased during the reporting period sourced from forestlands certified to each applicable third-party forest management standard divided by the total weight (in air-dried metric tons) of wood fibre materials purchased during the reporting period.

3.1.1 Wood-fibre certified to more than one third-party forest management standard shall be accounted for by the entity in its calculations for each applicable standard.

- 4 The entity shall disclose the percentage of total wood fibre materials purchased that have been certified to wood fibre standards.
 - 4.1 Wood fibre standards exclude third-party forest management standards.
 - 4.2 Wood fibre standards include:
 - 4.2.1 SFI Certified Fibre Sourcing Standard
 - 4.2.2 FSC Controlled Wood Standard
 - 4.2.3 PEFC Controlled Wood Standard
 - 4.2.4 Recycled wood fibre standards that include post- and pre-consumer reclaimed material (for example, PEFC Recycled Label and FSC Recycled Label)
 - 4.2.5 Any other due diligence standards related to wood fibre sourcing requirements for wood fibre from non-certified forestlands
 - 4.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the weight (in air-dried metric tons) of the entity's wood fibre materials purchased during the reporting period certified to wood fibre standards divided by the total weight (in air-dried metric tons) of wood fibre materials purchased during the reporting period.
 - 4.3.1 Wood-fibre certified to more than one wood fibre standard shall be accounted for by the entity only once.
- 5 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its wood fibre materials purchased that have been certified to wood fibre standards, separately by standard.
 - 5.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the weight (in air-dried metric tons) of the entity's wood fibre materials purchased during the reporting period certified to each applicable wood fibre standard divided by the total weight (in air-dried metric tons) of wood fibre materials purchased during the reporting period.
 - 5.1.1 Wood-fibre certified to more than one third-party wood fibre standard shall be accounted for by the entity in its calculations for each applicable standard.

Note to **CG-BF-430a.1**

- 1 The entity shall describe its practices for sourcing wood fibre materials from forestlands not certified to a third-party forest management standard and for sourcing wood fibre materials not certified to other wood fibre certification standards.
- 2 The entity shall describe its policies to verify the forestry management and harvesting practices of suppliers, which include codes of conduct, audits or contracts.
- 3 The scope of disclosure shall include how the entity's sourcing practices and policies consider the following criteria:

- 3.1

Wood legality and compliance with applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations
- 3.2

Wood sourced from areas of protected conservation status or high biodiversity value
- 3.3

Logging in or near areas of endangered species habitat
- 3.4

Logging in or near areas of indigenous peoples' land
- 3.5

The forestry management and harvesting practices of suppliers, including environmental impact assessments or forestry management plans
- 3.6

The use of genetically modified organisms (GMOs), pesticides or other chemicals in forests
- 3.7

Criteria outlined in the definition of SFI 'controversial sources', the definition of FSC 'controlled wood' or the equivalent
- 4

The entity also may disclose its wood fibre sources (for example, from corporate, private or government owned forestlands and whether fibre is grown domestically or internationally) and the potential risks associated with procuring fibre from these sources.

Volume 4—E-Commerce

-

Industry Description

E-Commerce industry entities provide an online marketplace for other entities or individuals to sell their goods and services, as well as retailers and wholesalers that provide an exclusively web-based platform for consumers to buy goods and services. Entities in this industry sell to consumers as well as to other businesses. Because of the accessibility of e-commerce sites, the industry is a global marketplace for buyers and sellers.

Note: This industry scope applies only to 'pure-play' e-commerce operations and does not address the manufacturing or brick-and-mortar retail operations of entities. Many consumer goods manufacturers and retailers have incorporated or are in the process of incorporating an e-commerce component to their business. Separate standards exist for the Multiline and Specialty Retailers & Distributors (CG-MR); Apparel, Accessories & Footwear (CG-AA); and Toys & Sporting Goods (CG-TS) industries. Depending on the specific activities and operations of entities in these industries, disclosure topics and metrics associated with the E-Commerce industry also may be relevant.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	CG-EC-130a.1
Hardware Infrastructure Energy & Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	CG-EC-130a.2
	Discussion of the integration of environmental considerations into strategic planning for data centre needs	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	CG-EC-130a.3
Product Packaging & Distribution	Total greenhouse gas (GHG) footprint of product shipments	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	CG-EC-410a.1
	Discussion of strategies to reduce the environmental impact of product delivery	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	CG-EC-410a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Entity-defined measure of user activity ⁶	Quantitative	Number	CG-EC-000.A
Data processing capacity, percentage outsourced ⁷	Quantitative	See note	CG-EC-000.B
Number of shipments	Quantitative	Number	CG-EC-000.C

Hardware Infrastructure Energy & Water Management

Topic Summary

The E-Commerce industry uses a large part of the energy it consumes to power critical hardware and IT infrastructure in data centres. Data centres must be powered continuously, and disruptions to the energy supply can have a material impact on operations, depending on the disruption magnitude and timing. Entities also face a trade-off between energy and water consumption for their data centre cooling needs. Cooling data centres with water instead of chillers improves energy efficiency, but this method can result in dependence on potentially scarce local water resources. Entities that effectively manage this issue may benefit from cost savings and minimise reputational risks, because concerns over energy and water use are growing.

Metrics

CG-EC-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other

green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.

3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

5 The entity may disclose the trailing twelve-month (TTM) weighted average power usage effectiveness (PUE) for its data centres.

5.1 PUE is defined as the ratio of the total amount of power a computer data centre facility uses to the amount of power delivered to computing equipment.

5.2 If disclosing PUE, the entity shall follow the guidance and calculation methodology described in *PUE™: A Comprehensive Examination of the Metric* (2014), published by ASHRAE and The Green Grid Association.

CG-EC-130a.2. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.

1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.

- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge;
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea.
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

CG-EC-130a.3. Discussion of the integration of environmental considerations into strategic planning for data centre needs

- 1 The entity shall discuss the environmental considerations integrated into siting, design, construction, refurbishment and operational specifications for its data centres, including factors related to energy and water consumption.
 - 1.1 Environmental factors may include energy-efficiency standards; layout design, such as 'hot aisle/cold aisle' layouts; and location-based factors, such as accounting for regional humidity, average temperature, water availability and groundwater stress, water permits, jurisdictional carbon legislation or pricing, and the carbon intensity of electricity from the local grid.
- 2 The scope of disclosure shall include data centres currently owned and operated by the entity, data centres that have been planned or are under construction, and outsourced data centre services.

- 3 The entity shall discuss how it incorporates environmental considerations into decisions related to its data centres made during the reporting period, including if they influenced decisions to insource or outsource data centre services, improve efficiency of existing data centres or construct new data centres.

Product Packaging & Distribution

Topic Summary

A significant part of the E-Commerce industry's added value comes from an entity's ability to move a wide array of goods efficiently to consumers who would otherwise have to personally travel to collect the goods from brick-and-mortar stores. As the volume of packaging shipments increases, the industry may become more exposed to environmental externalities, such as carbon pricing and rising fuel costs that present risks associated with the shipping of products. While entities that outsource shipping and logistics have less control over the specific processes of shipping operations, they still can select suppliers with more energy-efficient business practices. Because this is a highly competitive and low-margin industry, the ability to reduce shipping costs through fuel reduction and more efficient routing may permit entities to pass those savings on to their customers. E-commerce entities also have an incentive to minimise the use of packaging. Efficient packaging can decrease costs by reducing the amount of purchased packaging material, as well as saving logistics costs because more products may fit into a single shipping load.

Metrics

CG-EC-410a.1. Total greenhouse gas (GHG) footprint of product shipments

- 1 The entity shall disclose the complete tank-to-wheels greenhouse gas (GHG) footprint, in metric tons of CO₂-e, associated with outbound shipment of the entity's products.
 - 1.1 Tank-to-wheels emissions relate to vehicle processes and exclude upstream emissions associated with primary energy production (well-to-tank emissions).
 - 1.2 The entity shall calculate its disclosure according to EN 16258:2012 – Methodology for calculation and declaration of energy consumption and GHG emissions of transport services (freight and passengers).
 - 1.2.1 Calculations shall be consistent with the methodology used to calculate the 'tank-to-wheels GHG emissions (Gt)' result that is described in EN 16258:2012.
 - 1.2.2 Determination of transportation system scope, boundaries and any necessary allocations shall be consistent with the methodology described in EN 16258:2012.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes emissions from all freight transportation and logistics activities associated with the outbound shipment of the entity's products, including those from contract carriers and outsourced freight forwarding services and logistics providers (Scope 3) as well as those from the entity's own assets (Scope 1).
- 3 The scope of disclosure includes emissions from all modes of transportation, such as

road freight, air freight, barge transport, marine transport, and rail transport.

- 4 Consistent with EN 16258:2012, disclosure may be based on calculations from a mix of categories of emissions values (specific measured values, transport operator vehicle-type- or route-type-specific values, transport operator fleet values and default values).
- 5 If relevant and necessary for interpretation of disclosure, the entity shall describe its allocation methods, emissions values, boundaries, mix of transport services used and other information.

CG-EC-410a.2. Discussion of strategies to reduce the environmental impact of product delivery

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategies to reduce the environmental impact of fulfilment and product delivery, including impacts associated with packaging materials and those associated with product transportation.
- 2 Relevant strategies to discuss may include:
 - 2.1 Discussion of logistics selection, mode selection and management (for example, rail transport vs air freight transport) or operation for route efficiency
 - 2.2 Discussion of packaging choices that may include decisions to use recycled or renewable (for example, bio-based plastic) packaging material, decisions to optimise the amount of packaging materials used (for example, source reduction), use of refillable or reusable packaging, and design for efficient shipping and transport
 - 2.3 Discussion of fuel choices and vehicle choices for fleets owned or operated by the entity, such as decisions to use renewable and low-emission fuels and low-emission vehicles
 - 2.4 Other relevant strategies, such as efforts to reduce idling of vehicles owned or operated by the entity, innovations to improve the efficiency of 'last-mile' delivery and strategies to optimise delivery times to reduce traffic congestion

Volume 5—Household & Personal Products

Industry Description

Household & Personal Products industry entities manufacture a wide range of goods for personal and commercial consumption, including cosmetics, household and industrial cleaning supplies, soaps and detergents, sanitary paper products, household batteries, razors and kitchen utensils. Household and personal products entities operate globally and typically sell their products to mass merchants, grocery stores, membership club stores, drug stores, high-frequency stores, distributors and e-commerce retailers. Some entities sell products through independent representatives rather than third-party retail establishments.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	CG-HP-140a.1
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	CG-HP-140a.2
Environmental & Social Impacts of Palm Oil Supply Chain	Amount of palm oil sourced, percentage certified through the Roundtable on Sustainable Palm Oil (RSPO) supply chains as (a) Identity Preserved, (b) Segregated, (c) Mass Balance or (d) Book & Claim	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	CG-HP-430a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Units of products sold, total weight of products sold	Quantitative	Number, Metric tons (t)	CG-HP-000.A
Number of manufacturing facilities	Quantitative	Number	CG-HP-000.B

Water Management

Topic Summary

Water is vital to the Household & Personal Products industry, both as a coolant in manufacturing processes and as a main input for many of the industry's products. Water is becoming a scarce resource around the world because of population growth and increasing

consumption, rapid urbanisation, and declining supplies because of subsurface aquifer depletion, drought and climate change. Many entities in this industry have operations in regions of the world facing water scarcity. Without careful planning, entities could face increased costs or lose water access in these regions, which may be a risk to production. Having rigorous checks in place to ensure a steady supply of water to all factories, as well as investing in technology to increase water use efficiency, will help entities reduce water-related risks as water scarcity becomes an increasingly global issue.

Metrics

CG-HP-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea.
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.

- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

CG-HP-140a.2. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits
 - 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
 - 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
 - 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.
- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.

- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:
 - 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
 - 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
 - 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
 - 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
 - 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
 - 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations
 - 5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

- 6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

Environmental & Social Impacts of Palm Oil Supply Chain

Topic Summary

Palm oil has increased in popularity as a cheap input for a wide range of goods in the Household & Personal Products industry, including cleaning products, candles and cosmetics. Palm oil harvesting in specific regions of the world may contribute to deforestation, GHG emissions and other environmental and social problems. If not sourced responsibly, palm oil materials contribute to environmental and social externalities that can present reputational and regulatory risks for entities. Furthermore, entities in this industry are exposed to the risk of supply chain disruptions, input price increases and reputational damage associated with environmental and social externalities from palm oil sourcing. Entities face pressure to track and responsibly source palm oil and ensure minimum working condition standards in the supply chain, because palm oil production often is associated with labour issues. Implementing sourcing standards can reduce these risks, as can product-design phase innovations to reduce dependence on controversial materials such as palm oil.

Metrics

CG-HP-430a.1. Amount of palm oil sourced, percentage certified through the Roundtable on Sustainable Palm Oil (RSPO) supply chains as (a) Identity Preserved, (b) Segregated, (c) Mass Balance or (d) Book & Claim

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount, in metric tons, of palm oil sourced during the reporting period.
 - 1.1 The scope of palm oil includes palm kernel oil and palm kernel expeller.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage, on a weight basis, of palm oil it sourced that has been third-party certified to bear a Roundtable on Sustainable Palm Oil (RSPO) claim for each of the RSPO supply chain models: (a) Identity Preserved (IP), (b) Segregated (SG), (c) Mass Balance (MB) or (d) Book & Claim (B&C).
 - 2.1 B&C transactions are represented by 'RSPO Credits' purchased in the RSPO PalmTrace platform.
 - 2.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the weight in each respective RSPO supply chain model (IP, SG, MB or B&C) of RSPO-certified palm oil sourced by the entity divided by the total weight, in metric tons, of palm oil sourced by the entity.
- 3 The entity may discuss other strategies, approaches and mechanisms used to manage risks and opportunities associated with the environmental and social impacts of palm oil sourcing.

Volume 6—Multiline and Specialty Retailers & Distributors

Industry Description

The Multiline and Specialty Retailers & Distributors industry encompasses a variety of retailing categories such as department stores, mass merchants, home products stores and warehouse clubs, as well as a smaller segment of distributors like electronics wholesalers and automotive wholesalers. These entities (except for the distribution segment) commonly manage global supply chains to anticipate consumer demands, keep costs low and keep products stocked in their brick-and-mortar storefronts. This is a highly competitive industry in which each category generally has a small number of important players characterised by generally low margins. The relatively substitutable nature of retail makes entities in this industry especially susceptible to reputational risks.

Note: Separate standards exist for the Food Retailers & Distributors (FB-FR), Drug Retailers (HC-DR), E-Commerce (CG-EC) and Apparel, Accessories & Footwear (CG-AA) industries. Retail entities involved in food or drug retail, e-commerce, or apparel, accessories and footwear manufacturing should also consider the disclosure topics and metrics outlined in these other standards.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management in Retail & Distribution	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	CG-MR-130a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of: (1) retail locations and (2) distribution centres	Quantitative	Number	CG-MR-000.A
Total area of: (1) retail space and (2) distribution centres	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	CG-MR-000.B

Energy Management in Retail & Distribution

Topic Summary

Entities in this industry require significant amounts of energy for retail facilities and warehouses. An increasing number of greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions regulations and incentives for energy efficiency and renewable energy may result in price increases for conventional electricity sources while making alternative sources more cost-competitive. Fossil fuel-based energy production and consumption contribute to significant environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution. Energy sourcing decisions can create trade-offs related to energy supply costs and operational reliability. Overall energy efficiency and access to alternative energy sources are becoming increasingly important for entities to manage. Efficiency in this area can have financial implications through direct cost savings, which are particularly beneficial in this low-margin industry.

Metrics

CG-MR-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.

- 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
- 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
- 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.
- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Extractives & Minerals Processing Sector -

Volume 7—Coal Operations -

Industry Description

The Coal Operations industry includes entities that mine coal and those that manufacture coal products. Mining activity covers both underground and surface mining, and thermal and metallurgical coal.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	EM-CO-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-CO-110a.2
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	EM-CO-140a.1
	Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	EM-CO-140a.2
Reserves Valuation & Capital Expenditures	Sensitivity of coal reserve levels to future price projection scenarios that account for a price on carbon emissions	Quantitative	Million metric tons (Mt)	EM-CO-420a.1
	Estimated carbon dioxide emissions embedded in proven coal reserves	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	EM-CO-420a.2
	Discussion of how price and demand for coal or climate regulation influence the capital expenditure strategy for	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-CO-420a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	exploration, acquisition and development of assets			

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Production of thermal coal	Quantitative	Million metric tons (Mt)	EM-CO-000.A
Production of metallurgical coal	Quantitative	Million metric tons (Mt)	EM-CO-000.B

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Coal operations are energy intensive and generate significant direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, including carbon dioxide from fuel use and methane released from coal beds during mining and post-mining activities. Regulatory efforts to reduce GHG emissions in response to the risks posed by climate change may result in higher operating and capital expenditures based on the magnitude of their direct emissions. Operational efficiencies can be achieved through the cost-effective reduction of GHG emissions. Such efficiencies can mitigate the potential financial impact of increased fuel costs from regulations that limit—or put a price on—GHG emissions.

Metrics

EM-CO-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆) and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e), and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated

for emissions.

- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 These emissions include direct emissions of GHGs from stationary or mobile sources; these sources include equipment at mine sites, mine mouth electric generating facilities, coal seam methane emissions, production and processing facilities, storage facilities, office buildings, and transportation (marine, road, and rail).
 - 2.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.2.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* provided by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.2.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* provided by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.2.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.2.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.2.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.2.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 2.3 GHG emission data shall be consolidated according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which is generally aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the GHG Protocol as well as:
 - 2.3.1 The financial approach detailed in Chapter 3 of the IPIECA/API/OGP *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for Reporting Greenhouse Gas Emissions*, 2nd Edition, 2011 (hereafter, the 'IPIECA GHG Guidelines')
 - 2.3.2 The approach provided by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary,' of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*
- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or

reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.

3.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:

3.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)

3.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)

3.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)

3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) that are covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).

3.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.

3.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.

4 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.

5 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure program) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.

6 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

EM-CO-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.

1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined according to *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).

- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Water Management

Topic Summary

Coal operations have an impact on both the quality and quantity of local water resources. Coal operations are water intensive. The use of water in coal washing to remove sulphur, cool drilling equipment and transport coal in slurry pipelines can impact resources. The severity of these risks can vary depending on the region's water availability and the regulatory environment. Reducing water use and contamination also could create operational efficiencies for entities and lower their operating costs. Wastewater treatment and discharge often is regulated by jurisdictional authorities. Violating limits on selenium, sulphate and dissolved solids could affect coal operations entities through significant penalties, compliance costs, delays in production or higher costs related to mine closure.

Metrics

EM-CO-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all of its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose its water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose its water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

EM-CO-140a.2. Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance, including violations of a technology-based standard and exceedances of quantity or quality-based standards.

- 2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations, which include the discharge of a hazardous substance, violation of pre-treatment requirements or total maximum daily load (TMDL) exceedances.
 - 2.1 Typical parameters of concern include selenium, total dissolved solids (TDS), sulphate, total suspended solids (TSS) and pH.
- 3 The scope of disclosure shall only include incidents of non-compliance that resulted in a formal enforcement action(s).
 - 3.1 Formal enforcement actions are defined as governmental recognised actions that address a violation or threatened violation of water quantity or quality laws, regulations, policies or orders, and can result in administrative penalty orders, administrative orders and judicial actions, among others.
- 4 Violations shall be disclosed, regardless of their measurement methodology or frequency. These include violations for:
 - 4.1 Continuous discharges, limitations, standards and prohibitions that are generally expressed as maximum daily, weekly or monthly averages; and
 - 4.2 Non-continuous discharges, limitations that are generally expressed in terms of frequency, total mass, maximum rate of discharge and mass or concentration of specified pollutants.

Reserves Valuation & Capital Expenditures

Topic Summary

Coal entities may be unable to extract a significant proportion of their coal reserves if greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions are controlled to limit global temperature increases. Stewardship of capital resources while considering medium- to long-term trends, particularly related to climate change mitigation actions, is critical to prevent asset impairment and maintain profitability and creditworthiness. Globally, regulations and policies are and may continue to be put into place to limit GHG emissions from coal-fired power plants—the customers of coal entities—thus reducing demand for and the price of coal. Coal demand also is being affected by regulations governing other harmful air emissions that apply to coal-fired power plants. An expansion of GHG-mitigation regulations may increase the magnitude of potential financial impacts in the medium to long term. Along with improved competitiveness of alternative energy technologies, these jurisdictional regulations and policies pose long-term risks for the reserves and capital investments of coal operations entities.

Metrics

EM-CO-420a.1. Sensitivity of coal reserve levels to future price projection scenarios that account for a price on carbon emissions

- 1 The entity shall perform a sensitivity analysis of its reserves to determine how several future scenarios may affect the determination of whether the reserves are proven or probable.

- 2 The entity shall analyse the sensitivity of its current proven and probable reserves using the price trajectories published by the International Energy Agency (IEA) in its World Energy Outlook (WEO) publication, including:
 - 2.1 Current Policies Scenario, which assumes no changes in policies from the mid-point of the year of publication of the WEO
 - 2.2 New Policies Scenario, which assumes that broad policy commitments and plans that have been announced by countries—including national pledges to reduce greenhouse gas emissions and plans to phase out fossil-energy subsidies—occur, even if the measures to implement these commitments have yet to be identified or announced. This broadly serves as the IEA baseline scenario.
 - 2.3 Sustainable Development Scenario, which assumes an energy pathway occurs that is consistent with the goal of limiting the global increase in temperature to 1.5°C by limiting concentration of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere.
 - 2.4 The entity shall consider the WEO scenarios as a normative reference, thus any updates to the WEO made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.
 - 2.5 Reserves are defined as mineral deposits that could be economically and legally extracted or produced at the time of the reserve determination.
 - 2.6 Proven reserves are reserves for which (a) quantity is computed from dimensions revealed in outcrops, trenches, workings or drill holes; grade or quality are computed from the results of detailed sampling and (b) the sites for inspection, sampling and measurement are spaced so closely and the geographical character is so well defined that size, shape, depth and mineral content of reserves are well established.
 - 2.7 Probable reserves are reserves for which quantity and grade or quality are computed from information like that used for proven (measured) reserves, but the sites for inspection, sampling and measurement are farther apart or are otherwise less adequately spaced. The degree of assurance, although lower than that for proven (measured) reserves, is high enough to assume continuity between points of observation.
- 3 The entity shall conduct a reserves sensitivity analysis and disclose, in the aggregate, an estimate of reserves estimated for each product type based on different price and cost criteria, such as a range of prices and costs that may reasonably be achieved, including standardised futures prices or management's own forecasts.
- 4 The entity shall also disclose the price and cost schedules and assumptions on which disclosed values are based.
- 5 The entity may summarise its findings in the following table format:
Table 3. Sensitivity of Reserves to Prices By Principal Product Type and Price Scenario

Price Case (Scenario)	Proven Reserves		Probable Reserves	
	Coal (tons)	Product A (measure)	Coal (tons)	Product A (measure)
Current Policies Scenario (base)				
New Policies Scenario				
Sustainable Development Scenario				

- 6 The entity may disclose the sensitivity of its reserve levels in other price and demand scenarios in addition to those described above, particularly if these scenarios differ depending on the type of coal reserves, regulatory environment in the countries or regions where mining occurs, end-use of the entity's products, or other factors.
- 7 For additional sensitivity analyses, the entity should consider disclosing the following, per the Task Force on Climate-Related Financial Disclosures (TCFD) Recommendations Report Figure 8 as well as the Implementing the Recommendations of the TCFD Report, Section E:
- 7.1 The alternative scenarios used, including other 2°C or lower scenarios
 - 7.2 Critical input parameters, assumptions, and analytical choices for the climate-related scenarios used, particularly as they relate to key areas such as policy assumptions, energy deployment pathways, technology pathways, and related timing assumptions
 - 7.3 Time frames used for scenarios, including short-, medium-, and long-term milestones (e.g., how organisations consider timing of potential future implications under the scenarios used)

EM-CO-420a.2. Estimated carbon dioxide emissions embedded in proven coal reserves

- 1 The entity shall calculate and disclose an estimate of the carbon dioxide emissions embedded in its proven coal reserves.
- 1.1 This estimate applies a factor for potential CO₂ only and does not include an estimate for all potential greenhouse gas emissions because these are dependent on downstream use (for example, utility electricity generation, industrial heating and electricity generation, cement production or steel production).
- 2 Estimated potential carbon dioxide emissions from proven coal reserves shall be calculated according to the following formula, derived from Meinshausen et al:

- 2.1 $E = R \times V \times C$, where:
 - 2.1.1 E are the potential emissions in kilograms of carbon dioxide (kg CO₂)
 - 2.1.2 R are the proven reserves in gigagrams (Gg)
 - 2.1.3 V is the net calorific value in terajoules per gigagram (TJ/Gg)
 - 2.1.4 C is the effective carbon dioxide emission factor in kilograms CO₂ per terajoule (kg/TJ)

- 3 In the absence of data specific to the entity's coal reserves, carbon content shall be calculated using default data for each major type of coal resource published by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) in its *2006 IPCC Guidelines for National Greenhouse Gas Inventories*.
 - 3.1 The entity shall use default carbon content values per unit of energy listed in IPCC Table 1.3 Default Values of Carbon Content, Volume 2: Energy, Chapter 1.
 - 3.2 The entity shall use calorific values per weight of coal resource contained in IPCC Table 1.2 Default Net Calorific Values (NCVs) and Lower and Upper Limit of the 95% Confidence Intervals, Volume 2: Energy, Chapter 1.
- 4 The entity shall use engineering estimates to determine the weight of its coal reserves in gigagrams.
- 5 For other assumptions required to estimate the carbon content of coal reserves, the entity shall rely on guidance from the IPCC, Greenhouse Gas Protocol, US Energy Information Agency (EIA) or the International Energy Agency (IEA).

EM-CO-420a.3. Discussion of how price and demand for coal or climate regulation influence the capital expenditure strategy for exploration, acquisition and development of assets

- 1 The entity shall discuss how projections for price and demand for coal and the path of air quality and climate regulation influence the entity's capital expenditure (CAPEX) strategy.
 - 1.1 This discussion should include the entity's projections and assumptions about future coal prices and the likelihood that certain price and demand scenarios occur.
- 2 The entity shall discuss the implications of price and demand scenario planning (EM-CO-420a.1) and how they may affect decisions to explore, acquire and develop new reserves.
- 3 The entity may discuss factors that materially influence its CAPEX decision making, which may include:
 - 3.1 How the scope of air quality and climate change regulation—such as which countries, regions or industries are likely to be impacted—may influence where

the entity focuses its exploration and development

- 3.2 Its view of the alignment between the time horizon during which price and demand for coal may be affected by climate regulation and time horizons for returns on capital expenditures on reserves
- 3.3 How the structure of climate regulations—a carbon tax versus cap-and-trade—may differently affect price and demand, and thus the entity's capital expenditure decision making

- 4 The entity may discuss how these trends affect decision-making in the context of the various types of reserve expenditures, including development of assets, acquisition of properties with proven reserves, acquisition of properties with unproven resources and exploration activities.

Volume 8—Construction Materials

Industry Description

Construction Materials entities have global operations and produce construction materials for sale to construction entities or wholesale distributors. These primarily include cement and aggregates, but also glass, plastic materials, insulation, bricks and roofing material. Materials producers operate their own quarries, mining crushed stone or sand and gravel. They may also purchase raw materials from the mining and petroleum industries.

Note: Entities producing wood-building products are included the Building Products & Furnishings (CG-BF) industry, Forestry Management industry (RR-FM), and Pulp & Paper Products industry (RR-PP) under the Sustainable Industry Classification System (SICS) and are not included in the Construction Materials standard.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	EM-CM-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets,	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-CM-110a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	and an analysis of performance against those targets			
Air Quality	Air emissions of the following pollutants: (1) NO _x (excluding N ₂ O), (2) SO _x , (3) particulate matter (PM ₁₀), (4) dioxins/furans, (5) volatile organic compounds (VOCs), (6) polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) and (7) heavy metals	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	EM-CM-120a.1
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity, (3) percentage alternative and (4) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	EM-CM-130a.1
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	EM-CM-140a.1
Waste Management	Amount of waste generated, percentage hazardous and percentage recycled	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	EM-CM-150a.1
Product Innovation	Percentage of products that qualify for credits in sustainable building design and construction certifications	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by annual sales revenue	EM-CM-410a.1
	Total addressable market and share of market for products that reduce energy, water or material impacts during usage or production	Quantitative	Presentation currency, Percentage (%)	EM-CM-410a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Production by major product line ⁸	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	EM-CM-000.A

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

The production of construction materials, particularly cement, generates significant direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from on-site fuel combustion and chemical processes. The industry has achieved efficiency gains in reducing emissions per ton of materials produced. At the same time, increasing production is associated with increasing absolute emissions from cement production. The production of construction materials remains carbon-intensive relative to other industries, exposing the industry to higher operating and capital expenditures from emissions regulations. Strategies to reduce GHG emissions include energy efficiency, use of alternative and renewable fuels, carbon sequestration and clinker substitution. Operational efficiencies can be achieved through the cost-effective reduction of GHG emissions. Such efficiencies can mitigate the potential financial impact of increased fuel costs as well as direct emissions from regulations that limit—or put a price on—GHG emissions.

Metrics

EM-CM-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

- 2.1 These emissions include direct emissions of GHGs from stationary or mobile sources that include production facilities, office buildings and product transportation (marine, road and rail).
 - 2.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.2.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.2.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.2.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.2.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.2.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.2.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 2.3 GHG emission data shall be consolidated according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which is generally aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the GHG Protocol and the approach provided by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary,' of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.
- 3.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:
 - 3.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)
 - 3.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)
 - 3.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).
 - 3.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation,

the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.

3.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.

4 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.

5 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.

6 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

EM-CM-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.

1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).

2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:

2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);

2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;

2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;

2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year

and the base year;

2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and

2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.

3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.

4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.

5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.

6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Air Quality

Topic Summary

On-site fuel combustion and production processes in the Construction Materials industry emit criteria air pollutants and hazardous chemicals, including small quantities of organic compounds and heavy metals. Emissions of particular concern include nitrogen oxides, sulphur dioxides, particulate matter, heavy metals (for example, mercury), dioxins and volatile organic compounds, among others. These air emissions can have significant, localised human health and environmental impacts. Financial impacts resulting from air emissions will vary depending on the specific location of operations and the applicable air emissions regulations, but they could include higher operating or capital expenditures and regulatory or legal penalties. Active management of the issue—through technological and process improvements—may allow entities to limit the impact of regulations and benefit from operational efficiencies that could lead to a lower cost structure over time.

Metrics

EM-CM-120a.1 Air emissions of the following pollutants: (1) NO_x (excluding N₂O), (2) SO_x, (3) particulate matter (PM₁₀), (4) dioxins/furans, (5) volatile organic compounds (VOCs), (6) polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) and (7) heavy metals

- 1 The entity shall disclose its emissions of air pollutants, in metric tons per pollutant, released into the atmosphere.
 - 1.1 The scope of disclosure includes air pollutants associated with the entity's direct air emissions resulting from all the entity's activities and sources of emissions, which may include stationary and mobile sources, production facilities, office buildings and transportation fleets.
- 2 The entity shall disclose its emissions of (1) oxides of nitrogen (NO_x), reported as NO_x.
 - 2.1 The scope of NO_x includes NO and NO₂ but excludes N₂O.
- 3 The entity shall disclose its emissions of (2) oxides of sulphur (SO_x), reported as SO_x.
 - 3.1 The scope of SO_x includes SO₂ and SO₃.
- 4 The entity shall disclose its emissions of (3) particulate matter 10 micrometres or less in diameter (PM₁₀), reported as PM₁₀.
 - 4.1 PM₁₀ is defined as any airborne finely divided solid or liquid material with an aerodynamic diameter less than or equal to a nominal 10 micrometres.
- 5 The entity shall disclose its emissions of (4) dioxins/furans.
 - 5.1 Dioxins/furans include, but are not limited to the sum of the 17 congeners of polychlorinated dibenzodioxins (PCDDs) and polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDFs) that contain chlorine
- 6 The entity shall disclose its emissions of (5) non-methane volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
 - 6.1 VOCs are defined as any compound of carbon, excluding carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, carbonic acid, metallic carbides or carbonates, ammonium carbonate and methane, that participates in atmospheric photochemical reactions, except those designated under applicable jurisdictional law or regulation as having negligible photochemical reactivity.
 - 6.1.1 If applicable regulatory definitions of VOCs may conflict with this definition, the entity may define VOCs in accordance with the applicable regulatory definition.
- 7 The entity shall disclose its emissions of (6) polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs).
 - 7.1 PAHs are a large group of organic compounds containing two or more fused aromatic (benzene) rings. A main source of emission is the incomplete combustion or pyrolysis of organic material.
 - 7.2 PAHs include those listed in the World Health Organization's *2021 Human health effects of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons as ambient air pollutants*:

report of the Working Group on Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons of the Joint Task Force on the Health Aspects of Air Pollution.

- 8 The entity shall disclose its emissions of (7) heavy metals.
 - 8.1 The scope of heavy metals includes lead (Pb), mercury (Hg), and cadmium (Cd).
- 9 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as whether data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

Energy Management

Topic Summary

The production of construction materials requires significant energy, sourced primarily from direct fossil fuel combustion as well as from purchased electricity. Energy-intensive production has implications for climate change, and electricity purchases from the grid can create indirect Scope 2 emissions. Construction materials entities also use alternative fuels for kilns, such as scrap tyres and waste oil—often waste generated by other industries. If properly managed, these can lower energy costs and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions. However, potentially negative impacts could occur, such as releases of harmful air pollutants that entities need to minimise to obtain net benefits from using such fuels. Decisions about use of alternative fuels, renewable energy and on-site generation of electricity (versus purchases from the grid) can be important in influencing both the costs and reliability of energy supply. Affordable, easily accessible and reliable energy is an important competitive factor in this industry, with purchased fuels and electricity accounting for a significant proportion of total production costs. How a construction materials entity manages energy efficiency, reliance on different types of energy and associated sustainability risks, and access to alternative sources of energy may influence its profitability.

Metrics

EM-CM-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity, (3) percentage alternative and (4) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which

are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).

- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed from alternative sources, in terms of its energy content.
 - 3.1 Alternative sources of energy include used tyres, spent solvents and waste oils, processed municipal solid waste, household wastes, agricultural wastes such as rice, peanut shells and coffee husks, animal meal and sewage sludge.
- 4 The entity shall disclose (4) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 4.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 4.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 4.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 4.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 4.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 4.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
 - 4.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme

for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 5 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

Construction materials production requires substantial volumes of water. Entities face operational, regulatory and reputational risks associated with water scarcity, costs of water acquisition, regulations on effluents or amount of water used, and competition with local communities and other industries for limited water resources. Risks are likely to be higher in regions of water scarcity because of potential water availability constraints and price volatility. Entities unable to secure a stable water supply could face production disruptions, while rising water prices could directly increase production costs. Consequently, the adoption of technologies and processes that reduce water consumption could lower operating risks and costs for entities by minimising the impact of regulations, water supply shortages and community-related disruptions on entity operations.

Metrics

EM-CM-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.

- 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea

- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

Waste Management

Topic Summary

Construction materials production recycling rates are high. However, waste from production processes, pollution control devices and from hazardous waste management activities present a regulatory risk and can increase operating costs. Cement kiln dust (CKD)—consisting of fine-grained, solid, highly alkaline waste removed from cement kiln exhaust gas by air pollution control devices—is the most significant waste category in the industry. Regulatory risk remains high from evolving environmental laws. Entities that reduce waste streams—hazardous waste streams in particular—and recycle by-products, can reduce regulatory and litigation risks and costs.

Metrics

EM-CM-150a.1. Amount of waste generated, percentage hazardous and percentage recycled

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of waste generated in metric tons.
 - 1.1 Waste is defined as anything for which the entity has no further use, and which is discarded or released to the environment.
 - 1.2 The scope includes slags, dusts, sludges, used oil and other solid wastes that meet the above definition.
 - 1.3 The scope excludes gaseous waste.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of waste generated that was hazardous.
 - 2.1 The percentage of hazardous waste shall be calculated as the weight hazardous waste as defined in accordance with the applicable jurisdictional,

legal or regulatory framework where the waste was generated divided by the total weight of waste material.

- 2.2 Hazardous waste generally displays the following characteristics: ignitability, corrosivity, reactivity or toxicity.
- 2.3 The entity may use United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP) *Basel Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movements of Hazardous Wastes and Their Disposal* for the purposes of defining hazardous waste for operations located in jurisdictions that lack applicable legal or regulatory definitions.

3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of waste generated that was recycled.

- 3.1 The percentage recycled shall be calculated as the weight of waste material reused, plus the weight recycled or remanufactured (through treatment or processing) by the entity, plus the amount sent externally for further recycling, divided by the total weight of waste material.
 - 3.1.1 Reused materials are defined as those recovered products or components of products used for the same purpose for which they were conceived.
 - 3.1.2 Recycled and remanufactured materials are defined as waste materials that have been reprocessed or treated by means of production or manufacturing processes and made into a final product or made into a component for incorporation into a product.
 - 3.1.3 The scope of recycled and remanufactured products includes primary recycled materials, co-products (outputs of equal value to primary recycled materials) and by-products (outputs of lesser value to primary recycled materials).
 - 3.1.4 Portions of products and materials discarded in landfills are not considered recycled; only the portions of products directly incorporated into new products, co-products or by-products shall be included in the percentage recycled.
 - 3.1.5 Materials sent for further recycling include those materials transferred to a third party for the expressed purpose of reuse, recycling or refurbishment.
- 3.2 Materials incinerated, including for energy recovery, shall not be considered within the scope of recycled materials.
 - 3.2.1 Energy recovery is defined as the use of combustible waste to generate energy through direct incineration, with or without other waste, but with recovery of the heat.
 - 3.2.2 The entity may separately disclose the percentage of hazardous waste generated that was incinerated.

- 4 The entity shall disclose the legal or regulatory framework(s) used to define waste, hazardous waste and recycled hazardous waste.

Product Innovation

Topic Summary

Innovations in building materials are an essential component in the growth of sustainable construction. Consumer and regulatory trends are driving adoption of sustainable building materials and processes that are more resource efficient and can reduce health impacts of buildings throughout their lifecycle. This is creating new business drivers for construction materials entities, with an opportunity to increase revenue. Furthermore, some new products require less energy to produce, or use largely recycled inputs, reducing production costs. Therefore, sustainable construction materials can contribute to an entity's long-term growth and competitiveness.

Metrics

EM-CM-410a.1 Percentage of products that qualify for credits in sustainable building design and construction certifications

- 1 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the revenue during the reporting period from products that qualify for credits in recognised sustainable design and construction certifications divided by the total revenue from building products.
 - 1.1 The scope of products excludes raw or intermediate materials that would require additional manufacturing before being incorporated into a building; the entity shall exclude these products from the numerator and denominator of the calculation.
- 2 Recognised sustainable building design and construction certifications and guidelines include BREEAM® (BRE Global), Green Globes® (Green Building Initiative), LEED® (US Green Building Council) and ICC-700 National Green Building Standard® (National Association of Home Builders).⁹
 - 2.1 If the entity's products can be used to obtain credits in certifications other than those described above, it shall provide the name of the certification and evidence of why it is equal to or more rigorous than those standards listed here.
- 3 The entity may disclose and discuss which specific products contribute to sustainable building practices, as well as its plans to address market demand for these types of products.

EM-CM-410a.2. Total addressable market and share of market for products that reduce energy, water or material impacts during usage or production

- 1 The entity shall provide an estimate of the total addressable market for products that show reduced environmental impacts at various lifecycle stages, including during material sourcing, manufacturing and product usage (hereafter, 'reduced environmental impact products').
 - 1.1 Total addressable market is defined as potential revenue should the entity capture 100% of the market share of the product category (for example, the

global market for reduced environmental impact products).

- 2 The scope of products includes those:
 - 2.1 With product attributes that reduce energy consumption or increase energy efficiency for users, such as by providing improved insulation compared to typical products
 - 2.2 With process or product attributes that reduce the amount of water required in manufacturing, during product assembly or product usage
 - 2.3 That use secondary or recycled materials in place of virgin materials such that upstream impacts are reduced
 - 2.4 Made with design innovations that reduce carbon emissions during manufacturing, such as use of renewable fuels, energy efficiency improvements or the use of materials requiring less processing
- 3 If a significant difference exists between the total addressable market and the market that the entity can serve through its existing or planned capabilities, sales channels or products (the serviceable available market), then the entity should disclose this information.
- 4 The entity shall disclose the share of the total addressable market for reduced environmental impact products it currently captures with its products.
 - 4.1 Market share shall be calculated as revenue from these products divided by the size of the total addressable market.
- 5 The entity may provide a projection of growth of this market, where the projected addressable market is represented—based on a reasonable set of assumptions about changes in market conditions—as a percentage of year-on-year growth or as an estimate of the market size after a defined period (the market size in 10 years).
 - 5.1 The entity may disclose its target three-year market share as a measurement of targeted growth, where the target is the percentage of the total addressable market the entity plans to address over a three-year time horizon.

Volume 9—Iron & Steel Producers

Industry Description

The Iron & Steel Producers industry primarily consists of entities producing iron and steel in mills and foundries. The steel producers segment produces iron and steel products from its own mills. These products include flat-rolled sheets, tin plates, pipes, tubes, and products made of stainless steel, titanium and high alloy steels. Iron and steel foundries, which cast various products, typically purchase iron and steel from other entities. The industry also includes metal service centres and other metal merchant wholesalers, which distribute, import or export ferrous products. Though entities are developing alternative processes, steel

production primarily relies on two primary methods: the basic oxygen furnace (BOF), which uses iron ore as an input, and the electric arc furnace (EAF), which uses scrap steel. Many entities in the industry operate on an international scale. Note: With a few exceptions, most entities do not mine their own ore to manufacture steel and iron products. There exists a separate standard for the Metals & Mining (EM-MM) industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	EM-IS-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-IS-110a.2
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	EM-IS-130a.1
	(1) Total fuel consumed, (2) percentage coal, (3) percentage natural gas and (4) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	EM-IS-130a.2
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	EM-IS-140a.1
Supply Chain Management	Discussion of the process for managing iron ore or coking coal sourcing risks arising from	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-IS-430a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	environmental and social issues			

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Raw steel production, percentage from: (1) basic oxygen furnace processes, (2) electric arc furnace processes	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	EM-IS-000.A
Total iron ore production ¹⁰	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	EM-IS-000.B
Total coking coal production ¹¹	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	EM-IS-000.C

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Iron and steel production generates significant direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, primarily carbon dioxide and methane, from production processes and on-site fuel combustion. Although technological improvements have reduced the GHG emissions per ton of steel produced, steel production remains carbon-intensive compared to other industries. Regulatory efforts to reduce GHG emissions in response to the risks posed by climate change may result in additional regulatory compliance costs and risks for iron and steel entities because of climate change mitigation policies. Entities can achieve operational efficiencies through the cost-effective reduction of GHG emissions. Capturing such efficiencies can mitigate the potential financial effects of increased fuel costs from regulations that limit—or put a price on—GHG emissions.

Metrics

EM-IS-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published

100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).

- 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.

2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

- 2.1 These emissions include direct emissions of GHGs from stationary or mobile sources that include production facilities, office buildings and product transportation (marine, road and rail).
- 2.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.2.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.2.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.2.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.2.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.2.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.2.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
- 2.3 GHG emission data shall be consolidated according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which is generally aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the GHG Protocol and the approach provided by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary,' of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems,

and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.

3.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:

3.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)

3.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)

3.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)

3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).

3.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.

3.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.

4 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.

5 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.

6 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

EM-IS-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.

1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).

- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Energy Management

Topic Summary

The production of steel requires significant energy, sourced primarily from the direct fossil fuel combustion as well as energy purchased from the grid. Energy-intense production has implications for climate change, and electricity purchases from the grid can result in indirect Scope 2 emissions. The choice between various production processes—electric arc furnaces and integrated basic oxygen furnaces—can influence whether an entity uses fossil fuels or purchases electricity. This decision, together with the choice between using coal versus natural gas or on-site versus grid-sourced electricity, may influence both the costs and reliability of energy supply. Affordable, easily accessible and reliable energy is an important industry competitive factor. Energy costs account for a substantial portion of iron and steel manufacturing costs. How an iron and steel entity manages its energy efficiency, its reliance on

various types of energy and associated sustainability risks, and its ability to access alternative sources of energy can influence its profitability.

Metrics

EM-IS-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable state renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

EM-IS-130a.2. (1) Total fuel consumed, (2) percentage coal, (3) percentage natural gas and (4) percentage renewable

1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).

1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.

1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:

1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, less any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period

1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicles

1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses

2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of fuel consumed that was coal.

2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of coal consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).

2.2 The scope of coal consumed may include thermal coal, metallurgical coal, coke and coke breeze.

- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of fuel consumed that was natural gas.
 - 3.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of natural gas consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).
- 4 The entity shall disclose (4) the percentage of fuel consumed that was renewable fuel.
 - 4.1 Renewable fuel generally is defined as fuel that meets all the following requirements:
 - 4.1.1 Produced from renewable biomass;
 - 4.1.2 Used to replace or reduce the quantity of fossil fuel present in a transportation fuel, heating oil or jet fuel; and
 - 4.1.3 Achieved net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a lifecycle basis.
 - 4.2 The entity shall disclose the standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable.
 - 4.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of renewable fuel consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).
- 5 In calculating energy consumption from fuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are directly measured or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.
- 6 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage.

Water Management

Topic Summary

Steel production requires substantial volumes of water. Entities face increasing operational, regulatory and reputational risks associated with water scarcity, costs of water acquisition, regulations on effluents or amount of water used, and competition with local communities and other industries for limited water resources. These risks are particularly likely to affect regions where water is scarce, resulting in water availability constraints and price volatility. Entities unable to secure a stable water supply could face production disruptions, while rising water prices could directly increase production costs. Consequently, entities adopting technologies and processes to decrease reduce water consumption may reduce operating risks and costs by mitigating the operational impacts of regulatory changes, water supply shortages and community-related disruptions.

Metrics

EM-IS-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.

- 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

Supply Chain Management

Topic Summary

Iron ore and coal are critical raw material inputs to the steel production process. Iron ore mining and coal production are resource-intensive processes. Mineral extraction often has substantial environmental and social impacts adversely affecting local communities, workers and ecosystems. Community protests, legal or regulatory action, or increased regulatory compliance costs or penalties can disrupt mining operations. Iron and steel entities could face supply disruptions as a result, or in some cases, also may be subject to regulatory penalties associated with the environmental or social impact of the mining entity supplier. Minimising

such risks through appropriate supplier screening, monitoring and engagement, iron and steel producers may manage their direct critical raw materials suppliers proactively to ensure they are not engaged in illegal or otherwise environmentally or socially damaging practices.

Metrics

EM-IS-430a.1. Discussion of the process for managing iron ore or coking coal sourcing risks arising from environmental and social issues

- 1The entity shall discuss its policies and procedures for managing environmental and social risks that may affect sourcing that are present in its iron ore or coking coal supply chain.

1.1Discussion shall include any existing or projected risks or constraints in obtaining raw materials (for example, iron ore or coking coal) within the supply chain, including those related to restricted/limited availability, political situations, local labour conditions, natural disasters, climate change or regulations.

1.2The scope of disclosure may include description of the use of screening, codes of conduct, audits and certifications.
- 2If audits are discussed, the entity may disclose whether audits are internal (first party), independent (third party) or administered by peers (for example, trade organisations).

Volume 10—Metals & Mining

-

Industry Description

The Metals & Mining industry is involved in extracting metals and minerals, producing ores, quarrying stones, smelting and manufacturing metals, refining metals, and providing mining support activities. Entities also produce iron ores, rare earth metals, and precious metals and stones. Larger entities in this industry are integrated vertically – from mining across global operations to wholesaling metals to customers.

Note: There exists a separate standard for the Iron & Steel Producers (EM-IS) industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	EM-MM-110a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-MM-110a.2
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	EM-MM-130a.1
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	EM-MM-140a.1
	Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	EM-MM-140a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Production of (1) metal ores and (2) finished metal products	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) saleable	EM-MM-000.A
Total number of employees, percentage contractors	Quantitative	Number, Percentage (%)	EM-MM-000.B

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Mining operations are energy-intensive and generate significant direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, including carbon dioxide from fuel use during mining, ore processing and smelting

activities. The extent and type of GHG emissions can vary depending on the metal mined and processed. Regulatory efforts to reduce GHG emissions in response to climate change-related risks may result in additional regulatory compliance costs and risks for metals and mining entities. Entities can achieve operational efficiencies through the cost-effective reduction of GHG emissions. Such efficiencies can mitigate the potential financial effect of increased fuel costs from regulations to limit—or put a price on—GHG emissions.

Metrics

EM-MM-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 These emissions include direct emissions of GHGs from stationary or mobile sources that may include equipment at mine sites, refineries and smelting facilities, and office buildings, and equipment used in metal transportation (marine, road and rail).
 - 2.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.2.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.2.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.2.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.2.4 ISO 14064-1

2.2.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA

2.2.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)

2.3 GHG emission data shall be consolidated according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which is generally aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the GHG Protocol and the approach provided by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary,' of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.

3.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:

3.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)

3.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)

3.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)

3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).

3.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.

3.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.

4 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.

5 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.

6 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering

calculations or mass balance calculations.

- 7 The entity may, where relevant, provide a breakdown of its emissions by mineral or business unit.

7.1 Minerals or business units may include: aluminium, copper, zinc, iron ore, precious metals or diamonds.

EM-MM-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.

1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).

- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:

2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);

2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;

2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;

2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;

2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and

2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.

- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.

- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions

sources.

- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Mining and metals production is often energy-intensive, with a significant proportion of energy consumption in the industry accounted for by purchased electricity. Although fuel combustion on-site contributes to the industry's direct (Scope 1) GHG emissions, electricity purchases from the grid can result in indirect, Scope 2 emissions. The energy intensity of operations may increase with decreasing grades of deposits and increasing depth and scale of mining operations. The choice between on-site versus grid-sourced electricity and the use of alternative energy can be important in influencing both the costs and reliability of energy supply. Affordable and easily accessible energy is an important competitive factor in a commodity market driven by global competition, and purchased fuels and electricity can account for a significant proportion of total production costs. The way in which an entity manages its overall energy efficiency and intensity, its reliance on different types of energy, and its ability to access alternative sources of energy, can therefore be a material factor.

Metrics

EM-MM-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.

2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.

3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.

3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.

3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.

3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.

3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs must be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity in order for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

Mining and metals production can affect both the availability and the quality of local water resources. Metals and mining entities face operational, regulatory and reputational risks

because of water scarcity, costs of water acquisition, regulations on effluents or the amount of water used, and competition with local communities and other industries for limited water resources. Effects associated with water management may include higher costs, liabilities and lost revenues because of curtailment or suspension of operations. The severity of these risks may vary depending on the region's water availability and the regulatory environment. Entities in the industry may deploy new technologies to manage risks related to water risk, including desalination, water recirculation and innovative waste-disposal solutions. Reducing water use and contamination can create operational efficiencies for entities and reduce their operating costs.

Metrics

EM-MM-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

4.1 The entity shall list its facilities or operations which are located in areas of High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.

5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.

6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

EM-MM-140a.2. Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations

1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance, including violations of a technology-based standard and exceedances of quantity or quality-based standards.

2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations, which include the discharge of a hazardous substance, violation of pre-treatment requirements or total maximum daily load (TMDL) exceedances.

2.1 Typical parameters of concern include arsenic, copper, lead, nickel, zinc, cyanide, radium-226, total suspended solids, pH and toxicity.

3 The scope of disclosure shall only include incidents of non-compliance that resulted in a formal enforcement action(s).

3.1 Formal enforcement actions are defined as governmental recognised actions that address a violation or threatened violation of water quantity or quality laws, regulations, policies or orders, and can result in administrative penalty orders, administrative orders and judicial actions, among others.

4 Violations shall be disclosed, regardless of their measurement methodology or frequency. These include violations for:

4.1 Continuous discharges, limitations, standards and prohibitions that are generally expressed as maximum daily, weekly and monthly averages; and

4.2 Non-continuous discharges, limitations that are generally expressed in terms of frequency, total mass, maximum rate of discharge and mass or concentration of specified pollutants.

Volume 11—Oil & Gas – Exploration & Production

Industry Description

Oil & Gas - Exploration & Production (E&P) entities explore for, extract or produce energy products such as crude oil and natural gas, which comprise the upstream operations of the oil and gas value chain. Entities in the industry develop conventional and unconventional oil and gas reserves; these include shale oil or gas reserves, oil sands and gas hydrates. Activities

covered by this standard include the development of both on-shore and off-shore reserves. The E&P industry creates contracts with the Oil and Gas Services industry to conduct several E&P activities and to obtain equipment and oilfield services.

Note: These disclosure topics are for 'pure-play' E&P activities or independent E&P entities. Integrated oil and gas entities conduct upstream operations but also may distribute, refine or market crude oil, natural gas or refined products. Separate standards exist for the Oil and Gas Midstream (EM-MD) and Refining & Marketing (EM-RM) industries. As such, integrated entities should also consider the disclosure topics and metrics from these Standards. A separate standard also exists for the Oil and Gas Services industry (EM-SV).

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage methane, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons CO ₂ -e (t), Percentage (%)	EM-EP-110a.1
	Amount of gross global Scope 1 emissions from: (1) flared hydrocarbons, (2) other combustion, (3) process emissions, (4) other vented emissions and (5) fugitive emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons CO ₂ -e	EM-EP-110a.2
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-EP-110a.3
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	EM-EP-140a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Reserves Valuation & Capital Expenditures	Volume of produced water and flowback generated; percentage (1) discharged, (2) injected, (3) recycled; hydrocarbon content in discharged water	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%), Metric tons (t)	EM-EP-140a.2
	Percentage of hydraulically fractured wells for which there is public disclosure of all fracturing fluid chemicals used	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	EM-EP-140a.3
	Percentage of hydraulic fracturing sites where ground or surface water quality deteriorated compared to a baseline ¹²	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	EM-EP-140a.4
	Sensitivity of hydrocarbon reserve levels to future price projection scenarios that account for a price on carbon emissions	Quantitative	Million barrels (MMbbls), Million standard cubic feet (MMscf)	EM-EP-420a.1
	Estimated carbon dioxide emissions embedded in proved hydrocarbon reserves	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	EM-EP-420a.2
	Amount invested in renewable energy, revenue generated by renewable energy sales	Quantitative	Presentation currency	EM-EP-420a.3
	Discussion of how price and demand for hydrocarbons or climate regulation influence the capital expenditure strategy for exploration,	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-EP-420a.4

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	acquisition and development of assets			

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Production of: (1) oil, (2) natural gas, (3) synthetic oil, and (4) synthetic gas	Quantitative	Thousand barrels per day (Mbbbl/day); Million standard cubic feet per day (MMscf/day)	EM-EP-000.A
Number of offshore sites	Quantitative	Number	EM-EP-000.B
Number of terrestrial sites	Quantitative	Number	EM-EP-000.C

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Exploration & Production (E&P) activities generate significant direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from a variety of sources. Emissions may be combusted, including those arising from flaring or power generation equipment, or uncombusted, including those emissions arising from gas processing equipment, venting, flaring and fugitive methane. Regulatory efforts to reduce GHG emissions in response to climate change related risks may result in additional regulatory compliance costs and risks for E&P entities. With natural gas production from shale resources expanding, the management of the emission of methane, a highly potent GHG, from oil and gas E&P systems has emerged as a major operational, reputational and regulatory risk for entities. Furthermore, the development of unconventional hydrocarbon resources may be more or less GHG-intensive than conventional oil and gas, with associated effects on regulatory risk. Energy efficiency, use of less carbon-intensive fuels, or process improvements to reduce fugitive emissions, venting and flaring, can provide direct benefits to E&P entities in the form of reduced costs or increased revenue.

Metrics

EM-EP-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage methane, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.

- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 These emissions include direct emissions of GHGs from stationary or mobile sources; these sources may include: equipment at well sites, production facilities, refineries, chemical plants, terminals, fixed site drilling rigs, office buildings, marine vessels transporting products, tank truck fleets, mobile drilling rigs, and moveable equipment at drilling and production facilities.
 - 2.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.2.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.2.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.2.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.2.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.2.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.2.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)

- 2.3 GHG emission data shall be consolidated according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which is generally aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the GHG Protocol as well as:
 - 2.3.1 The financial approach detailed in Chapter 3 of the IPIECA/API/OGP *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for Reporting Greenhouse Gas Emissions*, 2nd Edition, 2011 (hereafter, the 'IPIECA GHG Guidelines')
 - 2.3.2 The approach provided by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary,' of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*

3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of gross global Scope 1 emissions from methane emissions.

- 3.1 The percentage of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions from methane emissions shall be calculated as the methane emissions in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e) divided by the gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e).

4 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.

- 4.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:
 - 4.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)
 - 4.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)
 - 4.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)
- 4.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).
 - 4.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.
- 4.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.

5 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.

- 6 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 7 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

EM-EP-110a.2. Amount of gross global Scope 1 emissions from: (1) flared hydrocarbons, (2) other combustion, (3) process emissions, (4) other vented emissions and (5) fugitive emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions in CO₂-e from the following sources (1) flared hydrocarbons, (2) other combustion, (3) process emissions, (4) other vented emissions and (5) fugitive emissions from operations.
 - 1.1 Flared hydrocarbons shall include all emissions emitted from flares and which are associated with the management and disposal of unrecoverable natural gas via combustion of hydrocarbon products from routine operations, upsets or emergencies.
 - 1.2 Other combusted emissions shall include:
 - 1.2.1 Emissions from stationary devices, which may include boilers, heaters, furnaces, reciprocating internal combustion engines and turbines, incinerators, and thermal/catalytic oxidisers
 - 1.2.2 Emissions from mobile sources, which may include barges, ships, railcars and trucks for material transport; planes/helicopters and other entity vehicles for personnel transport; forklifts, all-terrain vehicles, construction equipment and other off-road mobile equipment
 - 1.3 Other combusted emissions shall exclude those emissions disclosed as flared hydrocarbons.
 - 1.4 Process emissions shall include those emissions that are not combusted and are intentional or designed into the process or technology to occur during normal operations and are a result of some form of chemical transformation or processing step. Such emissions may include emissions from hydrogen plants, amine units, glycol dehydrators, fluid catalytic cracking unit and reformer generation, and flexi-coker coke burn.
 - 1.5 Vented emissions shall include those emissions that are not combusted and are intentional or designed into the process or technology to occur during normal operations, and which include:
 - 1.5.1 Venting from crude oil, condensate or natural gas product storage tanks, gas-driven pneumatic devices, gas samplers, chemical injection pumps, exploratory drilling, loading/ballasting/transit and loading racks
 - 1.5.2 Venting resulting from maintenance/turn-arounds, which may include decoking of furnace tubes, well unloading, vessel and gas compressor

depressurising, compressor starts, gas sampling, and pipeline blowdowns

1.5.3 Venting from non-routine activities, which may include pressure relief valves, pressure control valves, fuel supply unloading valves and emergency shut-down devices

1.6 Vented emissions shall exclude those emissions disclosed as process emissions.

1.7 Fugitive emissions shall include those emissions that can be individually found and fixed to reduce emissions rates to near zero and which may include emissions from valves, flanges, connectors, pumps, compressor seal leaks, Cata-Dyne® heaters, and wastewater treatment and surface impoundments.

EM-EP-110a.3. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.

1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).

2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:

2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);

2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;

2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;

2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;

2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and

2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively, or the target or base year has been reset,

which may include energy efficiency efforts, energy source diversification, carbon capture and storage, or the implementation of leak detection and repair processes.

- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
 - 4.1 Categories of emissions sources include:
 - 4.1.1 Flared hydrocarbons, including all emissions emitted from flares and which are associated with the management and disposal of unrecoverable natural gas via combustion of hydrocarbon products from routine operations, upsets or emergencies
 - 4.1.2 Other combusted emissions, which may include: (1) emissions from stationary devices, which may include boilers, heaters, furnaces, reciprocating internal combustion engines and turbines, incinerators, and thermal/catalytic oxidisers, (2) emissions from mobile sources, which may include barges, ships, railcars and trucks for material transport; planes/helicopters and other entity vehicles for staff transport; forklifts, all-terrain vehicles, construction equipment and other off-road mobile equipment, and (3) other combusted emissions shall exclude those emissions disclosed as flared hydrocarbons
 - 4.1.3 Process emissions, which include those emissions that are not combusted and are intentional or designed into the process or technology to occur during normal operations and are a result of some form of chemical transformation or processing step. Such emissions may include those from hydrogen plants, amine units, glycol dehydrators, fluid catalytic cracking unit and reformer generation, and flexi-coker coke burn
 - 4.1.4 Vented emissions, including those emissions that are not combusted and are intentional or designed into the process or technology to occur during normal operations, and which may include: (1) venting from crude oil, condensate or natural gas product storage tanks, gas-driven pneumatic devices, gas samplers, chemical injection pumps, exploratory drilling, loading/ballasting/transit and loading racks, (2) venting resulting from maintenance/turn-arounds, which may include decoking of furnace tubes, well unloading, vessel and gas compressor depressurising, compressor starts, gas sampling, and pipeline blowdowns, and (3) venting from non-routine activities, which may include pressure relief valves, pressure control valves, fuel supply unloading valves and emergency shut-down devices

4.1.5 Fugitive emissions, which may include those emissions which can be individually found and "fixed" to make emissions 'near zero' and which may include emissions from valves, flanges, connectors, pumps, compressor seal leaks, catadyne heaters, and wastewater treatment and surface impoundments

- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Water Management

Topic Summary

Depending on the extraction technique, exploration and production operations may consume significant quantities of water, which may expose entities to the risk of reduced water availability, regulations limiting use, or related cost increases, particularly in water-stressed regions. Contamination of local water resources can result from incidents involving produced water, flowback water, hydraulic fracturing fluids and other well fluids. Historically, the possible impacts of hydraulic fracturing operations and the risk of groundwater supply contamination have raised concerns. Reducing water use and contamination through recycling, other water management strategies, and use of non-toxic fracturing fluids could create operational efficiency for entities and reduce their operating costs. Such strategies could also minimise the effects that regulations, water supply shortages and community-related disruptions have on operations.

Metrics

EM-EP-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.

2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.

3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.

3.1 Water consumption is defined as:

3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge

3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service

3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea.

4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.

6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

EM-EP-140a.2. Volume of produced water and flowback generated; percentage (1) discharged, (2) injected, (3) recycled; hydrocarbon content in discharged water

1 The entity shall disclose the volume, in thousands of cubic metres, of produced water and flowback fluid generated during its activities.

2 Produced water is defined as water (brine) obtained from the hydrocarbon bearing formation strata during the extraction of oil and gas. Produced water can include formation water, injection water, and any chemicals added downhole or during the oil/water separation process.

3 Flowback is defined as the recovered hydraulic fracturing fluid that returns to the surface during a hydraulic fracturing operation that may often be mixed with produced water.

4 The entity shall calculate the percentage of produced water and flowback fluid that was:

4.1 Discharged directly to the environment or indirectly discharged through a third party, such as a local wastewater treatment plant

4.2 Injected

4.3 Recycled for use in other wells, in fracturing fluids or in other drilling and production processes

- 5 The entity shall disclose the amount, in metric tons, of hydrocarbons water discharged to the environment.
 - 5.1 The scope of disclosure includes produced water, flowback, process water, storm water or other water discharged to the environment.
 - 5.2 Measurements of hydrocarbon content should be made using test methods required or approved by applicable legal or regulatory authorities (or equivalent applicable standards).

EM-EP-140a.3. Percentage of hydraulically fractured wells for which there is public disclosure of all fracturing fluid chemicals used

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of hydraulically fractured wells for which there is public disclosure of all fracturing fluid chemicals used.
 - 1.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the number of hydraulically fractured wells for which it provides public disclosure of all the chemical content of fracturing fluid, divided by the total number of hydraulically fractured wells.
 - 1.2 The entity shall include in the percentage only those wells for which all fluid chemicals are publicly disclosed, including the chemicals that meet the definition of a trade secret.
- 2 Public disclosure may include posting to a publicly accessible corporate website.

EM-EP-140a.4. Percentage of hydraulic fracturing sites where ground or surface water quality deteriorated compared to a baseline

- 1 The entity shall calculate the percentage as: the total number of hydraulic fracturing well sites for which it detected a deterioration in the ground or surface water surrounding the well site as compared to a baseline measurement, divided by the total number of hydraulic fracturing well sites.
- 2 Deterioration in water quality is, at a minimum, defined as occurring when testing indicates:
 - 2.1 Presence of thermogenic gas or a mixture of thermogenic and biogenic gas not present in baseline testing.
 - 2.2 An increase in methane concentration by more than 5.0 mg/l between sampling periods.
 - 2.3 Benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, xylenes (BTEX compounds) or total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH) are present in higher concentrations as compared to the baseline.
- 3 The entity shall determine whether water quality deteriorated against a baseline through monitoring of ground and surface water surrounding hydraulically fractured well sites.
 - 3.1 Determinations shall be consistent with Chapter 3 of the Wyoming Oil and Gas Conservation Commission (WOGCC) Rules and Regulations, the Colorado Oil and Gas Conservation Commission's (COGCC) Rule 609 — Statewide Groundwater Baseline Sampling and Monitoring, or a jurisdictional equivalent.

3.2 The entity shall disclose the jurisdictional standard, guideline or regulation used for its calculation.

4 The initial baseline sample shall occur:

4.1 Prior to drilling or before installation of a surface oil and gas facility on a location

4.2 Prior to re-stimulation of a well, if more than 12 months have passed since the initial pre-drilling sampling event or the most recent re-stimulation sampling event

5 Ongoing monitoring shall occur with at least the following frequency:

5.1 One subsequent sampling between 12 and 18 months after well completion or facility installation

5.2 A second subsequent sampling between 60 and 78 months after the previous sampling event. Dry holes are exempt from this requirement

6 The entity shall collect initial baseline samples and subsequent monitoring samples from all available water sources within a one-half mile radius of a proposed well, multi-well site, or dedicated injection well.

6.1 The entity shall follow sampling guidance from the WOGCC and COGCC or jurisdictional equivalent for the collection of samples, including for instances when few or no sampling sites exist or are accessible.

7 If the entity does not conduct baseline water quality assessments and ongoing monitoring for any of its well sites, then it shall disclose the percentage of wells for which there is no baseline or ongoing monitoring.

8 The entity may disclose whether results of baseline groundwater quality tests and ongoing monitoring are communicated to applicable jurisdictional legal or regulatory authorities (where not required by local law) or residents and business owners in proximity to hydraulic fracturing sites.

Note to **EM-EP-140a.4**

1 The entity shall describe its policies and practices related to its management of ground and surface water quality.

2 Applicable policies and practices may include:

2.1 Well design and well integrity management

2.2 Hydraulic fracturing procedures

2.3 Surface facility design, including the use of backflow preventers, storage tank design and impoundment design

2.4 Surface and groundwater quality and testing

2.5 Chemicals management

2.6 Water reuse, processing and disposal

Reserves Valuation & Capital Expenditures**Topic Summary**

Exploration and production (E&P) entities may be unable to extract a significant proportion of their proved and probable oil and gas reserves if greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions are controlled to limit global temperature increases. Entities with more carbon-intensive reserves and production and higher capital costs may face greater risks. Regulatory limits on GHG emissions, together with improved competitiveness of alternative energy technologies, could reduce global demand growth, and therefore reduce prices for oil and gas products. Extraction costs could increase with regulations that put a price on GHG emissions. These factors could affect the economic viability of oil and gas reserves. Regulatory actions that are more abrupt than anticipated, or those focusing on industries with high emissions, could impair asset values over a short period. Stewardship of capital resources and production decisions that consider near- and long-term trends related to climate change may mitigate potential asset impairment and maintain profitability and creditworthiness.

Metrics**EM-EP-420a.1. Sensitivity of hydrocarbon reserve levels to future price projection scenarios that account for a price on carbon emissions**

- 1 The entity shall perform a sensitivity analysis of its reserves to determine how several future scenarios may affect the determination of whether the reserves are proved or probable.
- 2 The entity shall analyse the sensitivity of its current proven and probable reserves using the price trajectories published by the International Energy Agency (IEA) in its *World Energy Outlook* (WEO) publication, including:
 - 2.1 Current Policies Scenario, which assumes no changes in policies from the mid-point of the year of publication of the WEO.
 - 2.2 New Policies Scenario, which assumes that broad policy commitments and plans that have been announced by countries (including national pledges to reduce greenhouse gas emissions and plans to phase out fossil-energy subsidies), occur even if the measures to implement these commitments have yet to be identified or announced. This broadly serves as the IEA baseline scenario.
 - 2.3 Sustainable Development Scenario, which assumes that an energy pathway occurs that is consistent with the goal of limiting the global increase in temperature to 1.5°C by limiting concentration of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere.
 - 2.4 The entity shall consider the WEO scenarios as a normative reference; thus, any updates to the WEO made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.
- 3 The entity shall follow the applicable jurisdictional guidance for the following:
 - 3.1 Classifying reserves as proved and probable

3.2 Conducting a reserves sensitivity analysis and disclosing, in the aggregate, an estimate of reserves for each product type based on various price and cost criteria, such as a range of prices and costs that may reasonably be achieved, including standardised futures prices or management's own forecasts

3.2.1 The entity shall disclose the price and cost schedules and assumptions on which disclosed values are based

3.3 Determining current (or base) case of reserve levels

4 The entity may use the following table format to summarise its findings:

Table 3. Sensitivity of reserves to prices by principal product type and price scenario

Price Case	Proved Reserves			Probable Reserves		
(Scenario)	Oil (MMbbls)	Gas (MSm ³)	Product:A (measure)	Oil (MMbbls)	Gas (MSm ³)	Product:A (measure)
Current Policies Scenario (base)						
New Policies Scenario						
Sustainable Development Scenario						

5 The entity may disclose the sensitivity of its reserve levels in other price and demand scenarios in addition to those described above, particularly if these scenarios vary depending on the type of hydrocarbon reserves, regulatory environment in the countries or regions where exploration occurs, end-use of the entity's products, or other factors.

6 For additional sensitivity analyses, the entity should consider disclosing the following, per the Task Force on Climate- Related Financial Disclosures (TCFD) Recommendations Report Figure 8 as well as the Implementing the Recommendations of the TCFD Report, Section E:

6.1 The alternative scenarios used, including other 2°C or lower scenarios

6.2 Critical input parameters, assumptions and analytical choices for the climate-related scenarios used, particularly as they relate to key areas such as policy assumptions, energy deployment pathways, technology pathways and related timing assumptions

6.3 Time frames used for scenarios, including short-, medium- and long-term milestones (for example, how organisations consider timing of potential future implications)

under the scenarios used)

EM-EP-420a.2. Estimated carbon dioxide emissions embedded in proved hydrocarbon reserves

- 1 The entity shall calculate and disclose an estimate of the carbon dioxide emissions embedded in its proved hydrocarbon reserves.
 - 1.1 Nota bene — this estimate applies a factor for potential CO₂ only and does not include an estimate for all potential greenhouse gas emissions, as these are dependent on downstream use (for example, utility electricity generation, industrial heating and electricity generation, residential heating and cooling, transportation, or use in petrochemicals, agrochemicals, asphalt and lubricants).
- 2 Estimated potential carbon dioxide emissions from proved hydrocarbon reserves shall be calculated according to the following formula, derived from Meinshausen et al.:
 - 2.1 $E = R \times V \times C$, where:
 - 2.1.1 E are the potential emissions in kilogrammes of carbon dioxide (kg CO₂);
 - 2.1.2 R are the proved reserves in gigagrams (Gg);
 - 2.1.3 V is the net calorific value in terajoules per gigagram (TJ/Gg); and
 - 2.1.4 C is the effective carbon dioxide emission factor in kilogrammes CO₂ per terajoule (kg/TJ).
- 3 In the absence of data specific to the entity's hydrocarbon reserves, carbon content shall be calculated using default data for each major hydrocarbon resource published by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) in its *2006 IPCC Guidelines for National Greenhouse Gas Inventories*.
 - 3.1 The entity shall use default carbon content values per unit of energy listed in IPCC Table 1.3 Default Values of Carbon Content, Volume 2: Energy, Chapter 1.
 - 3.2 The entity shall use calorific values per weight of hydrocarbon contained in IPCC Table 1.2 Default Net Calorific Values (NCVs) and Lower and Upper Limit of the 95% Confidence Intervals, Volume 2: Energy, Chapter 1.
- 4 The entity shall use engineering estimates to determine the weight of its hydrocarbon reserves in gigagrams.
- 5 For other assumptions required to estimate the carbon content of hydrocarbon reserves, the entity shall rely on guidance from the IPCC, the Greenhouse Gas Protocol or the International Energy Agency (IEA).

EM-EP-420a.3. Amount invested in renewable energy, revenue generated by renewable energy sales

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount spent, including capital and research and development expenditures, on renewable or alternative energy sources.
 - 1.1 Such disclosure generally corresponds to the renewable energy technology areas per C-OG 9.6 of the CDP Climate Change Questionnaire.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the sales generated from renewable energy sources.
 - 2.1 Such disclosure generally corresponds to the renewable energy strategic development areas Section C4.5a of the CDP Climate Change Questionnaire
- 3 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are capable of being replenished quickly through ecological cycles, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.1 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered 'eligible renewables' according to the Green-e Energy National Standard.
 - 3.1.1 The entity shall consider the Green-e Energy National Standard as a normative reference; thus, any updates to the Standard made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.
- 4 The entity shall consider the CDP Climate Change Questionnaire a normative reference; thus, any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to the guidance.

EM-EP-420a.4. Discussion of how price and demand for hydrocarbons or climate regulation influence the capital expenditure strategy for exploration, acquisition and development of assets

- 1 The entity shall discuss how projections for price and demand for hydrocarbon products and the path of climate regulation influence the entity's capital expenditure (CAPEX) investment strategy.
 - 1.1 This discussion should include the entity's projections and assumptions about future hydrocarbon prices and the likelihood that various price and demand scenarios occur.
- 2 The entity shall discuss the implications of how price and demand scenario planning (EM-EP-420a.1) may affect decisions to explore, acquire and develop new reserves.
- 3 The entity may discuss factors that materially influence its CAPEX decision making, which may include:
 - 3.1 How the scope of climate change regulation—such as which countries, regions or industries are likely to be affected—may influence the type of hydrocarbon on which the entity focuses its exploration and development

- ## Volume 12—Oil & Gas – Midstream

Oil & Gas - Midstream industry entities transport or store natural gas, crude oil and refined petroleum products. Midstream natural gas activities involve gathering, transporting and processing natural gas from the wellhead, such as the removal of impurities, production of natural gas liquids, storage, pipeline transport and shipping, liquefaction, or regasification of liquefied natural gas. Midstream oil activities mainly involve transporting crude oil and refined products using pipeline networks, truck and rail, and marine transport on tankers or barges. Entities that operate storage and distribution terminals, as well as those that manufacture and install storage tanks and pipelines, are also part of this industry.

Note: The standards discussed below are for ‘pure-play’ midstream activities or independent midstream entities. Integrated oil and gas entities may own or operate midstream operations, but they also are involved in the upstream operations of the oil and gas value chain and in the refining or marketing of products. Separate standards exist for the Oil and Gas Exploration & Production (EM-EP) and Refining & Marketing (EM-RM) industries. As such, integrated entities also should consider the disclosure topics and metrics from these standards.

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage methane, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	EM-MD-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-MD-110a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Total metric ton-kilometres of: (1) natural gas, (2) crude oil, and (3) refined petroleum products transported, by mode of transport ¹³	Quantitative	Metric ton (t) kilometres	EM-MD-000.A

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

The midstream industry generates significant greenhouse gases and other air emissions from compressor engine exhausts, oil and condensate tank vents, natural gas processing, and fugitive emissions, in addition to emissions from mobile sources. GHG emissions contribute to climate change and create incremental regulatory compliance costs and risks for midstream entities. At the same time, the management of methane fugitive emissions has emerged as a significant operational, reputational and regulatory risk. Financial effects on entities will vary depending on the specific location of operations and prevailing emissions regulations, and they include increased operating or capital expenditures and regulatory or legal penalties. Entities that capture and monetise emissions, or cost-effectively reduce emissions by implementing innovative monitoring and mitigation efforts and fuel efficiency measures, may enjoy substantial financial benefits. Entities can reduce regulatory risks and realise operational efficiencies as regulatory and public concerns about air quality and climate change increase.

Metrics

EM-MD-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage methane, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 These emissions include direct emissions of GHGs from stationary or mobile sources; these sources include: equipment at well sites, production facilities, refineries, chemical plants, terminals, fixed site drilling rigs, office buildings, marine vessels transporting products, tank truck fleets, mobile drilling rigs, and moveable equipment at drilling and production facilities.
 - 2.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform with the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.2.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* provided by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.2.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.2.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.2.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.2.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.2.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* provided by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 2.3 GHG emission data shall be consolidated according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol* as well as:

- 2.3.1 The financial approach detailed in Chapter 3 of the IPIECA/API/OGP *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for Reporting Greenhouse Gas Emissions*, 2nd Edition, 2011 (hereafter, the “IPIECA GHG Guidelines”)
- 2.3.2 The approach provided by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, ‘Organisational boundary’, of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*

- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of gross global Scope 1 emissions from methane emissions.
 - 3.1 The percentage of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions from methane emissions shall be calculated as the methane emissions in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e) divided by the gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e).
- 4 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.
 - 4.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:
 - 4.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)
 - 4.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)
 - 4.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)
 - 4.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).
 - 4.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.
 - 4.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.
- 5 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 6 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.

- 7 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

EM-MD-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset, which may include energy efficiency efforts, energy source diversification, carbon capture and storage, or the implementation of leak detection and repair processes.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.

- 4.1 Categories of emissions may include:
- 4.1.1 Flared hydrocarbons, including all emissions emitted from flares and associated with the management and disposal of unrecoverable natural gas via combustion of hydrocarbon products from routine operations, upsets or emergencies
 - 4.1.2 Other combusted emissions, which may include: (1) emissions from stationary devices, which may include boilers, heaters, furnaces, reciprocating internal combustion engines and turbines, incinerators, and thermal/catalytic oxidisers, (2) emissions from mobile sources, which may include barges, ships, railcars and trucks for material transport; planes/helicopters and other entity vehicles for staff transport; forklifts, all-terrain vehicles, construction equipment and other off-road mobile equipment, and (3) other combusted emissions shall exclude those emissions disclosed as flared hydrocarbons
 - 4.1.3 Process emissions, which include those emissions not combusted and are intentional or designed into the process or technology to occur during normal operations and result from some form of chemical transformation or processing step. Such emissions may include those from hydrogen plants, amine units, glycol dehydrators, fluid catalytic cracking unit and reformer generation, and flexi-coker coke burn
 - 4.1.4 Vented emissions, including those emissions not combusted and are intentional or designed into the process or technology to occur during normal operations, and which may include: (1) venting from crude oil, condensate or natural gas product storage tanks, gas-driven pneumatic devices, gas samplers, chemical injection pumps, exploratory drilling, loading/ballasting/transit, and loading racks, (2) venting resulting from maintenance/turn-arounds, which may include decoking of furnace tubes, well unloading, vessel and gas compressor depressurising, compressor starts, gas sampling, and pipeline blowdowns, and (3) venting from non-routine activities, which may include pressure relief valves, pressure control valves, fuel supply unloading valves and emergency shut-down devices
 - 4.1.5 Fugitive emissions, including those emissions which can be individually found and "fixed" to make emissions 'near zero' and which may include emissions from valves, flanges, connectors, pumps, compressor seal leaks, Cata-Dyne® heaters, and wastewater treatment and surface impoundments

- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade

System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.

- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Volume 13—Oil & Gas – Refining & Marketing

Industry Description

Oil & Gas - Refining & Marketing (R&M) entities refine petroleum products, market oil and gas products, or operate gas stations, all of which comprise the downstream operations of the oil and gas value chain. The types of refinery products and crude oil inputs influence the complexity of the refining process used, with varied expenditure needs and intensity of environmental and social impacts.

Note: The topics and metrics below are for 'pure-play' R&M activities or independent R&M entities. Integrated oil & gas entities conduct upstream operations and also are involved in the distribution, refining or marketing of products. Separate standards exist for the Oil & Gas - Exploration & Production (EM-EP) and Midstream (EM-MD) industries. As such, integrated entities also should consider the disclosure topics and metrics from those industries.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	EM-RM-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-RM-110a.2
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³),	EM-RM-140a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Product Specifications & Clean Fuel Blends	Extremely High Baseline Water Stress		Percentage (%)	
	Total addressable market and share of market for advanced biofuels and associated infrastructure	Quantitative	Presentation currency, Percentage (%)	EM-RM-410a.2
	Volumes of renewable fuels for fuel blending: (1) net amount produced, (2) net amount purchased	Quantitative	Barrels of oil equivalent (BOE)	EM-RM-410a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Refining throughput of crude oil and other feedstocks ¹⁴	Quantitative	Barrels of oil equivalent (BOE)	EM-RM-000.A
Refining operating capacity ¹⁵	Quantitative	Million barrels per calendar day (MBPD)	EM-RM-000.B

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Oil and Gas R&M operations generate significant direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from a variety of sources. Emissions primarily consist of carbon dioxide and methane from stationary fossil fuel combustion for energy supply. Energy costs are a significant share of refinery operating costs. GHGs also are released from process emissions, fugitive emissions resulting from leaks, emissions from venting and flaring, and from non-routine events such as equipment maintenance. The energy intensity of production, and therefore the GHG emissions intensity, can vary significantly depending on the type of crude oil feedstock used and refined product specifications. Entities that cost-effectively reduce GHG emissions from their operations may capture operational efficiencies. Such reductions also may mitigate the effects of increased fuel costs from regulations that limit—or put a price on—GHG emissions.

Metrics

EM-RM-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 These emissions include direct emissions of GHGs from stationary or mobile sources; these sources include equipment at well sites, production facilities, refineries, chemical plants, terminals, fixed site drilling rigs, office buildings, marine vessels transporting products, tank truck fleets, mobile drilling rigs, and moveable equipment at drilling and production facilities.
 - 2.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.2.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.2.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.2.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.2.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.2.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.2.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)

- 2.3 GHG emission data shall be consolidated according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which is generally aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the GHG Protocol as well as:
- 2.3.1 The financial approach detailed in Chapter 3 of the IPIECA/API/OGP *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for Reporting Greenhouse Gas Emissions*, 2nd Edition, 2011 (hereafter, the 'IPIECA GHG Guidelines')
- 2.3.2 The approach provided by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary,' of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*

- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.
- 3.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:
- 3.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)
- 3.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)
- 3.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)
- 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).
- 3.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.
- 3.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.
- 4 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 5 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 6 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

EM-RM-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset, which may include energy efficiency efforts, energy source diversification, carbon capture and storage, or the implementation of leak detection and repair processes.
- 3 The entity shall discuss activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
 - 4.1 Categories of emissions sources may include:
 - 4.1.1 Flared hydrocarbons, including all emissions emitted from flares and which are associated with the management and disposal of

unrecoverable natural gas via combustion of hydrocarbon products from routine operations, upsets, or emergencies

- 4.1.2 Other combusted emissions, including, but not limited to: (1) emissions from stationary devices, including, but not limited to boilers, heaters, furnaces, reciprocating internal combustion engines and turbines, incinerators, and thermal/catalytic oxidisers, (2) emissions from mobile sources, including, but not limited to barges, ships, railcars, and trucks for material transport; planes/helicopters and other entity vehicles for staff transport; forklifts, all terrain vehicles, construction equipment, and other off-road mobile equipment, and (3) other combusted emissions shall exclude those emissions disclosed as flared hydrocarbons
- 4.1.3 Process emissions, including, but not limited to those emissions that are not combusted and are intentional or designed into the process or technology to occur during normal operations and are a result of some form of chemical transformation or processing step. Such emissions include, but are not limited to those from hydrogen plants, amine units, glycol dehydrators, fluid catalytic cracking unit and reformer generation, and flexi-coker coke burn
- 4.1.4 Vented emissions, including those emissions that are not combusted and are intentional or designed into the process or technology to occur during normal operations, and which include, but are not limited to: (1) venting from crude oil, condensate, or natural gas product storage tanks, gas-driven pneumatic devices, gas samplers, chemical injection pumps, exploratory drilling, loading/ballasting/transit, and loading racks, (2) venting resulting from maintenance/turn-arounds, including, but not limited to decoking of furnace tubes, well unloading, vessel and gas compressor depressurising, compressor starts, gas sampling, and pipeline blowdowns, and (3) venting from non-routine activities, including but not limited to pressure relief valves, pressure control valves, fuel supply unloading valves, and emergency shut-down devices
- 4.1.5 Fugitive emissions, including those emissions which can be individually found and 'fixed' to make emissions 'near zero' and which include, but are not limited to emissions from valves, flanges, connectors, pumps, compressor seal leaks, Cata-Dyne® heaters, and wastewater treatment and surface impoundments

- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.

- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Water Management

Topic Summary

Refineries can use large quantities of water depending on their size and refining process complexity. This water use exposes them to the risk of water scarcity, depending on their location, and related costs. Extraction of water from water-stressed regions or water contamination also may create tensions with local communities. Refinery operations require wastewater treatment and disposal, often via on-site wastewater treatment plants before discharge. Reducing water use and contamination through recycling and other water management strategies may permit entities to capture operational efficiencies and reduce operating costs. They also could minimise regulatory, water supply shortages and community-related disruptions on operations.

Metrics

EM-RM-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.

- 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea

- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

Product Specifications & Clean Fuel Blends

Topic Summary

Some regulatory jurisdictions have implemented product specifications and renewable fuel blends, which pose significant compliance and operational risks for Refining & Marketing entities. Entities may face long-term reductions in revenue from fossil fuel-based products and services because of GHG mitigation policies such as renewable fuel mandates or standards, as well as competition from non-fossil fuel products. To ensure regulatory compliance and position themselves for long-term competitiveness, some entities are investing in clean fuel production or purchasing ethanol and other renewable biofuels. Advanced biofuels and fuel technologies have lower lifecycle impacts than traditional biofuels, and they can be used to minimise future regulatory risks and public pressure. Although short-term costs to find commercially viable technologies can be significant, investments in R&D for such technologies could serve to support R&M entities' long-term profitability.

Metrics

EM-RM-410a.2. Total addressable market and share of market for advanced biofuels and associated infrastructure

- 1 The entity shall provide an estimation of the total addressable market for advanced biofuels and associated infrastructure.
 - 1.1 Total addressable market is defined as potential revenue should the entity capture 100% of the market share of the product category (for example, the global market for advanced biofuels and advanced biofuel infrastructure).
- 2 The entity shall disclose the share of the total addressable market for advanced biofuels or associated infrastructure it currently captures with its products.

2.1 Market share shall be calculated as revenue from these products divided by the size of the total addressable market.

3 Advanced biofuels are defined as biofuels other than ethanol derived from corn starch (kernels) and having 50% lower lifecycle greenhouse gas emissions relative to gasoline.

4 Revenue from advanced biofuel infrastructure includes that from the entity's retail operations (fuel stations), joint ventures with primary producers, or technologies that enable the production of advanced biofuels.

5 If a significant difference exists between the total addressable market and the market the entity can serve through its existing or planned capabilities, sales channels or products (the serviceable available market), then the entity may disclose this information.

6 The entity may provide a projection of growth of this market, where the projected addressable market is represented—based on a reasonable set of assumptions about changes in market conditions— as a percentage of year-on-year growth or as an estimate of the market size after a defined period (the market size in 10 years).

6.1 The entity may disclose its target three-year market share as a measurement of targeted growth, where the target is the percentage of the total addressable market that the entity plans to address over a three-year time horizon.

7 The entity may discuss other non-revenue generating initiatives it has undertaken to commercialise biofuels, such as partnerships (for example, pilot projects, research and development projects) with fleet operators (air, ground or marine transportation), airlines, vehicle manufacturers and governmental agencies.

EM-RM-410a.3. Volumes of renewable fuels for fuel blending: (1) net amount produced, (2) net amount purchased

1 The entity shall disclose the net volumes in barrels of oil equivalent of renewable fuels produced, including biofuel, cellulosic biofuel, ethanol, advanced biofuels, and other renewable fuels for use in fuel blending.

2 The entity shall disclose the net amounts of renewable fuels purchased.

3 Net amounts are defined as volumes produced or purchased for use in fuel blending, less amounts sold to independent third parties in arms-length transactions during the reporting period, either directly or indirectly.

4 Some jurisdictions permit volume 'double-counting' based on types of advanced renewable fuels used or alternative methods of production. For the purposes of this disclosure, an entity shall not double-count renewable fuel volumes.

5 The entity shall disclose the conversion factors and assumptions used to convert renewable fuel volumes to barrels of oil equivalent (BOE).

6 The entity may include an analysis of its biofuel production capacity and total renewable fuel production of: (1) renewable fuel, (2) advanced biofuel, (3) biomass-based diesel

and (4) cellulosic biofuel in barrels of oil equivalent (BOE).

Volume 14—Oil & Gas – Services

Industry Description

Oil and gas services entities drill under contract, manufacture equipment, or provide support services. Drilling and drilling-support entities drill for oil and natural gas on-shore and off-shore on a contract basis for oil and natural gas exploration and production (E&P) entities. For on-shore exploration and production, entities in the oilfield services segment manufacture equipment used in the extraction, storage and transportation of oil and natural gas. For off-shore, entities in this segment may manufacture jack-up rigs, semisubmersible rigs, drill ships and a range of other exploration equipment. They also provide support services such as seismic surveying, equipment rental, well cementing and well monitoring. These services commonly are provided on a contractual basis, and the customer purchases or leases the materials and equipment from the service provider. Service entities also may provide personnel or subject matter expertise as part of their scope of service. The contractual relationship between oil and gas services entities and their customers plays a significant role in determining the material impacts of their sustainability performance. Besides the rates charged, entities compete based on their operational and safety performance, technology and process offerings, project management performance, and reputation.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Emissions Reduction Services & Fuels Management	Total fuel consumed, percentage renewable, percentage used in: (1) on-road equipment and vehicles and (2) off-road equipment	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	EM-SV-110a.1
	Discussion of strategy or plans to address air emissions-related risks, opportunities and impacts	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-SV-110a.2
	Percentage of engines in service that comply with the highest level of emissions	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	EM-SV-110a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	standards for non-road diesel engine emissions			
Water Management Services	(1) Total volume of water handled in operations, (2) percentage recycled	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	EM-SV-140a.1
	Discussion of strategy or plans to address water consumption and disposal-related risks, opportunities and impacts	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	EM-SV-140a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of active rig sites ¹⁶	Quantitative	Number	EM-SV-000.A
Number of active well sites ¹⁷	Quantitative	Number	EM-SV-000.B
Total amount of drilling performed	Quantitative	Metres (m)	EM-SV-000.C
Total number of hours worked by all employees	Quantitative	Hours	EM-SV-000.D

Emissions Reduction Services & Fuels Management

Topic Summary

Although direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions and associated regulatory risks are relatively low for oil and gas services providers relative to other industries, emissions from the operations of their customers—the oil and gas exploration and production (E&P) entities—can be significant. Emissions include GHGs that can contribute to climate change as well as other air pollutants that can have significant localised human health and environmental impacts. Increasing regulation and high costs of fuels associated with these emissions present substantial risk to E&P entities. Entities are seeking ways to lower their emissions, including

converting pumps and engines to run on natural gas and electricity instead of diesel fuel. Oil and gas services entities compete for contracts partly based on providing innovative, efficient technologies that can help E&P entities reduce operating costs and improve process efficiencies. Services entities can gain a competitive advantage, grow revenue and secure market share by providing customers with services and equipment to reduce GHG, fugitive and flared emissions and fuel consumption.

Metrics

EM-SV-110a.1. Total fuel consumed, percentage renewable, percentage used in: (1) on-road equipment and vehicles and (2) off-road equipment

- 1 The entity shall disclose total fuel consumed from all sources as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.
 - 1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:
 - 1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, less any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period
 - 1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicles
 - 1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of the total amount of fuel consumed from all sources that is renewable.
 - 2.1 Renewable fuel generally is defined as fuel that meets all these requirements:
 - 2.1.1 Produced from renewable biomass
 - 2.1.2 Used to replace or reduce the quantity of fossil fuel present in a transportation fuel, heating oil or jet fuel
 - 2.1.3 Achieved net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a lifecycle basis
 - 2.2 The entity shall disclose the standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable.
 - 2.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of renewable fuel consumed by the entity's fleet vehicles (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed by the entity's fleet vehicles (in GJ).
- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of total fuel consumed by (1) on-road, mobile equipment and vehicles and (2) off-road equipment, including stationary rigs, generators and mounted equipment.

- 4 The scope of disclosure includes only fuel consumed by entities owned or controlled by the entity.
 - 4.1 The scope excludes non-fuel energy sources such as purchased electricity and purchased steam.
 - 4.2 The scope of disclosure includes combustion sources owned or operated by the entity, regardless of which entity bears the cost of fuel or considers greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from these sources to be part of its Scope 1 inventory.
- 5 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are directly measured or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 6 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels).

EM-SV-110a.2. Discussion of strategy or plans to address air emissions-related risks, opportunities and impacts

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategies or plans to address air-emissions-related risks, opportunities and impacts.
 - 1.1 The scope of disclosure includes the entity's strategies, plans or emissions-reduction activities, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or emissions sources.
 - 1.2 The scope of disclosure includes activities and investments required to achieve the plans, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 1.3 The scope of disclosure includes the discussion of the demand for specific products, services and technologies that reduce well and field operators' fuel consumption, emissions, or create other efficiencies, and its ability to meet this demand.
- 2 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term plans related to air quality management, where:
 - 2.1 Short-term strategies may include fuel substitution (for example, drop-in biodiesel), use of dual fuel equipment or engine maintenance.
 - 2.2 Long-term strategies may include alternative fuel equipment, process or equipment redesigns and innovations, and carbon capture and storage.
- 3 The scope of disclosure shall include, at a minimum, emissions from these specific sources:
 - 3.1 Combustion emissions (for example, fuel use in gas compression, power generation)
 - 3.2 Flaring of hydrocarbons (for example, in depressurising, start-up/shut-down, well testing and well work-over)

- 3.3 Process emissions (for example, vessel loading, tank storage and flushing)
- 3.4 Venting of hydrocarbons, defined as the intentional (or designed), controlled release of gas to the atmosphere during normal operations
- 3.5 Fugitive emissions of greenhouse gases (including equipment leaks)
- 3.6 Other non-routine events (for example, gas releases or equipment maintenance)

- 4 The entity shall discuss risks and opportunities relating to its ability to offer customers services, technologies or solutions that enhance energy efficiency and reduce air emissions, including of greenhouse gases.

EM-SV-110a.3. Percentage of engines in service that comply with the highest level of emissions standards for non-road diesel engine emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its non-road diesel engines that comply with the highest level of jurisdictional emissions standards.
 - 1.1 The scope of disclosure shall include new and in-use non-road diesel engines, which may include those used in equipment, pumps, compressors and generators.
- 2 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the new and in-use number of non-road diesel engines in full compliance with the highest level of jurisdictional emissions standards during the reporting period, divided by the total number of non-road diesel engines active during the reporting period, where:
 - 2.1 An engine is considered in compliance with the standards if (1) it belongs to an engine family which has test results showing official emission results and deteriorated emission levels at or below these standards, and (2) the engine family has received confirmation from a relevant certifying or regulatory body indicating alignment with the standard used.
 - 2.2 Engine families are defined as engine product lines expected to have similar emissions characteristics.
 - 2.3 The highest level of jurisdictional emissions standards represent the most stringent emissions requirements applicable to the jurisdiction in which its non-road diesel engines operate.
- 3 Engines exempt from the jurisdictional standard, such as some marine engines, shall be exempt for the purposes of this disclosure.
- 4 The scope of disclosure includes all operations, regardless of jurisdiction.
- 5 The scope of disclosure includes non-road diesel engines manufactured, owned or operated by the entity, regardless of which entity bears the compliance obligation.
- 6 The entity shall disclose the jurisdictional emission standard used in its disclosure, based on the jurisdiction in which its non-road diesel engines operate.

Water Management Services

Topic Summary

Oil and gas development often requires large quantities of water, exposing producers to the risks of water scarcity, water use regulations and related cost increases, particularly in water-stressed regions. Producers also must manage wastewater disposal risks and costs. As such, service entities that develop superior technologies and processes, such as closed-loop water recycling systems to reduce customers' water consumption and disposal costs, may gain market share and increase revenue, because drilling and wastewater management can be a significant competitive factor for their customers.

Metrics

EM-SV-140a.1. (1) Total volume of water handled in operations, (2) percentage recycled

- 1 The entity shall disclose the volume of water, in thousands of cubic metres, handled in operations from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
 - 1.2 Handled water is transferred to the entity from a third party as part of an entity's contractual scope of service or is obtained directly and used by the entity in its operations.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local statutes and regulations where the entity operates. Where no regulatory definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of water recycled as the volume recycled divided by the volume of water handled.
- 4 Recycled water shall include the amount recycled in closed-loop and open-loop systems as well as recycled produced water or flowback.
 - 4.1 Any volume of water used more than once shall be counted as recycled each time it was recycled and reused.
- 5 Produced water is defined as water (brine) brought up from the hydrocarbon-bearing formation strata during the extraction of oil and gas and can include formation water, injection water, and any chemicals added downhole or during the oil/water separation process.

- 6 Flowback is defined as the process of allowing fluids (including water) and entrained solids to flow from a well following a treatment, either in preparation for a subsequent phase of treatment or in preparation for clean-up and returning the well to production.
 - 6.1 The term flowback also means the fluids and entrained solids that emerge from a well during the flowback process. The flowback period begins when material introduced into the well during the treatment returns to the surface following hydraulic fracturing or refracturing.
 - 6.2 The flowback period ends when either the well is shut in and permanently disconnected from the flowback equipment or at production start-up.
 - 6.3 The flowback period includes the initial flowback stage and the separation flowback stage.
- 7 The scope is limited to operations for which the entity provides hydraulic fracturing, completion, drilling or water management services (for example, water treatment for reuse in drilling or hydraulic fracturing, and reduction of unwanted water in subsurface areas).
 - 7.1 The scope may include water used in hydraulic fracturing fluids, drilling fluids, dust control and drilling cement production.

EM-SV-140a.2. Discussion of strategy or plans to address water consumption and disposal-related risks, opportunities and impacts

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategy or plans to address water consumption and disposal-related risks, opportunities and impacts.
 - 1.1 The scope of disclosure shall include the entity's strategies, plans or reduction activities, including whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or water sources.
 - 1.2 The scope of disclosure includes the activities and investments by the entity required to achieve the plans and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 2 The entity shall discuss demand for specific products, services and technologies that offer well and field operators reduced water consumption, water recycling or other water impact reductions, and its ability to meet this demand.
- 3 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term plans related to water management, where:
 - 3.1 Short-term strategies may include adopting best practices in water recycling or water efficiency initiatives.
 - 3.2 Long-term strategies may include process redesigns or technological innovations that reduce fresh water withdrawal in water constrained regions, reduce excess water production from wells, and provide water treatment or recycling systems.

- 4 The scope of impact reductions may relate to the following specific areas of water consumption or disposal:
 - 4.1 Hydraulic fracturing fluids
 - 4.2 Drilling fluids
 - 4.3 Dust control
 - 4.4 Cement production
 - 4.5 Produced water or flowback
- 5 The entity shall discuss risks and opportunities relating to: being able to offer customers services, technologies or solutions that enhance water use efficiency, treatment and reuse, and reduce water consumption or wastewater production.

Financials Sector -

Volume 15—Asset Management & Custody Activities -

Industry Description

Asset Management & Custody Activities industry entities manage investment portfolios on a commission or fee basis for institutional, retail and high net-worth investors. In addition, entities in this industry provide wealth management, private banking, financial planning, and investment advisory and retail securities brokerage services. Investment portfolios and strategies may be diversified across multiple asset classes, which may include equities, fixed income and hedge fund investments. Specific entities are engaged in venture capital and private equity investments. The industry provides essential services to a range of customers from individual retail investors to large, institutional asset owners to meet specified investment goals. Entities in the industry range from large multi-jurisdictional asset managers with a wide range of investable products, strategies and asset classes to small boutique entities providing services to specific market niches. While large entities generally compete based on management fees charged for their services as well as their potential to generate superior investment performance, the smaller entities generally compete on their ability to provide products and services customised to satisfy the diversification needs of individual clients. The global 2008 financial crisis and subsequent regulatory regime developments highlight the industry's importance in providing fair advice to customers and managing risks at the entity, portfolio and macroeconomic levels.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Incorporation of Environmental, Social, and Governance Factors in Investment Management & Advisory	Amount of assets under management, by asset class, that employ (1) integration of environmental, social, and governance (ESG) issues, (2) sustainability themed investing and (3) screening	Quantitative	Presentation currency	FN-AC-410a.1
	Description of approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in investment or wealth management processes and strategies	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FN-AC-410a.2
	Description of proxy voting and investee engagement policies and procedures	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FN-AC-410a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Total assets under management (AUM)	Quantitative	Presentation currency	FN-AC-000.A
Total assets under custody and supervision	Quantitative	Presentation currency	FN-AC-000.B

Incorporation of Environmental, Social, and Governance Factors in Investment Management & Advisory

Topic Summary

Asset Management & Custody Activities entities maintain a fiduciary responsibility to their clients. These entities must consider and incorporate an analysis of all material information into investment decisions, including environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors. The process of ESG investment involves consideration of ESG factors in valuation, modelling, portfolio construction, proxy voting and engagement with investees and, as a result, in investment decision-making by asset and wealth managers. As the management and use of

non-financial forms of capital increasingly contribute to market value, incorporation of ESG factors in the analysis of investees has become more relevant. Research has established that an entity's management of some ESG factors may impact materially both its accounting and market returns. Therefore, deep understanding of investees' ESG performance, integration of ESG factors in valuation and modelling, as well as engagement with investees on sustainability issues allows asset managers to generate superior returns. On the other hand, asset management and custody activities industry entities that fail to consider these risks and opportunities in their investment management activities may witness diminished investment portfolio returns that may result in reduced performance fees. Over the long term, these failures could result in an outflow of assets under management (AUM), the loss of market share and lower management fees.

Metrics

FN-AC-410a.1. Amount of assets under management, by asset class, that employ (1) integration of environmental, social, and governance (ESG) issues, (2) sustainability themed investing and (3) screening

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of assets under management (AUM) that employ (1) integration of environmental, social and governance (ESG) issues, (2) sustainability themed investing, and (3) screening.
 - 1.1 AUM shall be defined broadly as the total market value, expressed in the entity's presentation currency, of the assets managed by a financial institution on behalf of clients.
 - 1.2 Integration of ESG issues is defined as the systematic and explicit inclusion of material ESG factors into investment analysis and investment decisions, as aligned with the *PRI Reporting Framework – Main definitions 2018*.
 - 1.3 Sustainability themed investing is defined as investment in themes or assets specifically related to sustainability (for example, clean energy, green technology or sustainable agriculture), as aligned with the *PRI Reporting Framework—Main definitions 2018*.
 - 1.4 Screening, including (a) negative/exclusionary, (b) positive/best-in-class and (c) norms-based, is defined by the *PRI Reporting Framework—Main definitions 2018*.
 - 1.5 The scope of disclosure includes both passive and active strategies.
- 2 The entity shall disaggregate its disclosure by asset class: (a) equities, (b) fixed income, (c) cash equivalents/money market instruments and (d) other (for example, real estate and commodities).
- 3 The entity shall identify and disclose the amount of any AUM managed using more than one ESG integration strategy (for example, screening and integration).

FN-AC-410a.2. Description of approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in investment or wealth management processes and strategies

- 1 The entity shall describe its approach to the incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in its investment or wealth management processes and strategies.
 - 1.1 The definition of incorporation of ESG factors is aligned with that of the Global Sustainable Investment Alliance (GSIA) and includes the use of ESG information in investment decision-making processes.
 - 1.2 Examples of ESG factors and issues are provided in the *PRI Reporting Framework—Main definitions 2018*, section ‘ESG issues’.
 - 1.3 Incorporation of ESG factors includes the following approaches, consistent with the *PRI Reporting Framework—Main definitions 2018*:
 - 1.3.1 Screening, including (a) negative/exclusionary, (b) positive/best-in-class and (c) norms-based
 - 1.3.2 Sustainability themed investment, defined as investment in themes or assets specifically related to sustainability (for example, clean energy, green technology or sustainable agriculture)
 - 1.3.3 Integration of ESG, defined as the systematic and explicit inclusion of material ESG factors into investment analysis and investment decisions
 - 1.3.4 A combination of the above
- 2 The entity shall describe the policies that determine its approach to the incorporation of ESG factors in its investment or wealth management processes and strategies.
- 3 The scope of disclosure shall exclude discussion of the entity’s proxy voting and investee engagement policies and procedures, which is included in metric FN-AC-410a.3, ‘Description of proxy voting and investee engagement policies and procedures’.
- 4 The entity shall describe its approach to implementation of the aspects of the entity’s ESG incorporation practices.
 - 4.1 The discussion shall include, but is not limited to:
 - 4.1.1 Parties responsible for the day-to-day incorporation of ESG factors
 - 4.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved
 - 4.1.3 Approach to conducting ESG-related research
 - 4.1.4 Approach to incorporating ESG factors into investment strategies
- 5 The entity shall describe its oversight/accountability approach to the incorporation of ESG factors.
 - 5.1 The discussion shall include:
 - 5.1.1 Formal oversight individuals or bodies involved
 - 5.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved

5.1.3 Criteria used in assessing the quality of ESG incorporation

- 6 The entity shall discuss whether it conducts scenario analysis or modelling in which the risk profile of future ESG trends is calculated at the portfolio level.
 - 6.1 ESG trends may include climate change, natural resource constraints, human capital risks and opportunities, and cybersecurity risks.
 - 6.2 The entity shall describe the types of portfolios or strategies in which it executes scenario analysis or modelling.
 - 6.2.1 The entity is not required to provide such disclosure at the individual portfolio or strategy level.
- 7 The entity shall discuss ESG trends it considers apply broadly in terms of their effect on sectors and industries, as well as the trends it deems as sector- or industry-specific.
- 8 The entity shall describe whether it incorporates ESG factors in strategic asset allocation or allocation of assets between sectors or geographical markets.
 - 8.1 The entity shall describe the types of portfolios or strategies in which it incorporates ESG factors in strategic asset allocation or allocation of assets between sectors or geographical markets.
 - 8.1.1 The entity is not required to provide such disclosure at the individual portfolio or strategy level.
- 9 The entity shall describe how ESG factors are incorporated in the assessment of and how it influences the entity's views on:
 - 9.1 Time horizon of investments
 - 9.2 Risk and return profiles of investments
 - 9.3 Traditional fundamental factors such as economic conditions, central bank policy, industry trends and geopolitical risks
- 10 When relevant, the entity shall discuss its approach to incorporation of ESG factors in selecting external fund managers and fiduciary managers.
 - 10.1 The entity shall describe its oversight/accountability approach to assessing the quality of incorporation of ESG factors by external fund managers and fiduciary managers, which may include:
 - 10.1.1 Formal oversight individuals or bodies involved
 - 10.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved
 - 10.1.3 Criteria used in assessing the quality of ESG incorporation

- 11 The scope of disclosure shall include investment or wealth management services in which the entity maintains decision-making power, regardless of strategy and asset class.
- 12 The scope of disclosure shall exclude execution or advisory services in which investment decision-making power remains with clients.
- 13 When relevant, the description of the entity's approach to incorporation of ESG factors in its investment or wealth management activities shall be broken down by asset class or by style employed.
 - 13.1 The discussion shall include the differences in the entity's approaches to incorporation of ESG factors in:
 - 13.1.1 Public equity, fixed income, private equity or alternative asset classes
 - 13.1.2 Passive versus active investment strategies
 - 13.1.3 Fundamental, quantitative and technical analyses of investments

FN-AC-410a.3. Description of proxy voting and investee engagement policies and procedures

- 1 The entity shall describe its approach to proxy voting, which may include its process for making proxy voting decisions, including its approach to defining materiality.
 - 1.1 The discussion shall include, but is not limited to, elements highlighted in *PR/ Reporting Framework 2019 Direct—Listed Equity Active Ownership*:
 - 1.1.1 The scope of the entity's voting activities
 - 1.1.2 The objectives of the entity's voting activities
 - 1.1.3 How, if at all, the entity's voting approach differs among markets
 - 1.1.4 Whether the entity has a default position of voting in favour of management in particular markets or on particular issues
 - 1.1.5 Whether and how local regulatory or other requirements influence the entity's approach to voting
 - 1.1.6 Whether the entity votes by proxy or in person by attending annual general meetings (AGMs) (or a combination of both)
 - 1.2 The entity shall describe its approach to determining support for proposals, including its approach to defining materiality.
 - 1.2.1 The scope of disclosure includes proposals addressing environmental and social (ES) issues.
 - 1.3 The entity shall describe how it communicates its proxy voting policy to clients and to the public.
 - 1.3.1 The entity may provide the link to its formal proxy voting policy.

- 2 The entity shall describe its process of making proxy voting decisions.
 - 2.1 The discussion shall include the elements highlighted in *PRI Reporting Framework 2019 Direct—Listed Equity Active Ownership*, which include:
 - 2.1.1 Use of internal research team or third-party service providers
 - 2.1.2 Review and monitoring process for service provider recommendations
- 3 The entity shall describe its approach to communicating voting decisions to entity management, including the rationale for voting for/against management's recommendations.
- 4 The entity shall describe its approach to engagement on ES issues.
 - 4.1 The discussion shall include:
 - 4.1.1 The entity's objectives for undertaking engagement activities
 - 4.1.2 Whether the entity's engagements related to ES issues are primarily proactive to ensure that ES issues are well-managed in a preventive manner or reactive to address issues that may have already occurred
 - 4.1.3 The outcomes the entity seeks from engaging with entities on ES issues (for example, influencing corporate practice; improving the quality of ES disclosure)
 - 4.1.4 The entity's staff that carries out the engagement (for example, specialised in-house engagement teams, fund managers or equity/credit analysts, more senior-level roles)
 - 4.1.5 The roles of individuals at the portfolio entities the entity seeks to engage with (for example, board members, board chair, CEO, corporate secretary, investor relations managers)
 - 4.2 The entity shall describe how it communicates its engagement policy to clients and to the public.
 - 4.2.1 The entity may provide the link to its formal engagement policy.
 - 4.3 The scope of disclosure includes all asset classes, portfolios or strategies in which the entity engages on ES issues.

- 5 The entity shall describe how the outcomes of its proxy voting and engagement activities inform its investment decision-making process.
 - 5.1 The discussion shall include:
 - 5.1.1 How the entity decides what information to pass on to investment decision-makers
 - 5.1.2 How the entity monitors the use of the information passed on in investment decision-making

- 6 The entity shall describe its escalation process for engagements when entity dialogue is failing.
 - 6.1 The escalation process may include tactics highlighted in the *International Corporate Governance Network (ICGN) Global Stewardship Principles*:
 - 6.1.1 Expressing concerns to corporate representatives or non-executive directors, either directly or in a shareholder meeting
 - 6.1.2 Expressing the entity's concerns collectively with other investors
 - 6.1.3 Making a public statement
 - 6.1.4 Submitting shareholder resolutions
 - 6.1.5 Speaking at general meetings
 - 6.1.6 Submitting one or more nominations for election to the board as appropriate and convening a shareholder meeting
 - 6.1.7 Seeking governance improvements or damages through legal remedies or arbitration
 - 6.1.8 Exit or threat to exit from the investment

- 7 The entity shall describe how its ES engagement strategy fits into its overall engagement strategy.

- 8 The entity may disclose additional quantitative measures related to its proxy voting and engagement activities, such as:
 - 8.1 Number of engagements and percentage of those in-person
 - 8.2 Number of staff involved in proxy voting and engagement activities

Volume 16—Commercial Banks

Industry Description

Commercial banks accept deposits and make loans to individuals and corporations, and engage in lending to infrastructure, real estate and other projects. By providing these services,

the industry serves an essential role in the functioning of global economies and in facilitating the transfer of financial resources to their most productive capacity. The industry is driven by the volume of deposits, quality of loans made, the economic environment and interest rates. The risk from mismatched assets and liabilities further characterises the industry. The regulatory environment governing the commercial banking industry witnessed significant changes in the wake of the 2008 global financial crisis and continues to evolve today. These and other regulatory trends may affect performance. Commercial banks with global operations must manage new regulations in many jurisdictions that are creating regulatory uncertainty, particularly regarding the consistent application of new rules.

Note: This standard addresses 'pure play' commercial banking services, which may not include all the activities of integrated financial institutions, such as investment banking and brokerage services, mortgage finance, consumer finance, asset management and custody services, and insurance. Separate standards address the sustainability issues for activities in those industries.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Incorporation of Environmental, Social, and Governance Factors in Credit Analysis	Description of approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in credit analysis	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FN-CB-410a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
(1) Number and (2) value of checking and savings accounts by segment: (a) personal and (b) small business	Quantitative	Number, Presentation currency	FN-CB-000.A
(1) Number and (2) value of loans by segment: (a) personal, (b) small business, and (c) corporate ¹⁸	Quantitative	Number, Presentation currency	FN-CB-000.B

Incorporation of Environmental, Social, and Governance Factors in Credit Analysis

Topic Summary

As financial intermediaries, commercial banks contribute to significant positive and negative environmental and social externalities through their lending practices. Environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors can have material implications for the underlying entities, assets and projects to which commercial banks lend across a range of industries. Therefore, entities increasingly must examine ESG factors when determining the quality of collateral. Commercial banks also may enable positive environmental and social externalities to generate significant revenue streams through their lending practices. Commercial banks that fail to address these risks and opportunities could face diminished returns and reduced value for shareholders. Commercial banks should subsequently disclose how ESG factors are integrated into lending processes and the current level of portfolio risk associated with specific sustainability trends. Specifically, investor and regulatory pressure is mounting for banks to disclose how they address climate change related risks.

Metrics

FN-CB-410a.2. Description of approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in credit analysis

- 1 The entity shall describe its approach to the incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in its credit analysis.
 - 1.1 The definition of incorporation of ESG factors is aligned with that of the Global Sustainable Investment Alliance (GSIA) and includes the use of ESG information in the investment decision-making processes.
 - 1.2 Examples of ESG factors and issues are provided in the *PRI Reporting Framework—Main definitions 2018*, section 'ESG issues'.
 - 1.3 Credit analysis is defined as a method to calculate the creditworthiness of a business or organisation to honour debt obligations. This method seeks to identify the appropriate level of default risk associated with financing such business, organisation or project.
- 2 The scope of disclosure shall include commercial and industrial lending as well as project finance.
- 3 The entity shall describe the policies that determine its approach to the incorporation of ESG factors in its credit analysis.
- 4 The entity shall discuss how it incorporates ESG factors when estimating credit losses over the contractual term of the entity's financial assets.
- 5 The entity shall describe its approach to implementation of the aspects of the entity's ESG incorporation practices.
 - 5.1 The description shall include:
 - 5.1.1 Parties responsible for the day-to-day incorporation of ESG factors
 - 5.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved
 - 5.1.3 Approach to ESG-related research

5.1.4 Approach to incorporating ESG factors into assessing creditworthiness of borrowers

- 6 The entity shall describe its oversight and accountability approach to the incorporation of ESG factors.
 - 6.1 The description shall include:
 - 6.1.1 Formal oversight individuals or bodies involved
 - 6.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved
 - 6.1.3 Criteria used in assessing the quality of ESG incorporation
- 7 The entity shall discuss whether it conducts scenario analysis or modelling in which the risk profile of future ESG trends is calculated at the portfolio level of commercial and industrial credit exposure.
 - 7.1 ESG trends may include climate change, natural resource constraints, human capital risks and opportunities, and cybersecurity risks.
- 8 The entity shall discuss ESG trends it considers apply broadly in terms of their effect on sectors and industries, as well as the trends it deems as sector- or industry-specific.
 - 8.1 The entity may further provide the discussion in the context of geographical exposure of its commercial and industrial credit portfolio.
- 9 The entity shall describe significant concentrations of credit exposure to ESG factors, which may include carbon-related assets, water-stressed regions and cybersecurity risks.
- 10 The entity shall describe how ESG factors are incorporated in the assessment of and influence the entity's views on:
 - 10.1 Traditional macroeconomic factors such as the economic conditions, central bank monetary policy, industry trends, and geopolitical risks that affect creditworthiness of borrowers
 - 10.2 Traditional microeconomic factors such as supply and demand for products or services that affect financial conditions and operational results of borrowers as well as their creditworthiness
 - 10.3 Overall creditworthiness of a borrower
 - 10.4 Maturity or tenor of a loan
 - 10.5 Expected loss, including probability of default, exposure at default and loss given default
 - 10.6 Value of posted collateral

- 11 The entity may disclose additional quantitative measures related to its approach to the incorporation of ESG factors in credit analysis, such as:
- 11.1 Number of commercial and industrial loans and project finance screened according to the Equator Principles (EP III) (or equivalent) by EP Category
- 11.2 Number of loans for which a review of environmental or social risks was performed, for example, by the entity’s Environmental and Social Risk Management (ESRM) group

Volume 17—Insurance

-

Industry Description

The Insurance industry provides both traditional and non-traditional insurance-related products. Traditional policy lines include property, life, casualty and reinsurance. Non-traditional products include annuities, alternative risk transfers and financial guarantees. Entities in the insurance industry also engage in proprietary investments. Insurance entities generally operate within a single segment in the industry, for example, property and casualty, although some large insurance entities have diversified operations. Similarly, entities may vary based on the level of their geographical segmentation. Whereas large entities may underwrite insurance premiums in many countries, smaller entities generally operate in a single country or jurisdiction. Insurance premiums, underwriting revenue and investment income drive industry growth, while insurance claim payments present the most significant cost and source of uncertainty for profits. Insurance entities provide products and services that enable the transfer, pooling and sharing of risk necessary for a well-functioning economy. Insurance entities, through their products, can also create a form of moral hazard, reducing incentives to improve underlying behaviour and performance, and thus contributing to sustainability-related impacts. Like other financial institutions, insurance entities face risks associated with credit and financial markets. Within the industry, regulators have identified entities that engage in non-traditional or non-insurance activities, including credit default swaps (CDS) protection and debt securities insurance, as being more vulnerable to financial market developments, and therefore more likely to amplify or contribute to systemic risk. As a result, some insurance entities may be designated as Systemically Important Financial Institutions, thus exposing them to increased regulation and oversight.

Note: Topics and metrics regarding sustainability issues associated with the provision of health insurance are outlined in the Managed Care (HC-MC) industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Incorporation of Environmental, Social and Governance Factors in Investment Management	Description of approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in investment management processes and strategies	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FN-IN-410a.2
Policies Designed to Incentivise Responsible Behaviour	Net premiums written related to energy efficiency and low carbon technology	Quantitative	Presentation currency	FN-IN-410b.1
	Discussion of products or product features that incentivise health, safety or environmentally responsible actions or behaviours	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FN-IN-410b.2
Physical Risk Exposure	Probable Maximum Loss (PML) of insured products from weather-related natural catastrophes ¹⁹	Quantitative	Presentation currency	FN-IN-450a.1
	Total amount of monetary losses attributable to insurance pay-outs from (1) modelled natural catastrophes and (2) non-modelled natural catastrophes, by type of event and geographical segment (net and gross of reinsurance) ²⁰	Quantitative	Presentation currency	FN-IN-450a.2
	Description of approach to incorporation of environmental risks into (1) the underwriting process for individual contracts and (2) the management of entity-	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FN-IN-450a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	level risks and capital adequacy			

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of policies in force, by segment: (1) property and casualty, (2) life, (3) assumed reinsurance ²¹	Quantitative	Number	FN-IN-000.A

Incorporation of Environmental, Social and Governance Factors in Investment Management

Topic Summary

Insurance entities must invest capital to preserve accumulated premium revenues equivalent to expected policy claim pay-outs and maintain long-term asset-liability parity. Because environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors increasingly have a material impact on the performance of corporations and other assets, insurance entities increasingly must incorporate these factors into their investment management. Failure to address these issues may diminish risk-adjusted portfolio returns and limit an entity’s ability to issue claim payments. Entities, therefore, should enhance disclosure on how they incorporate ESG factors, including climate change and natural resource constraints, into the investment of policy premiums and how they affect the portfolio risk.

Metrics

FN-IN-410a.2. Description of approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in investment management processes and strategies

- 1The entity shall describe its approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in its investment management processes and strategies.
- 1.1The definition of incorporation of ESG factors is aligned with that of the Global Sustainable Investment Alliance (GSIA) and includes the use of ESG information in the investment decision-making processes.

1.2The *PRI Reporting Framework—Main definitions 2018*, section ‘ESG issues’, provides examples of ESG factors/issues.

1.3Incorporation of ESG factors includes the following approaches, consistent with the *PRI Reporting Framework—Main definitions 2018*:

1.3.1Screening, including a) negative/exclusionary, b) positive/best-in-class and c) norms-based

- 1.3.2 Sustainability-themed investment, defined as investment in themes or assets specifically related to sustainability (for example, clean energy, green technology or sustainable agriculture)
- 1.3.3 Integration of ESG, defined as the systematic and explicit inclusion of material ESG factors into investment analysis and investment decisions
- 1.3.4 A combination of the approaches.

- 2 The entity shall describe regulatory requirements to which it is subject that limit the types of allowable investments the entity may make, as well as the allowable credit and equity risk to which the entity may be exposed.
 - 2.1 The description of the entity's approach to incorporation of ESG factors in its investment management processes and strategies shall be provided in the context of the regulatory environment to which the entity is subject.
- 3 The entity shall describe policies that determine its approach to incorporation of ESG factors in its investment management processes and strategies.
- 4 The entity shall describe how it implements ESG incorporation practices.
 - 4.1 The discussion shall include:
 - 4.1.1 Parties responsible for day-to-day incorporation of ESG factors
 - 4.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved
 - 4.1.3 Approach to conducting ESG-related research
 - 4.1.4 Approach to incorporating ESG factors into investment strategies
- 5 The entity shall describe its oversight/accountability approach to the incorporation of ESG factors.
 - 5.1 The discussion shall include:
 - 5.1.1 Formal oversight individuals or bodies involved
 - 5.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved
 - 5.1.3 Criteria used in assessing the quality of ESG incorporation
- 6 The entity shall discuss whether it conducts scenario analysis or modelling in which the risk profile of future ESG factors at the portfolio level is calculated.
 - 6.1 ESG factors may include climate change, natural resource constraints, human capital risks and opportunities, and cybersecurity risks.
- 7 The entity shall discuss ESG factors that it considers apply broadly in terms of their impact on sectors and industries, as well as the factors it deems as sector- or industry-

specific.

- 8 The entity shall describe whether it incorporates ESG factors in strategic asset allocation or allocation of assets between sectors or geographical markets.
- 9 The entity shall describe how it incorporates ESG factors into the assessment of and influence the entity's perspectives on:
 - 9.1 Time horizon of investments
 - 9.2 Risk and return profiles of investments
 - 9.3 Traditional fundamental factors such as economic conditions, central bank policy, industry factors, and geopolitical risks
- 10 Where relevant, the entity shall discuss how it incorporates ESG factors in selecting external fund managers and fiduciary managers.
 - 10.1 The entity shall describe its oversight/accountability approach to assessing the quality of the incorporation of ESG factors by external fund managers and fiduciary managers, which includes:
 - 10.1.1 Formal oversight individuals or bodies involved
 - 10.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved
 - 10.1.3 Criteria used in assessing the quality of ESG incorporation
- 11 Where relevant, the description of the entity's approach to incorporation of ESG factors in its investment management activities shall be disaggregated by asset class or by style employed.
 - 11.1 The discussion shall include, but is not limited to, the differences in the entity's approaches to incorporation of ESG factors in:
 - 11.1.1 Public equity, fixed income, private equity or alternative asset classes
 - 11.1.2 Passive versus active investment strategies
 - 11.1.3 Fundamental, quantitative and technical analyses of investments

Policies Designed to Incentivise Responsible Behaviour

Topic Summary

Advances in technology and the development of new policy products have allowed insurance entities to limit claim payments while encouraging responsible behaviour. The industry is subsequently in a unique position to generate positive social and environmental externalities. Insurance entities can incentivise healthy lifestyles and safe behaviour as well as develop sustainability-related projects and technologies, such as those focused on renewable energy, energy efficiency and carbon capture. As the renewable energy industry continues to grow, insurance entities may seek related growth opportunities by underwriting insurance in this area. Additionally, policy clauses may encourage customers to incorporate environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors to mitigate overall underwriting portfolio risk, which may reduce

insurance pay-outs over the long term. Therefore, disclosure on products related to energy efficiency and low carbon technology, as well as discussion of how entities incentivise health, safety or environmentally responsible actions or behaviours, may assist investors in assessing how insurance entities incentivise responsible behaviour.

Metrics

FN-IN-410b.1. Net premiums written related to energy efficiency and low carbon technology

- 1 The entity shall disclose the net premiums written for policies related to energy efficiency and low carbon technology, including renewable energy insurance, energy savings warranties, and carbon capture and storage insurance.
 - 1.1 The disclosure scope includes policies that can be demonstrated to absorb environmental risks, thereby enabling sustainability-related projects, technologies and activities.
 - 1.2 Renewable energy insurance may range from specialised protection against natural hazards or mechanical breakdowns to insurance against fluctuations in the availability of wind or solar radiation.
 - 1.3 Energy savings warranties insure the energy savings guaranteed by Energy Services Entities (ESCOs) for building retrofitting and other energy efficiency projects.
- 2 The disclosure scope shall include policies in which the insurer has priced and identified separately such net premiums in its customer billing.

FN-IN-410b.2. Discussion of products or product features that incentivise health, safety or environmentally responsible actions or behaviours

- 1 The entity shall describe how it incentivises health, safety or environmentally responsible actions or behaviours through incorporation of clauses in the insurance policies sold to clients and through pricing structure of the policies.
 - 1.1 The scope of disclosure includes policies underwritten in the Property & Casualty (P&C) and Life segments and excludes Health Insurance policies.
 - 1.2 The scope of disclosure includes the consumer insurance segment and the commercial insurance segment:
 - 1.2.1 The consumer segment includes homeowners, automotive, supplemental health and accident, and other personal insurance.
 - 1.2.2 The commercial segment includes casualty (for example, liability, workers' compensation), property, specialty (for example, crop, marine, political risk) and financial (for example, errors and omissions, fiduciary liability) insurance.
- 2 Disclosure shall include a description of the aspects of traditional products that incentivise health, safety or environmentally responsible actions or behaviour. Such aspects may include:

- 2.1 Premium discounts for green buildings
 - 2.2 Premium discounts for improving resource efficiency of properties
 - 2.3 Actuarially adjusted premiums for the use of low-emission vehicles, fuel-efficient non-hybrid vehicles or alternative-fuel vehicles
 - 2.4 Premium discounts for safer driving and lower use of personal vehicles
 - 2.5 Premium discounts for healthy behaviour (healthy diet, routine exercise, weight loss, giving up smoking/drinking).
- 3 The entity may disclose quantitative measures related to performance on underwriting of products with clauses incentivising healthy, safe or environmentally responsible actions or behaviour, such as:
- 3.1 Number of policies incorporating such clauses
 - 3.2 Amount of premiums generated from the relevant products
 - 3.3 Quantitative measures of the associated social and environmental factors influenced through products (reduction in the amount of car accidents involving policyholders, amount of exercise hours per week, average amount of weight lost by a policyholder).

Physical Risk Exposure

Topic Summary

Catastrophic losses associated with extreme weather events will continue to have a material, adverse effect on the Insurance industry. The extent of this effect may evolve as climate change increases the frequency and severity of both modelled and non-modelled natural catastrophes, including hurricanes, floods and droughts. Failure to appropriately understand environmental risks, and price them into the underwritten insurance products, may result in higher-than-expected claims on policies. Therefore, insurance entities that incorporate climate change considerations into their underwriting process for individual contracts, and well as the management of entity-level risks and capital adequacy, may be better positioned to create value over the long-term. Enhanced disclosure of an entity's approach to incorporating these factors, in addition to quantitative data such as the probable maximum loss and total losses attributable to insurance pay-outs, may provide investors with the information necessary to assess current and future performance on this issue.

Metrics

FN-IN-450a.1. Probable Maximum Loss (PML) of insured products from weather-related natural catastrophes

- 1 The entity shall disclose the Probable Maximum Loss (PML) of insured products from natural peril catastrophe events.
 - 1.1 PML is defined as the anticipated value of the largest monetary loss affecting the entity's insurance portfolio that could result from weather-related natural

catastrophes and is based on catastrophe modelling and exceedance probability (EP).

1.2 The disclosure scope of natural peril catastrophic events includes: hurricanes (typhoons), tornadoes, tsunamis, floods, droughts, extreme heat and winter weather.

2 The entity shall disclose the PML using, at a minimum, three likelihood of exceedance scenarios: (1) 2% (1-in-50); (2) 1% (1-in-100); (3) 0.4% (1-in-250).

2.1 The entity may disclose additional likelihood of exceedance scenarios.

3 The entity shall disaggregate the PML by geographical location.

4 The entity shall report the PML amount on gross and net of catastrophe reinsurance bases.

4.1 The gross PML is the gross probable maximum loss for natural peril catastrophic events (prior to reinsurance) for annual aggregate exposure to all risks, including reinstatement premiums for the year following the relevant year based upon the entity's catastrophe model.

4.2 The net PML is the net probable maximum loss for natural peril catastrophic events (after reinsurance) for annual aggregate exposure to all risks, including reinstatement premiums for the year following the relevant year based upon the entity's catastrophe model.

5 Disclosure shall be provided for relevant geographical regions.

6 The entity may summarise the disaggregation of the PML in the following tables:

Table 3. Gross PML

	1-in-50	1-in-100	1-in-250
Hurricanes (Typhoons)			
Tornadoes			
Tsunamis			
Floods			
Droughts			
Extreme Heat			

	1-in-50	1-in-100	1-in-250
Winter Weather			
Table 4. Net PML			
	1-in-50	1-in-100	1-in-250
Hurricanes (Typhoons)			
Tornadoes			
Tsunamis			
Floods			
Droughts			
Extreme Heat			
Winter Weather			

Note to **FN-IN-450a.1**

- 1

The entity shall describe climate-related scenarios used, including the critical input parameters, assumptions and considerations, analytical choices, and time frames, in calculation of the PML, as aligned with the *Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD) Supplemental Guidance for Insurance Companies*.

FN-IN-450a.2. Total amount of monetary losses attributable to insurance pay-outs from (1) modelled natural catastrophes and (2) non-modelled natural catastrophes, by type of event and geographical segment (net and gross of reinsurance)
- 1

The entity shall disclose the amount of policyholder benefits paid and claims incurred during the reporting period resulting from policy losses and benefits expenses related to modelled and non-modelled natural peril catastrophe events.

1.1

The disclosure scope of natural peril catastrophic events includes: hurricanes (typhoons), tornadoes, tsunamis, floods, droughts, extreme heat and winter weather.
- 2

Benefits and claims incurred shall be disclosed in accordance with IFRS 17 *Insurance Contracts*.

- 3 The entity shall disaggregate policy losses and benefits expenses for modelled and non-modelled natural peril catastrophe events.
 - 3.1 Modelled natural catastrophes are typically large-scale events, such as hurricanes and earthquakes, that the entity has analysed using a catastrophic risk model.
 - 3.2 Non-modelled events are typically smaller-scale events, such as floods, droughts, snowstorms and tornadoes, that the entity has not analysed using a catastrophic model (CAT model).
 - 3.2.1 CAT models are probabilistic mathematical models that simulate hazardous events and estimate the associated potential damages and insured losses. They may be conducted by the entity or by a third party on behalf of the entity.
- 4 The entity shall disaggregate policy losses and benefits expenses by geographical segment.
- 5 The entity shall disaggregate policy losses and benefits expenses by natural peril catastrophic events.
 - 5.1 Where relevant, natural peril catastrophic events include: hurricanes (typhoons), tornadoes, tsunamis, floods, droughts, extreme heat and winter weather.
- 6 The entity shall report the policy losses and benefits expenses on a gross and net of catastrophe reinsurance base.
 - 6.1 The net amount shall be calculated as the gross amount of policy losses and benefits expenses from natural peril catastrophe events minus the recoverables from ceded reinsurance.
- 7 The entity shall consider IFRS 17 *Insurance Contracts* a normative reference, thus any future updates made to it shall be considered updates to this guidance.

Note to **FN-IN-450a.2**

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategy around enhancing catastrophe modelling.
- 2 The entity shall discuss how climate change-related impacts and variability of weather-related losses effect the cost of reinsurance and the entity's approach to transferring risk through reinsurance.

FN-IN-450a.3. Description of approach to incorporation of environmental risks into (1) the underwriting process for individual contracts and (2) the management of entity-level risks and capital adequacy

- 1 The entity shall describe its approach to incorporation of environmental risks into both individual policyholder contracts and entity-wide assessments of risk.
- 2 The entity shall describe the processes for identifying and assessing climate-related risks on insurance and reinsurance portfolios by geography, business division or

product segments.

- 2.1 Climate-related risks are defined by the Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD) as:
 - 2.1.1 Physical risks from changing frequencies and intensities of weather-related perils
 - 2.1.2 Transition risks resulting from a reduction in insurable interest because of a decline in value, changing energy costs or implementation of carbon regulation
 - 2.1.3 Liability risks that could intensify due to a possible increase in litigation

- 3 The entity shall describe what it considers to be the relevant short-, medium- and long-term horizons in the context of the underwriting process for individual contracts as well as the management of entity-level risks and capital adequacy.

- 4 The entity shall describe specific climate-related risks for each time horizon (short, medium and long term) that the entity considers in the underwriting process for individual contracts as well as in the management of entity-level risks and capital adequacy.

- 5 The entity shall describe the process for integration of climate-related risks in probabilistic mathematical models (catastrophic models).
 - 5.1 Discussion shall include:
 - 5.1.1 The use of new and emerging datasets (for example, for dam burst risk)
 - 5.1.2 The use of the critical input parameters, assumptions and considerations, and analytical choices

 - 5.2 Discussion shall be provided in the context of the relevant short-, medium- and long-term horizons.

- 6 The entity shall describe how outputs of catastrophe models inform its underwriting decisions.
 - 6.1 Discussion shall include:
 - 6.1.1 Development of insurance and reinsurance products which account for climate-related risks
 - 6.1.2 Pricing of insurance and reinsurance policies
 - 6.1.3 Client selection (for example, the type of events the entity chooses to cover or not, or geographical markets in which the entity chooses not to underwrite policies)
 - 6.1.4 Cedent selection (for example, decisions on the amount of risk the entity chooses to transfer through reinsurance).

6.2 Discussion shall be provided in the context of the relevant short-, medium- and long-term horizons.

7 The entity shall describe the process for incorporation of clauses in the insurance policies sold to clients that incentivise reduction of exposure to climate-related risks of insured assets through pricing structure of the policies.

7.1 Discussion shall include incentives such as:

7.1.1 The use of sustainable building materials

7.1.2 Enhancement of the weather resiliency of properties

7.1.3 Coverage of properties in communities with building codes requiring climate-risk adaptations

8 The entity shall discuss the process for integration of environmental risks into entity-wide assessments.

8.1 Discussion shall include:

8.1.1 Consideration of risks by segment (for example, life versus property and casualty)

8.1.2 Capital adequacy

8.1.3 Contingency planning for market failure (from many disaster-related claims)

8.1.4 Use of alternative risk transfer (for example, catastrophe bonds, weather derivatives).

8.2 Discussion shall be provided in the context of the relevant short-, medium- and long-term horizons.

9 The entity may discuss how sustainability risks are integrated into its use of an enterprise risk management (ERM) framework, such as the Committee of Sponsoring Organisations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) Enterprise Risk Management–Integrated Framework.

Volume 18—Investment Banking & Brokerage

Industry Description

Investment Banking & Brokerage industry entities perform a wide range of functions in the capital markets, including raising and allocating capital and providing market-making and advisory services for corporations, financial institutions, governments and high net-worth individuals. Specific activities include financial advisory and securities underwriting services conducted on a fee basis; securities and commodities brokerage activities, which involve

buying and selling securities or commodities contracts and options on a commission or fee basis; and trading and principal investment activities, which involve the buying and selling of equities, fixed income, currencies, commodities and other securities for client-driven and proprietary trading. Investment banks also originate and securitise loans for infrastructure and other projects. Entities in the industry generate revenues from global markets and, therefore, are exposed to various regulatory regimes. The industry continues to face regulatory pressure to reform and disclose aspects of operations that present systemic risks. Specifically, entities are facing new capital requirements, stress testing, limits on proprietary trading and increased scrutiny over compensation practices.

Note: This standard addresses 'pure play' investment banking and brokerage services. Separate standards exist for the Mortgage Finance (FN-MF), Commercial Banking (FN-CB), Consumer Finance (FN-CF), Asset Management & Custody Services (FN-AM), and Insurance (FN-IN) industries.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Incorporation of Environmental, Social, and Governance Factors in Investment Banking & Brokerage Activities	Revenue from (1) underwriting, (2) advisory and (3) securitisation transactions incorporating integration of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors, by industry	Quantitative	Presentation currency	FN-IB-410a.1
	(1) Number and (2) total value of investments and loans incorporating integration of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors, by industry	Quantitative	Number, Presentation currency	FN-IB-410a.2
	Description of approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in investment banking and brokerage activities	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FN-IB-410a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
(1) Number and (2) value of (a) underwriting, (b) advisory, and (c) securitisation transactions ²²	Quantitative	Number, Presentation currency	FN-IB-000.A
(1) Number and (2) value of proprietary investments and loans by sector ²³	Quantitative	Number, Presentation currency	FN-IB-000.B
(1) Number and (2) value of market making transactions in (a) fixed income, (b) equity, (c) currency, (d) derivatives, and (e) commodity products	Quantitative	Number, Presentation currency	FN-IB-000.C

Incorporation of Environmental, Social, and Governance Factors in Investment Banking & Brokerage Activities

Topic Summary

Environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors may have material impacts on the entities assets and projects across a range of industries to which investment banks provide services or in which they invest. Therefore, by accounting for these factors in underwriting, advisory, investing and lending activities, investment banks may manage significant positive and negative environmental and social externalities effectively. The potential for both value creation and loss associated with ESG factors suggests that investment banking and brokerage entities have a responsibility to shareholders and clients to consider these factors when analysing and valuing core products, including sell-side research, advisory services, origination, underwriting and principal transactions. Investment banking and brokerage entities that fail to manage these risks and opportunities effectively may expose themselves to increased reputational and financial risks. Appropriately pricing ESG risks may reduce investment banks' financial risk exposure, help generate additional revenue or open new market opportunities. To help investors better understand how entities in the industry manage these issues, investment banks should disclose how they incorporate ESG factors in their core products and services.

Metrics

FN-IB-410a.1. Revenue from (1) underwriting, (2) advisory and (3) securitisation transactions incorporating integration of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors, by industry

- 1 The entity shall report the total revenue earned from transactions in which the entity incorporates integration of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors.
 - 1.1 Integration of ESG factors is defined as the systematic and explicit inclusion of material ESG factors into underwriting, advisory and securitisation activities and may include review of transactions by the entity's Environmental and Social Risk Management (ESRM) group or screening (exclusionary, inclusionary or benchmarked).

1.1.1 The entity shall describe how ESG factors are integrated in the aforementioned activities.

2 The entity shall disaggregate the revenue from transactions by important business activities including (a) underwriting, (b) advisory and (c) securitisation.

2.1 Underwriting is defined as activities in which the entity raises investment capital from investors on behalf of corporations and governments that are issuing either equity or debt securities. It includes public offerings and private placements, including local and cross-border transactions and acquisition financing of a wide range of securities and other financial instruments, including loans. Underwriting also includes derivative transactions entered into with public and private sector clients in connection with the entity's underwriting activities.

2.2 Advisory is defined as activities in which the entity provides financial advice to institutional clients on a fee basis. It excludes wealth management and asset management activities.

2.3 Securitisation is defined as the process through which the entity creates a financial instrument by combining other financial assets and then marketing different tiers of the repackaged instruments to investors. It may include securitisation of residential and commercial mortgages, corporate bonds, loans and other types of financial assets by selling these assets to securitisation vehicles (for example, trusts, corporate entities and limited liability entities) or through a re-securitisation.

3 The entity shall disaggregate the revenue from transactions by industry.

3.1 The entity shall use the Global Industry Classification Standard (GICS) six-digit industry-level code for classifying transactions.

3.1.1 The entity shall use the latest version of the classification system available at the date of reporting.

3.1.2 The entity shall disclose the classification standard used if different from GICS.

4 The entity shall provide disclosure for at least the 10 largest industries by monetary amount of exposure or to industries representing at least 2% of the overall monetary amount of exposure.

FN-IB-410a.2. (1) Number and (2) total value of investments and loans incorporating integration of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors, by industry

1 The entity shall report the number of proprietary investments and loans incorporating integration of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors.

2 The entity shall report the value of proprietary investments and loans incorporating integration of ESG factors.

- 3 The disclosure scope includes the entity's investing and relationship lending activities across asset classes, including debt securities and loans, public and private equity securities, infrastructure, and real estate. These activities include investing directly in publicly and privately traded securities and in loans, and also investing through some investment funds that the entity manages and through funds managed by external parties.
 - 3.1 The scope of disclosure excludes commercial, consumer and mortgage-lending activities.
- 4 Integration of ESG factors is defined as the systematic and explicit inclusion of material ESG factors into traditional fundamental financial analysis through the consideration of qualitative risks and opportunities, quantitative metrics, and the incorporation of ESG variables into models to inform the entity's decision-making processes involved in proprietary investing and lending.
- 5 The entity shall break down the number and value of investments and loans by industry.
 - 5.1 The entity shall use the Global Industry Classification Standard (GICS) six-digit industry-level code for classifying investees and borrowers.
 - 5.1.1 The entity shall use the latest version of the classification system available at the date of reporting.
 - 5.1.2 The entity shall disclose the classification standard used if different from GICS.
 - 5.2 The entity shall disclose its exposure to at least the 10 largest industries by monetary amount of exposure or to industries representing at least 2% of the overall portfolio monetary exposure.

FN-IB-410a.3. Description of approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in investment banking and brokerage activities

- 1 The entity shall describe its approach to incorporation of environmental, social and governance (ESG) factors in its investment banking and brokerage activities.
 - 1.1 The definition of incorporation of ESG factors is aligned with that of the Global Sustainable Investment Alliance (GSIA) and includes the use of ESG information in the investment decision-making processes.
 - 1.2 Examples of ESG factors/issues are provided in the *PRI Reporting Framework—Main definitions 2018*, section 'ESG issues'.
 - 1.3 The scope of investment banking and brokerage activities may include (a) underwriting, (b) advisory, (c) securitisation, (d) investing and lending and (e) securities services.
 - 1.3.1 Underwriting is defined as activities in which the entity raises investment capital from investors on behalf of entities that are issuing either equity or debt securities. It includes public offerings and private placements, including local and cross-border transactions and acquisition financing of a wide range of securities and other financial instruments, including

loans. Underwriting also includes derivative transactions entered into with public and private sector clients in connection with the entity's underwriting activities.

- 1.3.2 Advisory is defined as activities in which the entity provides financial advice to institutional clients on a fee basis.
- 1.3.3 Securitisation is defined as the process through which the entity creates a financial instrument by combining other financial assets and then marketing various tiers of the repackaged instruments to investors. It may include securitisation of residential and commercial mortgages, corporate bonds, loans and other types of financial assets by selling these assets to securitisation vehicles (for example, trusts, corporate entities and limited liability entities) or through a re-securitisation.
- 1.3.4 Investing and lending includes short-term and long-term investing and relationship lending activities across asset classes such as debt securities and loans, public and private equity securities, infrastructure, and real estate.
- 1.3.5 Securities services include (i) financing services (for the entity's clients' securities trading activities through margin loans that are collateralised by securities), (ii) securities lending services (borrowing and lending securities to cover institutional clients' short sales, borrowing securities to cover the entity's short sales, otherwise to making deliveries into the market, broker-to-broker securities lending, and third-party agency lending activities), and (iii) other prime brokerage services (clearing and settlement services).

2 The entity shall describe its approach to implementation of the aspects of the entity's ESG incorporation practices.

- 2.1 The discussion shall include:
 - 2.1.1 Parties responsible for day-to-day incorporation of ESG factors
 - 2.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved
 - 2.1.3 Approach to conducting ESG-related research
 - 2.1.4 Approach to incorporating ESG factors into products and services

3 The entity shall describe its oversight/accountability approach to the incorporation of ESG factors.

- 3.1 The discussion shall include:
 - 3.1.1 Formal oversight individuals or bodies involved
 - 3.1.2 Roles and responsibilities of employees involved
 - 3.1.3 Criteria used in assessing the quality of ESG incorporation

- 4 The entity shall discuss whether it conducts scenario analysis or modelling in which the risk profile of future ESG trends is calculated across its investment banking and brokerage activities.
 - 4.1 Where relevant, the entity shall disclose whether such scenario analysis is performed for specific business activities, including (a) underwriting, (b) advisory, (c) securitisation, (d) investing and lending and (e) securities services lines of business.
 - 4.2 ESG trends may include climate change, natural resource constraints, human capital risks and opportunities, and cybersecurity risks.
- 5 The entity shall discuss ESG trends that it considers apply broadly in terms of their effect on sectors and industries, as well as trends it deems as sector- or industry-specific.
 - 5.1 The entity may further provide the discussion in the context of geographical exposure of its portfolio, by line of business.
- 6 The entity shall describe significant concentrations of exposure to ESG factors, which may include carbon-related assets, water-stressed regions and cybersecurity risks.
- 7 The entity shall describe how it incorporates ESG factors in the assessment of, and the entity's perspectives on:
 - 7.1 Traditional macroeconomic factors such as the economic conditions, central bank monetary policy, industry trends and geopolitical risks that affect risk profile of clients or individual transactions
 - 7.2 Traditional microeconomic factors such as supply of and demand for products or services which affect financial conditions and operational results of clients as well as their creditworthiness
 - 7.3 Time horizon of investments and loans
 - 7.4 Risk and return profiles of investments and loans
 - 7.5 Risk profiles of (a) underwritten debt and equity securities, (b) advisory transactions (for example, mergers and acquisitions) and (c) securitised assets.
- 8 The entity may disclose additional quantitative measures related to the incorporation of ESG factors in investment banking and brokerage activities, such as:
 - 8.1 Number of investment banking and brokerage transactions screened according to Equator Principles (EP III) (or equivalent) by EP Category
 - 8.2 Number of investment banking and brokerage transactions for which a review of environmental or social risks was performed, for example, by the entity's Environmental and Social Risk Management (ESRM) group.

Volume 19—Mortgage Finance

Industry Description

The Mortgage Finance industry provides an essential public good by enabling consumers to purchase homes and contributing to the overall home ownership rate. Entities in the industry lend capital to individual and commercial customers using property as collateral. The primary products are residential and commercial mortgages, while other services offered include mortgage servicing, title insurance, closing and settlement services, and valuation. In addition, mortgage finance entities own, manage and finance real estate-related investments such as mortgage pass-through certificates and collateralised mortgage obligations. Recent trends in the regulatory environment indicate a significant shift towards consumer protection, disclosure and accountability. Regulatory changes made in response to the global 2008 financial crisis demonstrate the potential for further alignment between the interests of society and those of long-term investors.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Environmental Risk to Mortgaged Properties	(1) Number and (2) value of mortgage loans in 100-year flood zones	Quantitative	Number, Presentation currency	FN-MF-450a.1
	(1) Total expected loss and (2) Loss Given Default (LGD) attributable to mortgage loan default and delinquency because of weather-related natural catastrophes, by geographical region	Quantitative	Presentation currency, Percentage (%)	FN-MF-450a.2
	Description of how climate change and other environmental risks are incorporated into mortgage origination and underwriting	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FN-MF-450a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
(1) Number and (2) value of mortgages originated by category: (a) residential and (b) commercial	Quantitative	Number, Presentation currency	FN-MF-000.A
(1) Number and (2) value of mortgages purchased by category: (a) residential and (b) commercial	Quantitative	Number, Presentation currency	FN-MF-000.B

Environmental Risk to Mortgaged Properties

Topic Summary

An increase in the frequency of extreme weather events associated with climate change may have an adverse impact on the Mortgage Finance industry. Specifically, hurricanes, floods and other climate change-related events have the potential to result in missed payments and loan defaults, while also decreasing the value of underlying assets. Entities which incorporate climate-related risks into lending analysis may be better positioned to create value over the long-term.

Metrics

FN-MF-450a.1. (1) Number and (2) value of mortgage loans in 100-year flood zones

- 1 The entity shall disclose the (1) number and (2) value of mortgage loans in the entity's portfolio underwritten on properties located in 100-year flood zones.
 - 1.1 100-year flood zones are defined as land areas subject to a 1% or greater chance of flooding in any given year. Such areas also may be referred to as being subject to the 1% annual chance flood, the 1% annual exceedance probability flood or the 100-year flood.
 - 1.1.1 Examples of 100-year flood zones may include coastal flood plains, flood plains along major rivers and areas subject to flooding from ponding in low-lying areas.
- 2 The scope of disclosure shall include all the entity's mortgage loans underwritten on properties located in 100-year flood zones, regardless of the country of their location.
 - 2.1 The scope of mortgage loans shall include those first mortgages (1–4 family) and junior lien (1–4 family second mortgages or home equity lines of credit) loans that the entity holds as loan assets.
 - 2.2 The scope of mortgage loans shall exclude mortgages held for sale, mortgage-backed securities and mortgages serviced by the entity.

FN-MF-450a.2. (1) Total expected loss and (2) Loss Given Default (LGD) attributable to mortgage loan default and delinquency because of weather-related natural catastrophes, by geographical region

- 1 The entity shall disclose the (1) total expected loss and (2) Loss Given Default (LGD), as a percentage, attributable to mortgage loan default and delinquency because of weather-related natural catastrophes.
 - 1.1 Expected loss is defined and calculated as the sum of the values of all the possible losses for the entity's mortgage loans, each multiplied by the probability of that loss occurring.
 - 1.2 LGD is defined as the share of an asset lost in the situation of default.
 - 1.3 Weather-related natural catastrophes include:
 - 1.3.1 Meteorological events (for example, hurricanes and storms)
 - 1.3.2 Hydrological events (floods)
 - 1.3.3 Climatological events (for example, heat waves, cold waves, droughts, and wildfires)
 - 1.4 Weather-related natural catastrophes exclude geophysical events (for example, earthquakes and volcanic eruptions).
- 2 The entity shall break down its disclosure by geographical region.
 - 2.1 Applicable regions are determined by the entity.

FN-MF-450a.3. Description of how climate change and other environmental risks are incorporated into mortgage origination and underwriting

- 1 The entity shall describe how it has incorporated climate change and other environmental risks into its mortgage origination and underwriting processes.
 - 1.1 The mortgage origination process is defined broadly as all the steps in a mortgage transaction between a lender and a borrower, which may include application, processing and underwriting.
 - 1.2 The scope of climate change and other environmental risks may include:
 - 1.2.1 The increased frequency and severity of weather-related natural catastrophes, including meteorological events (for example, hurricanes and storms), hydrological events (floods) and climatological events (for example, heat waves, cold waves, droughts and wildfires)
 - 1.2.2 The occurrence of geophysical events (for example, earthquakes and volcanic eruptions)
- 2 The entity shall disclose how and if these risks affect its origination models and decisions.
 - 2.1 The scope of disclosure may include:
 - 2.1.1 How the risk impacts the valuation of collateral, such as accounting for inherent risks resulting from location or assessing for the implementation of basic adaptive measures (for example, reinforcement or hurricane shutters)

- 2.1.2 How natural disaster risks affect credit risk analysis, including if the entity assumes that increases in natural disaster frequency and severity will increase the likelihood of default because of properties being uninsured or under-insured

Food and Beverage Sector -

Volume 20—Agricultural Products -

Industry Description

The Agricultural Products industry is engaged in processing, trading and distributing vegetables and fruits, and producing and milling agricultural commodities such as grains, sugar, consumable oils, maize, soybeans and animal feed. Entities sell products directly to consumers and businesses for use in consumer and industrial products. Entities in the industry typically purchase agricultural products from entities that grow such products (either directly or indirectly) to then conduct value-adding activities (for example, processing, trading, distributing and milling). Agricultural products entities also are involved in wholesale and distribution. Entities in the industry may source a substantial portion of agricultural commodities from third-party growers in various countries. Therefore, managing sustainability risks within the supply chain is critical to securing a reliable raw materials supply and reducing the risk of price increases and volatility over the long term.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	FB-AG-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-AG-110a.2
	Fleet fuel consumed, percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ),	FB-AG-110a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Operational energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Percentage (%) Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	FB-AG-130a.1
	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	FB-AG-140a.1
Water Management	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-AG-140a.2
Ingredient Sourcing	Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	FB-AG-140a.3
	Identification of principal crops and description of risks and opportunities presented by climate change	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-AG-440a.1
	Percentage of agricultural products sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by cost	FB-AG-440a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Production by principal crop ²⁴	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	FB-AG-000.A
Number of processing facilities ²⁵	Quantitative	Number	FB-AG-000.B
Total land area under active production	Quantitative	Hectares	FB-AG-000.C
Cost of agricultural products sourced externally ²⁶	Quantitative	Presentation currency	FB-AG-000.D

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Entities in the Agricultural Products industry generate direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from processing and transporting goods via land and sea freight operations. Emissions regulations may increase the cost of capital, operational costs and affect the operational efficiency of entities without strategies to manage GHG emissions. Employing innovative technologies that use alternative fuels and energy inputs—including biomass waste generated from internal processes—and improving fuel efficiency are ways entities can limit exposure to volatile fuel pricing, supply disruptions, future regulatory costs and other potential consequences of GHG emissions.

Metrics

FB-AG-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting*

Standard (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

- 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE).
- 2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 3 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

FB-AG-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.

- 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined according to *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
- 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

FB-AG-110a.3. Fleet fuel consumed, percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of fuel consumed by its fleet vehicles as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).

- 1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.
- 1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:
 - 1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, less any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period
 - 1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicles
 - 1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of the total amount of fuel consumed by its fleet vehicles that is renewable fuel.
 - 2.1 Renewable fuel generally is defined as fuel that meets all the following requirements:
 - 2.1.1 Produced from renewable biomass
 - 2.1.2 Used to replace or reduce the quantity of fossil fuel present in a transportation fuel, heating oil or jet fuel
 - 2.1.3 Achieved net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a life cycle basis.
 - 2.2 The entity shall disclose the Standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable.
- 3 The scope of disclosure includes fuel consumed by vehicles owned or operated by the entity.
- 4 The scope of disclosure excludes fuel consumed in the transportation of the entity's products by third parties.

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Processing and milling agricultural products require substantial energy input. While some agricultural products entities generate energy on-site through the direct combustion of fossil fuels or biomass, most energy is procured from the electrical grid. Energy consumption contributes to environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution. Energy management affects current and future costs of operation. Climate regulation and other sustainability factors could result in higher or more volatile electricity and fuel prices, increasing operating costs for agricultural products entities. Therefore, energy efficiency gained through process improvements can lower operating costs. The trade-off between on-site versus grid-sourced electricity as well as the use of alternative energy can play important roles in influencing both the long-term cost and reliability of an entity's energy supply and the extent of regulatory impact from direct versus indirect emissions.

Metrics***FB-AG-130a.1. (1) Operational energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable***

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed (excluding fleet vehicles) as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption excludes fuel consumed by fleet vehicles, but includes energy from all other sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, purchased electricity, heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).

- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed (excluding fleet vehicles) that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.

- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed (excluding fleet vehicles) that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or

replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

The Agricultural Products industry relies on water for processing activities, and entities in the industry also typically generate wastewater or effluent. The availability of water, because of physical availability or regulatory access, directly impacts the industry's ability to operate processing facilities efficiently. Entities in the industry increasingly are exposed to water-related risks and regulations, which may increase capital expenditure costs, operating costs, remediation costs or potential fines. Entities can manage water-related risks and opportunities and mitigate long-term costs through capital investments and assessment of facility locations relative to water scarcity risks, improvements to operational efficiency, and work with regulators and communities on issues related to water access and effluent. A separate supply chain-oriented topic, Ingredient Sourcing, addresses the risks related to crop production driven by water availability and access.

Metrics

FB-AG-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.

1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.

- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

FB-AG-140a.2. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and

municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits.

- 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, compliance with regulations related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).

2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:

- 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities
- 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.

3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.

- 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.

4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:

- 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
- 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets may include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and maintaining regulatory compliance.
- 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
 - 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
 - 5.2 The time lines for the water management plans, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
 - 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations.
 - 5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.
- 6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional life cycle effects or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite life cycle trade-offs.

FB-AG-140a.3. Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance, including violations of a technology-based standard and exceedances of quantity or quality-based standards.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations, which include the discharge of a hazardous substance, violation of pre-treatment requirements or total maximum daily load (TMDL) exceedances.

- 3 The scope of disclosure shall only include incidents of non-compliance that resulted in a formal enforcement action(s).
 - 3.1 Formal enforcement actions are defined as governmental recognised actions that address a violation or threatened violation of water quantity or quality laws, regulations, policies or orders, and can result in administrative penalty orders, administrative orders and judicial actions, among others.
- 4 Violations shall be disclosed, regardless of their measurement methodology or frequency. These include violations for:
 - 4.1 Continuous discharges, limitations, standards and prohibitions that are generally expressed as maximum daily, weekly and monthly averages; and
 - 4.2 Non-continuous discharges or limitations that are generally expressed in terms of frequency, total mass, maximum rate of discharge and mass or concentration of specified pollutants.

Ingredient Sourcing

Topic Summary

Agricultural products entities source a wide variety of commodities and ingredients from farmers or intermediary distributors. The industry's ability to reliably source ingredients at desired price points fluctuates with crop yield, which may be affected by climate change, water scarcity, land management and other resource scarcity considerations. Entities that source more productive and less resource-intensive crops, or those that work closely with suppliers to increase their adaptability to climate change and other resource scarcity risks, may reduce crop price volatility and crop supply disruptions. Additionally, entities may improve their brand reputation and develop new market opportunities. Failure to effectively manage sourcing risks can result in higher costs of capital, reduced margins and constrained revenue growth.

Metrics

FB-AG-440a.1. Identification of principal crops and description of risks and opportunities presented by climate change

- 1 The entity shall identify any principal crops that are a priority to its business.
 - 1.1 Principal crops are those crops that accounted for 10% or more of consolidated revenue in any of the last three reporting periods, as disclosed in FB-AG-000.A.
- 2 The scope of disclosure shall include crops cultivated directly by the entity, grown on a contract basis or sourced as a commodity.
 - 2.1 Crops cultivated directly by the entity include those grown on farms owned or operated by the entity.
 - 2.2 Crops grown on a contract basis include those for which the entity has contracted directly for the conditions of crop production and the quality of crops with the farmer, consistent with the Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations (FAO) 'Contract Farming Resource Centre'.

- 2.3 Crops sourced as a commodity include those bought through the spot market, to-arrive bids, grain elevators or other measures by which the entity is unable to control the production process.
- 3 The entity shall describe the risks or opportunities that are presented to its principal crops by climate change scenarios, including, where relevant:
 - 3.1 Identification of the risks presented by climate change, which may include availability of water, shifts in crop regions, pest migration and extreme weather events
 - 3.2 Discussion of the scenarios used to determine the risks and opportunities presented by climate change
 - 3.3 Discussion of how such scenarios will manifest (for example, effects directly on the entity or the entity's supply chain) and the potential implications that these would have on its priority crops
 - 3.4 The timeline over which such risks and opportunities are expected to manifest.
- 4 The entity may discuss the methods or models used to develop these scenarios, including the use of global gridded crop models or scientific research provided by governmental and non-governmental organisations (for example, Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change Climate Scenario Process).
- 5 The entity shall discuss efforts to assess and monitor the impacts of climate change and the related strategies to alleviate or adapt to any risks, and its efforts to recognise any opportunities (for example, FAO 'Climate-Smart Agriculture' approach).
 - 5.1 Alleviation strategies may include use of crop insurance, investments in hedging instruments and supply chain diversification.
 - 5.2 Adaptation strategies may include improving ecosystem management and biodiversity, development of tolerant crop varieties and optimising timing of planting and harvesting.

FB-AG-440a.2. Percentage of agricultural products sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of agricultural products sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.
 - 1.1 Agricultural products are defined as raw materials such as food, feed and biofuel ingredients sourced for use by the entity's operations.
- 2 The percentage shall be calculated as the cost of agricultural products purchased from Tier 1 suppliers that withdraw and consume water in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress to produce the agricultural products divided by the total cost of agricultural products purchased from Tier 1 suppliers.
 - 2.1 The entity shall identify Tier 1 suppliers that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress

as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) water risk atlas tool, Aqueduct.

- 3 The scope of disclosure is agricultural products purchased from Tier 1 suppliers, including those grown on a contract basis or sourced as a commodity.
 - 3.1 Tier 1 suppliers are defined as suppliers that transact directly with the entity for agricultural products.
 - 3.2 Agricultural products grown on a contract basis include those for which the entity has directly contracted the conditions of crop production and the quality of crops with the farmer, consistent with the Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations (FAO) Contract Farming Resource Centre.
 - 3.3 Agricultural products sourced as a commodity include those bought through the spot market, to-arrive bids, grain elevators or other measures by which the entity is not able to control the production process.
- 4 If the entity is unable to identify or collect data pertaining to all Tier 1 suppliers, the entity shall disclose the percentage of agricultural products for which the source region and water risks are unknown.

Volume 21—Alcoholic Beverages

Industry Description

Alcoholic Beverages industry entities brew, distil and manufacture various alcoholic beverages including beer, wine and liquor. Entities in this industry transform agricultural products including sugar, barley and corn, into finished alcoholic beverages. The largest entities have global operations with portfolios of man branded products. Levels of vertical integration within the industry vary because of regulation in different markets. Breweries generally have multiple manufacturing facilities to provide access to different markets, while vintners and distillers typically are located where they have a history of production.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	FB-AB-130a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	FB-AB-140a.1
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-AB-140a.2
Environmental & Social Impacts of Ingredient Supply Chain	Suppliers' social and environmental responsibility audit (1) non-conformance rate and (2) associated corrective action rate for (a) major and (b) minor non-conformances	Quantitative	Rate	FB-AB-430a.1
Ingredient Sourcing	Percentage of beverage ingredients sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by cost	FB-AB-440a.1
	List of priority beverage ingredients and discussion of sourcing risks related to environmental and social considerations	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-AB-440a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Volume of products sold	Quantitative	Millions of hectoliters (Mhl)	FB-AB-000.A

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of production facilities	Quantitative	Number	FB-AB-000.B
Total fleet road kilometres travelled	Quantitative	Kilometres (km)	FB-AB-000.C

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Entities in the Alcoholic Beverages industry rely on both fuel and purchased electricity as critical inputs. Fossil fuel and electrical energy consumption can contribute to negative environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution. These impacts have the potential to affect the value of entities in this industry since greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions regulations and new incentives for energy efficiency and renewable energy could result in increased fossil fuels and conventional electricity price volatility, while making alternative sources more cost-competitive. Entities that manage for increased energy efficiency and use alternative energy sources may increase profitability by reducing both expenses and risks.

Metrics

FB-AB-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.

- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
 - 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.
- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

Water management includes an entity's direct water use, exposure to water scarcity and management of wastewater. Entities in the Alcoholic Beverages industry use a large amount of

water in their operations, since water is a key input for their finished products. Given alcoholic beverage entities' heavy reliance on large volumes of clean water and water scarcity is increasing in different regions globally, entities may be exposed to supply disruptions that could significantly impact operations and increase costs. Entities operating in water-stressed regions that fail to address local water concerns may risk losing their social license to operate. Improving water management through increased efficiency and recycling, particularly in regions with baseline water stress, can result in lower operating costs, reduced risks and higher intangible asset value.

Metrics

FB-AB-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea.
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

FB-AB-140a.2. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits
 - 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
 - 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
 - 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.

- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.
- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:
 - 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
 - 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
 - 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
 - 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
 - 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
 - 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations.

5.4 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional life cycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite life cycle trade-offs.

6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or tradeoffs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle tradeoffs.

Environmental & Social Impacts of Ingredient Supply Chain

Topic Summary

Entities in the Alcoholic Beverages industry manage global supply chains to source a wide range of ingredient inputs. How entities screen, monitor and engage with suppliers on environmental and social topics affects entities' ability to secure supply and manage price fluctuations. Supply chain interruption can cause loss of revenue and negatively impact market share if entities are unable to find alternatives for key suppliers or must source ingredients at a higher cost. Supply chain management issues related to labour practices, environmental responsibility, ethics or corruption may also result in regulatory fines or increased long-term operational costs. The consumer-facing nature of the industry increases the reputational risks associated with supplier actions. Managing an entity's exposure to environmental and social risks may improve supply chain resiliency and enhance an entity's reputation. Entities can engage with key suppliers to manage environmental and social risks to improve supply chain resiliency, mitigate reputational risks and potentially increase consumer demand or capture new market opportunities.

Metrics

FB-AB-430a.1. Suppliers' social and environmental responsibility audit (1) non-conformance rate and (2) associated corrective action rate for (a) major and (b) minor non-conformances

- 1 The entity shall disclose its supplier facilities' (1) non-conformance rate with external social and environmental audit standard(s) or internally developed supplier code(s) of conduct for (a) major non-conformances, and separately, (b) minor non-conformances.
 - 1.1 A major non-conformance is defined as the highest severity of non-conformance and requires escalation by auditors. Major non-conformances include the presence of underage child workers (below the legal age for work or apprenticeship), forced labour, health and safety issues that can cause immediate danger to life or serious injury, or environmental practices that can cause serious and immediate harm to the community. Major non-conformance also includes material breach or systemic breaking of code requirements or laws. Major non-conformances also may be referred to as critical or priority non-conformances.
 - 1.2 A minor non-conformance is defined as a non-conformance that by itself is not indicative of a systemic problem with the management system. Minor non-

conformances typically are isolated or random incidents and represent minimal risk to workers or the environment.

- 1.3 The entity shall calculate the non-conformance rates as the total number of non-conformances identified (in each respective category) among its supplier facilities divided by the number of supplier facilities audited.

- 2 The entity shall disclose the (2) corrective action rates associated with its supplier facilities' (a) major non-conformances and separately (b) minor non-conformances.

- 2.1 A corrective action is defined as the completion of an action (generally identified in a corrective action plan) within 90 days for major non-conformances and 60 days for minor non-conformances, and is designed to eliminate the cause of a detected non-conformance. This includes the implementation of practices or systems to eliminate any non-conformance and to ensure against reoccurrence of the non-conformance, as well as verification that the action has taken place.

- 2.2 The entity shall calculate the corrective action rates as the number of corrective actions that address non-conformances (in each respective category) divided by the total number of non-conformances identified (in each respective category).

- 3 The entity shall disclose the standard(s) or code(s) of conduct to which it has measured social and environmental responsibility audit compliance.

- 3.1 For internally developed supplier code(s) of conduct, the entity shall disclose the public location where such code(s) can be viewed.

Ingredient Sourcing

Topic Summary

Entities in the Alcoholic Beverages industry source a wide range of ingredients, largely agricultural inputs, from suppliers worldwide. The industry's ability to source ingredients fluctuates with supply availability, which may be affected by climate change, water scarcity, land management and other resource scarcity considerations. This exposure can result in price volatility and can affect entity profitability. Ultimately, climate change, water scarcity and land-use restriction present risks to an entity's long-term ability to source key materials and ingredients. Entities that source ingredients that are more productive, effectively cultivated and less resource-intensive, or those that work closely with suppliers to increase their adaptability to climate change and manage exposure to other resource scarcity risks may reduce price volatility or supply disruptions.

Metrics

FB-AB-440a.1 Percentage of beverage ingredients sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of beverage ingredients sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.
- 2 The percentage shall be calculated as the cost of beverage ingredients purchased from Tier 1 suppliers that withdraw and consume water in regions with High or Extremely

High Baseline Water Stress to produce the beverage ingredients divided by the total cost of beverage ingredients purchased from Tier 1 suppliers.

2.1 Tier 1 suppliers are defined as suppliers that transact directly with the entity for agricultural products.

2.2 The entity shall identify Tier 1 suppliers that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

3 If the entity is unable to identify or collect data pertaining to all Tier 1 suppliers, the entity shall disclose the percentage of agricultural products for which the source region and water risks are unknown.

FB-AB-440a.2. List of priority beverage ingredients and discussion of sourcing risks related to environmental and social considerations

1 The entity shall identify the highest priority beverage ingredients to its business.

1.1 Priority beverage ingredients are defined as ingredients (excluding water) that constitute the largest beverage ingredient expense or those ingredients that have otherwise been identified by the entity as essential to its products or as having significant environmental or social risks.

1.2 The scope of disclosure includes priority beverage ingredients sourced by the entity, including those sourced directly from contract growers and from producer supply agreements.

2 The entity shall discuss its strategic approach to managing the environmental and social risks that arise from its highest priority beverage ingredients.

2.1 Environmental risks include effects of drought and climate change on ingredient prices, reputational damage because of deforestation and other risks resulting from the environmental impacts associated with the entity's supply chain.

2.2 Social risks include effects of workers' rights on productivity, reputational damage because of human rights issues and other risks resulting from the social impacts associated with the entity's supply chain.

3 The entity may identify which beverage ingredients present risks to its operations, the risks represented and the strategies the entity uses to mitigate such risks.

3.1 For environmental risks, relevant strategies to discuss may include the diversification of suppliers, supplier training programmes on best environmental management practices, expenditures on research and development for alternative and substitute crops, and audits or certifications of suppliers' environmental practices.

3.2 For social risks, relevant strategies to discuss include supplier training programmes on agrochemical application, engagement with suppliers on labour and human rights issues, and maintenance of a supply chain code of conduct.

Volume 22—Food Retailers & Distributors

Industry Description

The Food Retailers & Distributors industry consists of entities engaged in wholesale and retail sales of food, beverage and agricultural products. Store formats include retail supermarkets, convenience stores, warehouse supermarkets, liquor stores, bakeries, natural food stores, specialty food stores, seafood stores and distribution centres. Entities may specialise in one type of store format or have facilities that contain many formats. Products typically are sourced worldwide and include fresh meat and produce, prepared foods, processed foods, baked goods, frozen and canned foods, non-alcoholic and alcoholic beverages, and a wide selection of household goods and personal care products. Food retailers also may produce or sell private-label products.

Note: The standard discussed below is for ‘pure-play’ food retail and distribution entities. Many major food retailers also have pharmacy operations and other retail operations. There exist separate standards for the Drug Retailers (HC-DR) and Multiline and Specialty Retailers & Distributors (CG-MR) industries. Entities involved in multiple lines of business also should consider the disclosure topics and metrics outlined in these other standards.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Fleet Fuel Management	Fleet fuel consumed, percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	FB-FR-110a.1
	Gross global Scope 1 emissions from refrigerants	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	FB-FR-110b.1
Air Emissions from Refrigeration	Percentage of refrigerants consumed with zero ozone-depleting potential	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by weight	FB-FR-110b.2
	Average refrigerant emissions rate	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	FB-FR-110b.3
Energy Management	(1) Operational energy consumed, (2) percentage	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ),	FB-FR-130a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Management of Environmental & Social Impacts in the Supply Chain	grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable		Percentage (%)	
	Revenue from products third-party certified to environmental or social sustainability sourcing standards	Quantitative	Presentation currency	FB-FR-430a.1
	Discussion of strategy to manage environmental and social risks within the supply chain, including animal welfare	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-FR-430a.3
	Discussion of strategies to reduce the environmental impact of packaging	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-FR-430a.4

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of (1) retail locations and (2) distribution centres	Quantitative	Number	FB-FR-000.A
Total area of (1) retail space and (2) distribution centres	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	FB-FR-000.B
Number of vehicles in commercial fleet	Quantitative	Number	FB-FR-000.C
Tonne-kilometres travelled	Quantitative	Tonne-kilometres	FB-FR-000.D

Fleet Fuel Management

Topic Summary

Entities in the Food Retailers & Distributors industry own and operate vehicle fleets to deliver products between its distribution and retail locations. The fuel consumption of vehicle fleets is a

significant industry expense, both in terms of operating costs and associated capital expenditures. Fossil fuel consumption can contribute to environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution. These environmental impacts may affect food retailers and distributors through regulatory exposure. Efficiencies gained in fuel use can reduce costs, mitigate exposure to fossil fuel price volatility and limit the carbon footprint associated with storage and transportation. Short-term capital expenditures in fuel-efficient fleets and more energy efficient technologies may be outweighed by long-term operational savings and decreased exposure to regulatory risks.

Metrics

FB-FR-110a.1. Fleet fuel consumed, percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of fuel consumed by its fleet vehicles as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.
 - 1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:
 - 1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, less any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period;
 - 1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicles; and
 - 1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of the total amount of fuel consumed by its fleet vehicles that is renewable fuel.
 - 2.1 Renewable fuel generally is defined as fuel that meets all the following requirements:
 - 2.1.1 Produced from renewable biomass;
 - 2.1.2 Used to replace or reduce the quantity of fossil fuel present in a transportation fuel, heating oil or jet fuel; and
 - 2.1.3 Achieved net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a life cycle basis.
 - 2.2 The entity shall disclose the standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable.
 - 2.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of renewable fuel consumed by the entity's fleet vehicles (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed by the entity's fleet vehicles (in GJ).
- 3 The scope of disclosure includes fuel consumed by vehicles owned or operated by the entity.

- 4 The scope of disclosure excludes fuel consumed in the transportation of the entity's products by third parties.
- 5 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 6 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels).

Air Emissions from Refrigeration

Topic Summary

Emissions of refrigeration chemicals from equipment used to store and display perishable foods pose unique regulatory risks for the Food Retailers & Distributors industry. International regulations on hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs) aim to mitigate damage by HCFCs to the earth's ozone layer. Additionally, many common HCFCs and hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs) are highly potent greenhouse gases (GHGs), which increases the industry's exposure to climate change-related regulations. Regulators can assess penalties on entities that violate emissions standards. Entities may be required to upgrade or replace equipment, making capital expenditures to reduce emissions or replace existing refrigerants with potentially costlier but less environmentally-damaging alternatives.

Metrics

FB-FR-110b.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions from refrigerants

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃)—that originated from the use of refrigerants.
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
 - 1.3 Refrigerants are defined as substances or mixtures used in a heat pump or refrigeration cycle for the purpose of absorbing and releasing heat.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

- 2.1 The scope of emissions includes all direct emissions of GHGs resulting from the entity's use of commercial stationary and mobile refrigerants in retail locations, distribution centres and its transportation fleet.
- 2.2 For the purpose of this disclosure, the scope of emissions excludes direct emissions of GHGs from the combustion of fossil fuels, non-refrigerant process emissions and other sources unrelated to refrigerants.
- 2.3 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.3.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG);
 - 2.3.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA);
 - 2.3.3 India GHG Inventory Program;
 - 2.3.4 ISO 14064-1;
 - 2.3.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA; and
 - 2.3.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE).
- 2.4 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.
- 3 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

FB-FR-110b.2. Percentage of refrigerants consumed with zero ozone-depleting potential

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of the refrigerants consumed in its operations that have zero ozone-depleting potential (ODP).
 - 1.1 ODP is defined as the amount of ozone depletion caused by a substance. Ozone depletion is defined as a chemical destruction of the stratospheric ozone layer beyond natural reactions.
 - 1.2 A refrigerant with zero ODP is defined as a substance that has a published ODP value of zero, has no impact on the stratospheric ozone layer beyond natural reactions, and does not contain chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs), halons, methyl bromide, carbon tetrachloride, hydrobromofluorocarbons, chlorobromomethane or methyl chloroform.
- 2 A list of compounds recognised as ozone-depleting substances (ODS) and their respective ODPs, under the Montreal Protocol, is available through the United Nations website.
 - 2.1 Consumption of refrigerants is defined as the amount of refrigerant charged into the entity's commercial refrigeration equipment during the reporting period.
 - 2.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount (by weight) of refrigerants consumed in the entity's operations that have zero ODP, divided by the total amount (by weight) of refrigerants consumed in the entity's operations.
- 3 The scope of disclosure includes all commercial stationary and mobile refrigerants the entity uses in retail locations, distribution centres and its transportation fleet.

FB-FR-110b.3. Average refrigerant emissions rate

- 1 The entity shall disclose its average refrigerant emissions rate as a percentage.
 - 1.1 Refrigerant emissions rate is defined as the rate of refrigerant loss from commercial refrigeration equipment or systems.
 - 1.2 The entity shall calculate the average refrigerant emissions rate as the total amount, in pounds, of refrigerant emitted over the reporting period, divided by the total weight, in pounds, of refrigerant charged into commercial refrigeration equipment over the reporting period.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes all commercial stationary and mobile refrigerant sources the entity uses in its retail locations, distribution centres and its transportation fleet.

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Food retail and distribution facilities are typically more energy-intensive than other types of commercial spaces. These facilities use energy predominately for refrigeration, heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC), as well as lighting. Entities in the industry generally purchase the majority of consumed electricity, while some are beginning to generate energy on-site or add renewable energy into their energy mix. Energy production and consumption

contribute to environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution, which have the potential to indirectly, yet materially, impact the operations of food retailers and distributors. Entities that manage to increase energy efficiency and use alternative energy sources may increase profitability by reducing expenses and decreasing risk.

Metrics

FB-FR-130a.1. (1) Operational energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed (excluding fleet vehicles) as an aggregate figure in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption excludes fuel consumed by fleet vehicles, but includes energy from all other sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed (excluding fleet vehicles) that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed (excluding fleet vehicles) that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the

entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purpose of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from and biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Management of Environmental & Social Impacts in the Supply Chain

Topic Summary

Food retailers and distributors source merchandise from a wide range of manufacturers. These suppliers face a myriad of sustainability-related challenges that include resource conservation, water scarcity, animal welfare, fair labour practices and climate change. When poorly managed, these issues can affect the price and availability of food. Additionally, consumers increasingly are concerned with the production methods, origins and externalities associated with the foods they purchase, which may affect an entity's reputation. Food retailers and distributors also can work with suppliers on packaging design to generate cost savings in transport, improve brand reputation and reduce environmental impact. Entities that can manage effectively product supply risks by assessing and engaging with suppliers, implementing sustainable sourcing guidelines and enhancing supply chain transparency positioned more advantageously to improve supply chain resiliency, mitigate reputational risks, and potentially increase consumer demand or capture new market opportunities.

Metrics

FB-FR-430a.1. Revenue from products third-party certified to environmental or social sustainability sourcing standards

1 The entity shall disclose its revenue from products third-party certified to an environmental or social sustainability standard.

- 1.1 Environmental standards are defined as standards that address environmental impacts related to the production of agricultural products such as protection of primary forests, maintenance of surface water and groundwater quality, and implementation of integrated pest management (IPM) solutions or an Organic System Plan.
- 1.2 Social standards are defined as standards that address social impacts related to the production of agricultural products such as compensation of the workforce, training and continual monitoring of health and safety risks associated with applications of agrochemicals, and child-labour practices.
- 1.3 Examples of certifications to third-party environmental and social standards may include:
 - 1.3.1 Bonsucro;
 - 1.3.2 Fairtrade International;
 - 1.3.3 Fair Trade USA;
 - 1.3.4 Roundtable on Sustainable Palm Oil (RSPO);
 - 1.3.5 Roundtable on Responsible Soy (RTRS);
 - 1.3.6 Rainforest Alliance;
 - 1.3.7 SA8000;
 - 1.3.8 U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Organic; and
 - 1.3.9 UTZ Certified.

2 The entity may additionally break down the disclosure by product category and certification type.

- 2.1 A product category is defined as a group of related products that offer a similar general functionality (for example, meat, produce, packaged goods).
- 2.2 Certification types may be grouped based on the topic or scope of the standard, and can include animal welfare, working conditions, organic, sustainable fishing or harvesting.

FB-FR-430a.3. Discussion of strategy to manage environmental and social risks within the supply chain, including animal welfare

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategic approach to managing its environmental and social risks present within, or which may arise out of, its food and food products supply chain.
 - 1.1 Environmental and social risks may include:
 - 1.1.1 Impacts on crop and livestock production because of climate change (for example, changing average temperatures and water stress) that may affect cost and availability of produce, meat, poultry, dairy and processed food products;

- 1.1.2 Animal feed price increases resulting from environmental and social factors or tightening environmental regulations that may have price impacts on meat, poultry and dairy;
 - 1.1.3 Fuel economy regulations that affect transportation costs;
 - 1.1.4 Labour rights and immigration reforms that affect food prices and availability;
 - 1.1.5 International trade barriers or varying levels of food safety oversight in a global market;
 - 1.1.6 Commercial catch limits that could affect the supply of seafood products; and
 - 1.1.7 Animal welfare, human rights or related supply chain incidents that may result in reputational damage.
- 1.2 Relevant strategies to discuss may include supplier screening, diversification of suppliers, supplier training programmes on best environmental management practices, supplier engagement on labour and human rights issues, and maintenance of a supply chain code of conduct, supply chain audits and certifications.
- 2 The entity shall identify which products or product lines present risks to its operations, the risks represented and the strategies the entity uses to mitigate such risks.
- 3 The entity shall discuss its animal welfare standards applicable to its supply chain.
- 3.1 Animal welfare standards are defined as policies for beef, pork, poultry or dairy production conditions, including:
 - 3.1.1 Animal treatment and handling;
 - 3.1.2 Housing and transportation conditions;
 - 3.1.3 Slaughter facilities and procedures; and
 - 3.1.4 Use of antibiotics and hormones.
 - 3.2 Discussion shall include, but is not limited to:
 - 3.2.1 Any targets the entity has related to animal welfare standards and its progress towards those targets;
 - 3.2.2 Any requirements for suppliers related to animal welfare standards; and
 - 3.2.3 How, if in any way, animal welfare standards are addressed in supplier contracts.
- 4 The entity shall describe its use of animal welfare certifications, where certifications may include: Animal Welfare Approved, Certified Humane Program, Food Alliance

Certified and Global Animal Partnership 5-Step Animal Welfare Rating Program.

- 5 The entity may disclose the percentage of animal protein sold, by animal protein type, that is produced without medically important antibiotics.

5.1 The percentage is calculated as the carcass (or dressed) weight of animal protein purchased that did not receive medically important antibiotics at any stage of its life divided by the total carcass (or dressed) weight of animal protein purchased.

FB-FR-430a.4. Discussion of strategies to reduce the environmental impact of packaging

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategies to reduce the environmental impact of packaging, such as optimising packaging weight and volume for a given application, or using alternative materials, including those that are renewable, recycled, recyclable or compostable.
- 2 Relevant disclosures may include the following:
- 2.1 Design innovations, including strategies to optimise the amount of material used; packaging weight, shape and size; product-to-package ratio; cube utilisation and void fill.
- 2.2 Implementation of the 'Essential Requirements' in Article 9, Annex II of the EU Directive on Packaging and Packaging Waste (94/62/EC), which includes minimisation of packaging weight and volume to the amount needed for safety, hygiene and consumer acceptance of the packed product; minimisation of noxious or hazardous constituents; and suitability for reuse, material recycling, energy recovery or composting.
- 2.3 Performance on the Global Protocol on Packaging Sustainability 2.0 metrics for Packaging Weight and Optimization or Assessment and Minimization of Substances Hazardous to the Environment.
- 3 The entity may discuss its strategies as they relate to primary, secondary and tertiary packaging of its private-label products as well as the packaging of products from its vendors.
- 3.1 Primary packaging is designed to come into direct contact with the product.
- 3.2 Secondary packaging is designed to contain one or more primary packages together with any protective materials, where required.
- 3.3 Tertiary packaging is designed to contain one or more articles or packages, or bulk material, for the purposes of transport, handling or distribution. Tertiary packaging is also known as 'distribution' or 'transport' packaging.
- 3.4 A private-label product is a store-brand product packaged for sale with a retailer's brand name, whether manufactured by the retailer or by another manufacturer.
- 4 The entity may discuss its use of Life Cycle Assessment (LCA) analysis in the context of its approach to environmental impact reduction and maximisation of product

efficiency, including weight reduction and transportation efficiency.

- 4.1 When discussing improvements to the environmental efficiency of packaging products, improvements may be discussed in terms of LCA functional unit service parameters (time, extent and quality of function).

Volume 23—Meat, Poultry & Dairy

Industry Description

The Meat, Poultry & Dairy industry produces raw and processed animal products, including meats, eggs and dairy products, for human and animal consumption. Important activities include animal raising, slaughtering, processing and packaging. The industry's largest entities have international operations, and entities are integrated vertically to varying degrees, depending on the type of animal produced. Large industry operators typically rely on contract or independent farmers to supply animals and may have varying degrees of control over their operations. The industry sells products primarily to the Processed Foods industry and to retail distributors that distribute finished products to key end markets including restaurants, livestock and pet feed consumers, and grocery retailers.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	FB-MP-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-MP-110a.2
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	FB-MP-130a.1
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed;	Quantitative	Thousand cubic	FB-MP-140a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress		metres (m³), Percentage (%)	
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-MP-140a.2
	Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	FB-MP-140a.3
	Amount of animal litter and manure generated, percentage managed according to a nutrient management plan	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	FB-MP-160a.1
Land Use & Ecological Impacts	Percentage of pasture and grazing land managed to conservation plan criteria	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by hectares	FB-MP-160a.2
	Animal protein production from confined animal feeding operations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	FB-MP-160a.3
Animal & Feed Sourcing	Percentage of animal feed sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by weight	FB-MP-440a.1
	Percentage of contracts with producers located in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by contract value	FB-MP-440a.2
	Discussion of strategy to manage opportunities and risks to feed sourcing and	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-MP-440a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	livestock supply presented by climate change			

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of processing and manufacturing facilities	Quantitative	Number	FB-MP-000.A
Animal protein production, by category; percentage outsourced ²⁷	Quantitative	Various, Percentage (%)	FB-MP-000.B

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

The Meat, Poultry & Dairy industry generates significant Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from both livestock and energy-intensive industrial processes. GHG emissions contribute to climate change and create additional regulatory compliance costs and risks for meat, poultry and dairy entities because of climate change mitigation policies. The majority of the industry's emissions stem directly from the animals themselves through the release of methane during enteric fermentation, and from manure storage and processing. The direct emissions from raising and producing livestock represent a significant portion of total GHG emissions released among all sources. Currently, these emissions sources are not regulated widely, which presents uncertainties regarding the future of GHG regulations for the industry. Entities in this industry also use large quantities of fossil fuels to meet energy needs, generating additional direct GHG emissions and increasing exposure to regulatory risks. Future emission regulations could result in additional operating or compliance costs. By implementing new technologies to capture animal emissions and focusing on energy efficiency, entities may mitigate regulatory risk and volatile energy costs while also limiting GHG emissions.

Metrics

FB-MP-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e), and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To

date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).

- 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.

- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

- 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:

- 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG);
- 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA);
- 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program;
- 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1;
- 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA; and
- 2.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE).

- 2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 3 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.

- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.

- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data is from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

FB-MP-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
- 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined according to *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
- 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
- 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
- 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
- 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
- 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
- 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
- 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade

System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.

- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Energy Management

Topic Summary

The Meat, Poultry & Dairy industry relies heavily on purchased electricity and fuel as critical inputs for value creation. Entities' use of electricity and fossil fuels in their operations results in indirect and direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, which contribute to environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution. Purchased electricity is a significant operating cost for meat, poultry and dairy entities. Efficient energy usage is essential to maintain a competitive advantage in this industry, as purchased fuels and electricity account for a significant portion of total production costs. Decisions regarding alternative fuels use, renewable energy and on-site electricity generation versus purchasing from the grid can influence both the costs and the reliability of the energy supply.

Metrics

FB-MP-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind,

solar, hydro and biomass.

- 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or guarantees of origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
- 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

The Meat, Poultry & Dairy industry is water-intensive both in raising livestock and industrial processing. Additionally, entities in the industry typically generate wastewater or effluent, from both animal production and processing activities. As water scarcity becomes an issue of growing importance because of population growth, increasing consumption per capita, poor water management and climate change, entities in the industry may face higher operational costs or lost revenues because of water shortages or regulations resulting in production

reduction. Entities can manage water-related risks and opportunities through capital investments and assessment of facility locations relative to water scarcity risks, improvements to operational efficiency, and partnerships with regulators and communities on issues related to water access and effluent.

Metrics

FB-MP-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

FB-MP-140a.2. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impacts of climate change; and
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits.
 - 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
 - 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
 - 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.
- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.
- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plan to mitigate water management risks, which may include:

- 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes;
 - 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets;
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and maintaining regulatory compliance.
 - 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets; and
 - 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
- 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 5.2 The time lines for the water management plans, including the start year, the target year and the base year; and
 - 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, The Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risk and opportunities;
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations.
 - 5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.
- 6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional life cycle effects or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy

production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite life cycle trade-offs.

FB-MP-140a.3. Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance, including violations of a technology-based standard and exceedances of quantity or quality-based standards.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations, which include the discharge of a hazardous substance, violation of pre-treatment requirements or total maximum daily load (TMDL) exceedances.
- 3 The scope of disclosure shall only include incidents of non-compliance that resulted in a formal enforcement action(s).
 - 3.1 Formal enforcement actions are defined as governmental recognised actions that address a violation or threatened violation of water quantity or quality laws, regulations, policies or orders, and can result in administrative penalty orders, administrative orders and judicial actions, among others.
- 4 Violations shall be disclosed, regardless of their measurement methodology or frequency. These include violations for:
 - 4.1 Continuous discharges, limitations, standards and prohibitions that are generally expressed as maximum daily, weekly and monthly averages; and
 - 4.2 Non-continuous discharges or limitations that are generally expressed in terms of frequency, total mass, maximum rate of discharge and mass or concentration of specified pollutants.

Land Use & Ecological Impacts

Topic Summary

Meat, Poultry & Dairy industry operations have diverse ecological impacts, primarily because of significant land-use requirements to raise livestock and the contamination of the air, land and groundwater by animal waste. While the impacts are varied, both traditional and confined animal feeding operations may result in significant ecological impacts. The primary concern from confined animal feeding operations and animal-product processing facilities is the generation of large and concentrated amounts of waste and pollutants. Treating effluent and waste from facilities involves significant costs. Non-confined animal feeding operations require large tracts of pastureland and may result in the physical degradation of land resources. Land use and ecological impacts pose legal and regulatory risks in the form of fines, litigation and difficulties obtaining permits for facility expansions or waste discharges.

Metrics

FB-MP-160a.1. Amount of animal litter and manure generated, percentage managed according to a nutrient management plan

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount, in metric tons, of animal litter and manure generated at its facilities.
 - 1.1 The scope of animal litter and manure includes both dry and liquid manures and litter.

- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of animal litter and manure generated from facilities that implement a nutrient management plan divided by the total amount of animal litter and manure generated.
 - 2.1 A nutrient management plan is defined as a documented management practice that addresses the generation, collection, treatment, storage and agronomic use of all manure.
 - 2.2 At a minimum, the nutrient management plan shall meet these minimum specific elements:
 - 2.2.1 Background and site information;
 - 2.2.2 Manure and wastewater handling and storage;
 - 2.2.3 Farmstead safety and security;
 - 2.2.4 Land treatment practices;
 - 2.2.5 Soil and risk assessment analyses;
 - 2.2.6 Nutrient management;
 - 2.2.7 Recordkeeping; and
 - 2.2.8 References.

- 3 The scope of disclosure includes facilities that the entity owns and operates, facilities from which it contracts animal production (for example, independent producers) and facilities that otherwise supply animal protein to the entity (for example, for processing by the entity).

- 4 The scope of disclosure includes production areas and land treatment areas.
 - 4.1 Production area includes the animal confinement area, storage areas for feed and other raw materials, animal mortality facilities and manure-handling containment or storage areas.
 - 4.2 Land treatment area includes land under control of the entity or its contracted suppliers (for example, independent producers), whether it is owned, rented or leased, and to which manure or process wastewater is, or might be, applied for crop, hay or pasture production or other uses.

FB-MP-160a.2. Percentage of pasture and grazing land managed to conservation plan criteria

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of pasture and grazing land that is managed to applicable jurisdictional conservation plan criteria.

- 1.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the area of pasture and grazing land managed to applicable conservation plan criteria divided by the total area of pasture and grazing land.
 - 1.2 Conservation plans are jurisdictional standards or regulations intended to promote sustainable management of natural resources, which may include soil, water, air, and related plant and animal resources.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes land defined as rangeland, which is land on which the historic climax plant community is predominantly grasses, grass-like plants, forbs or shrubs, includes lands revegetated naturally or artificially when routine management of that vegetation is accomplished mainly through manipulation of grazing, and includes grazed forest, naturalised pasture, pastureland, hayland, and grazed and hayed cropland.
- 2.1 The scope of disclosure includes land from operations that the entity owns and operates, operations with which it contracts animal production (for example, independent producers) and operations that otherwise supply animal protein to the entity (for example, for processing by the entity).
- 3 The entity shall disclose the jurisdictional standard or regulation used for its calculation.
- FB-MP-160a.3. Animal protein production from confined animal feeding operations***
- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount, in metric tons, of animal protein production from confined animal feeding operations.
 - 1.1 Confined animal feeding operations are defined as animal feeding practices in dense population or limited spaces. They require high resource inputs, such as chemicals, for maximum livestock production, which can lead to environmental impacts such as pollution and waste.
 - 1.1.1 Confined animal feeding operations also could be referred to as intensive farming, resource-intensive animal production or concentrated animal feeding operations.
 - 1.2 The amount shall be calculated as the carcass (or dressed) weight of animal protein.
 - 1.2.1 Carcass is defined as all parts, including viscera, of any slaughtered livestock.
 - 1.3 The entity may use applicable jurisdictional definitions of confined animal feeding operations.
 - 1.3.1 If the entity uses a jurisdictional definition of confined animal feeding operations, the entity shall disclose the definition used.
 - 2 The scope includes animal protein from operations that the entity owns and operates, operations with which it contracts animal production (for example, independent

producers) and operations that otherwise supply animal protein to the entity (for example, for processing by the entity).

Animal & Feed Sourcing

Topic Summary

Meat, poultry and dairy entities source animal and animal feed from a range of suppliers depending on animal species. The industry's ability to reliably source animals and animal feed at desired price points may be affected by climate change, water scarcity, land management and other resource scarcity considerations. Entities that select and work with suppliers who are less resource-intensive and who actively manage adaptation to climate change and other resource scarcity risks, may reduce price volatility and supply disruptions. Additionally, such entities may improve their brand reputation and develop new market opportunities. Failure to effectively manage sourcing risks may result in higher costs of capital, reduced margins and constrained revenue growth.

Metrics

FB-MP-440a.1. Percentage of animal feed sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of animal feed sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.
 - 1.1 Animal feed includes soybean meal, cornmeal and other grains, and other fodder provided to livestock, but excludes forage.
- 2 The scope of disclosure shall include feed grown or manufactured by the entity and feed purchased by the entity.
- 3 The percentage shall be calculated as the weight of animal feed sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress divided by the total weight of animal feed sourced by the entity.
 - 3.1 The entity shall identify animal feed sourced from locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

FB-MP-440a.2. Percentage of contracts with producers located in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of contracts with producers located in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.
 - 1.1 A contract producer (or grower) is a party with which the entity has an agreement under which the party typically agrees to provide facilities, labour, utilities and care for livestock owned by the entity in return for payment.
- 2 The percentage shall be calculated as the value of contracts associated with entities located in water-stressed regions divided by the total value of contracts associated with contract production of animal protein.

- 2.1 The entity shall identify contract producers that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

FB-MP-440a.3 Discussion of strategy to manage opportunities and risks to feed sourcing and livestock supply presented by climate change

- 1 The entity shall discuss the risks or opportunities presented by climate change scenarios to its feed sourcing and livestock supply.
 - 1.1 Feed-sourcing risks and opportunities include those at the cultivation, milling and other processing and transportation phases of animal feed production.
 - 1.2 Livestock production risks and opportunities include those affecting all life cycle phases of bringing animal protein to market, including breeding, grazing, feedlot, slaughter, processing and distribution/transportation of live animals and processed animal protein products.
- 2 The entity may identify the risks presented by climate change, which may include availability of water, shifts in rangeland quality, disease migration and more frequent extreme weather events.
- 3 The entity may discuss how climate change scenarios will manifest (for example, at the point they will affect the entity's supply chain), how each type of feed (for example, soybean meal, cornmeal and other grains, or hay) or livestock (for example, beef cattle, dairy cattle, pigs or poultry) may be affected, and how other operating conditions (for example, transportation and logistics or physical infrastructure) will be affected.
- 4 The entity shall discuss efforts to assess and monitor the impacts of climate change and the related strategies to adapt to any risks or recognise any opportunities.
 - 4.1 For feed, strategies may include use of insurance, investments in hedging instruments, supply chain diversification, and ecosystem and biodiversity management.
 - 4.2 For livestock, strategies may include use of insurance, investments in hedging instruments, supply chain diversification, ecosystem and biodiversity management, and development of tolerant livestock breeds.
- 5 The entity may discuss the probability that risks and opportunities will come to fruition, the likely magnitude of the effect on financial results and operating conditions, and the time frame over which such risks and opportunities are expected to manifest.
- 6 The entity may include discussion of the methods or models used to develop the climate change scenario(s) it uses, including the use of global gridded crop models or scientific research provided by governmental and non-governmental organisations (for example, Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change Climate Scenario Process).
- 7 The scope of disclosure includes the impact of climate change on the entity's operations, but it excludes the entity's strategy and risks and opportunities related to

the mitigation of greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions generated through its operations (addressed in FB-MP.110a.2).

Volume 24—Non-Alcoholic Beverages

Industry Description

The Non-Alcoholic Beverages industry produces a broad range of beverage products, including various carbonated soft drinks, syrup concentrates, juices, energy and sport drinks, teas, coffee and water products. The industry is dominated by large, international entities. Entities conduct syrup manufacturing, marketing, bottling operations and distribution, with larger entities typically being more vertically integrated into operations that bottle, sell and distribute the finished products.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Fleet Fuel Management	Fleet fuel consumed, percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	FB-NB-110a.1
Energy Management	(1) Operational energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	FB-NB-130a.1
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	FB-NB-140a.1
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-NB-140a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Environmental & Social Impacts of Ingredient Supply Chain	Suppliers' social and environmental responsibility audit (1) non-conformance rate and (2) associated corrective action rate for (a) major and (b) minor non-conformances	Quantitative	Rate	FB-NB-430a.1
Ingredient Sourcing	Percentage of beverage ingredients sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by cost	FB-NB-440a.1
	List of priority beverage ingredients and discussion of sourcing risks related to environmental and social considerations	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-NB-440a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Volume of products sold	Quantitative	Millions of hectoliters (Mhl)	FB-NB-000.A
Number of production facilities	Quantitative	Number	FB-NB-000.B
Total fleet road kilometres travelled	Quantitative	Kilometres (km)	FB-NB-000.C

Fleet Fuel Management

Topic Summary

Non-alcoholic beverages entities generate direct Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from large vehicle fleets used for distribution and from manufacturing facilities. Specifically, refrigeration used in manufacturing facilities and in transport vehicles contributes a significant proportion of overall industry emissions. Efficiencies gained in fuel use can reduce costs,

mitigate exposure to fossil fuel price volatility and limit emissions from production, storage and transportation of products. Long-term operational savings and regulatory risk mitigation may outweigh short-term capital expenditures in fuel efficient fleets and more energy-efficient technologies.

Metrics

FB-NB-110a.1. Fleet fuel consumed, percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of fuel consumed by its fleet vehicles as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.
 - 1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:
 - 1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, less any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period;
 - 1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicles; and
 - 1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of the total amount of fuel consumed by its fleet vehicles that is renewable fuel.
 - 2.1 Renewable fuel is generally defined as fuel that meets all of these requirements:
 - 2.1.1 Produced from renewable biomass;
 - 2.1.2 Used to replace or reduce the quantity of fossil fuel present in a transportation fuel, heating oil or jet fuel; and
 - 2.1.3 Achieved net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a life cycle basis.
 - 2.2 The entity shall disclose the Standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable.
 - 2.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of renewable fuel consumed by the entity's fleet vehicles (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed by the entity's fleet vehicles (in GJ).
- 3 The scope of disclosure includes fuel consumed by vehicles owned or operated by the entity.
- 4 The scope of disclosure excludes fuel consumed in the transportation of the entity's products by third parties.

- 5 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 6 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels).

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Entities in the Non-Alcoholic Beverages industry use significant energy to operate manufacturing facilities, distribution centres and warehouses. Entities in the industry generally buy electricity from the grid. Energy generation contributes to environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution, which have the potential to indirectly, yet materially, affect the operations of non-alcoholic beverages entities. Entities can reduce energy consumption and associated greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from their operations by implementing more efficient technologies and processes. Decisions regarding alternative fuels use, renewable energy and on-site generation of electricity, versus purchasing from the grid, can be important in influencing both the costs and reliability of the energy supply.

Metrics

FB-NB-130a.1. (1) Operational energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed (excluding fleet vehicles) as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption excludes fuel consumed by fleet vehicles, but includes energy from all other sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the organisation itself (self-generated). For example, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed (excluding fleet vehicles) that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed (excluding fleet vehicles) that was renewable energy.

- 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
 - 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.
- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

Water management relates to an entity's direct water use, operations in water-stressed regions, and wastewater management. Entities in the Non-Alcoholic Beverages industry use a large amount of water in their operations, because water is an essential input to finished products. Given non-alcoholic beverage entities' heavy reliance on large volumes of clean water, and increasing global water scarcity, entities may be exposed to supply disruptions that could

significantly affect operations and add to costs. Entities operating in water-stressed regions that fail to address local water concerns may face further risk of losing their social licence to operate. Additionally, proper wastewater treatment is an important element of managing water issues in operations, because bottling plants release large quantities of effluents. Improving water management through increased efficiency, recycling and proper disposal, particularly in regions with baseline water stress, may result in reduced operating costs, decreased risks and higher intangible asset value.

Metrics

FB-NB-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea.
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.

- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

FB-NB-140a.2. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption, and discharge of water or wastewater.
- 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
- 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
- 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits
- 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
- 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
- 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.
- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
- 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.

- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:
 - 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
 - 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
 - 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
 - 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
 - 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
 - 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations
 - 5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

- 6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

Environmental & Social Impacts of Ingredient Supply Chain

Topic Summary

Entities in the Non-Alcoholic Beverages industry manage global supply chains to source a wide range of ingredient inputs. How entities screen, monitor and engage with suppliers on environmental and social topics affects the ability of entities to secure supplies and manage price fluctuations. Supply chain interruption can reduce revenue and negatively affect market share if entities are unable to find alternatives for important suppliers or must source ingredients at higher cost. Supply chain management issues related to labour practices, environmental responsibility, ethics or corruption also may result in regulatory fines or increased long-term operational costs for entities. The consumer-facing nature of the industry increases the reputational risks associated with supplier actions. Managing an entity's exposure to environmental and social risks may result in improved supply chain resiliency and enhanced reputation, which provide value to shareholders. Entities can engage with important suppliers to manage environmental and social risks to improve supply chain resiliency, mitigate reputational risks, and potentially increase consumer demand or capture new market opportunities.

Metrics

FB-NB-430a.1. Suppliers' social and environmental responsibility audit (1) non-conformance rate and (2) associated corrective action rate for (a) major and (b) minor non-conformances

- 1 The entity shall disclose its supplier facilities' (1) non-conformance rate with external social and environmental audit standard(s) or internally developed supplier code(s) of conduct for (a) major non-conformances, and separately, (b) minor non-conformances.
- 1.1 A major non-conformance is defined as the highest severity of non-conformance and requires escalation by auditors. Major non-conformances confirm the presence of underage child workers (below the legal age for work or apprenticeship), forced labour, health and safety issues that can cause immediate danger to life or serious injury, or environmental practices that can cause serious and immediate harm to the community. Major non-conformance includes material breach or systemic breaking of code requirement or law. Major non-conformances may also be referred to as critical or priority non-conformances.
- 1.2 A minor non-conformance is defined as a non-conformance that, by itself, is not indicative of a systemic problem with the management system. Minor non-conformances are typically isolated or random incidents and represent a low risk to workers or the environment.
- 1.3 The entity shall calculate the non-conformance rates as the total number of non-conformances identified (in each respective category) among its supplier

facilities divided by the number of supplier facilities audited.

- 2 The entity shall disclose the (2) corrective action rates associated with its supplier facilities' (a) major non-conformances, and separately, (b) minor non-conformances.
 - 2.1 A corrective action is defined as the completion of an action (generally identified in a corrective action plan) within 90 days for major non-conformances and 60 days for minor non-conformances, designed to eliminate the cause of a detected non-conformance, including the implementation of practices or systems to eliminate any non-conformance and ensure no reoccurrence of the non-conformance, as well as provide verification that the action has taken place.
 - 2.2 The entity shall calculate the corrective action rates as the number of corrective actions that address non-conformances (in each respective category) divided by the total number of non-conformances identified (in each respective category).
- 3 The entity shall disclose the standards or code(s) of conduct to which it has measured social and environmental responsibility audit compliance.
 - 3.1 For internally developed supplier code(s) of conduct, the entity shall disclose the public location where such code(s) can be viewed.

Ingredient Sourcing

Topic Summary

Entities in the Non-Alcoholic Beverages industry source a wide range of ingredients from suppliers worldwide. The industry's ability to source ingredients fluctuates with supply availability, which may be affected by climate change, water scarcity, land management and other resource scarcity considerations. This exposure may result in price volatility which may affect entity profitability. Ultimately, climate change, water scarcity and land-use restrictions present risks to an entity's long-term ability to source essential materials and ingredients. Entities that source ingredients which are more productive and less resource intensive, or work closely with suppliers to increase their adaptability to climate change and other resource scarcity risks, may reduce price volatility or supply disruptions.

Metrics

FB-NB-440a.1. Percentage of beverage ingredients sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of beverage ingredients sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.
- 2 The percentage shall be calculated as the cost of beverage ingredients purchased from Tier 1 suppliers that withdraw and consume water in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress to produce the beverage ingredients, divided by the total cost of agricultural products purchased from Tier 1 suppliers.
 - 2.1 Tier 1 suppliers are defined as suppliers that transact directly with the entity for agricultural products.

2.2 The entity shall identify Tier 1 suppliers that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

3 If the entity is unable to identify or collect data pertaining to all Tier 1 suppliers, the entity shall disclose the percentage of agricultural products for which the source region and water risks are unknown.

FB-NB-440a.2. List of priority beverage ingredients and discussion of sourcing risks related to environmental and social considerations

- 1 The entity shall identify the highest priority beverage ingredients to its business.
 - 1.1 Priority beverage ingredients are defined as ingredients (excluding water) that constitute the largest beverage ingredient expense, or those ingredients that have otherwise been identified by the entity as essential to its products or as having significant environmental or social risks.
 - 1.2 The scope of disclosure includes priority beverage ingredients sourced by the entity, which may include those sourced directly from contract growers and from producer supply agreements.
- 2 The entity shall discuss its strategic approach to managing the environmental and social risks that arise from its highest priority beverage ingredients.
 - 2.1 Environmental risks include effects of drought and climate change on ingredient prices, reputational damage because of deforestation, and other risks resulting from the environmental impacts associated with the entity's supply chain.
 - 2.2 Social risks may include the effects of workers' rights on productivity, reputational damage because of human rights issues and other risks resulting from the social impacts associated with the entity's supply chain.
- 3 The entity may identify which beverage ingredients present risks to its operations, the risks represented and the strategies the entity uses to mitigate such risks.
 - 3.1 For environmental risks, relevant strategies to discuss may include the diversification of suppliers, supplier training programmes on environmental best management practices, expenditures on research and development for alternative and substitute crops, and audits or certifications of suppliers' environmental practices.
 - 3.2 For social risks, relevant strategies to discuss include supplier training programmes on agrochemical application, engagement with suppliers on labour and human rights issues, and maintenance of a supply chain code of conduct.

Industry Description

Processed Foods industry entities process and package foods such as bread, frozen foods, snack foods, pet foods and condiments for retail consumer consumption. Typically, these products are made ready to consume, are marketed for retail consumers and can be found on food retailers' shelves. The industry is characterised by large and complex ingredient supply chains, because many entities source ingredients from around the world. Large entities operate globally, and international opportunities are driving growth.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	FB-PF-130a.1
	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	FB-PF-140a.1
Water Management	Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	FB-PF-140a.2
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-PF-140a.3
Environmental & Social Impacts of Ingredient Supply Chain	Percentage of food ingredients sourced that are certified to third-party environmental or social standards, and percentages by standard	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by cost	FB-PF-430a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Ingredient Sourcing	Suppliers' social and environmental responsibility audit (1) non-conformance rate and (2) associated corrective action rate for (a) major and (b) minor non-conformances	Quantitative	Rate	FB-PF-430a.2
	Percentage of food ingredients sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by cost	FB-PF-440a.1
	List of priority food ingredients and discussion of sourcing risks related to environmental and social considerations	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-PF-440a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Weight of products sold	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	FB-PF-000.A
Number of production facilities	Quantitative	Number	FB-PF-000.B

Energy Management

Topic Summary

The Processed Foods industry is reliant on energy and fuel as primary inputs for value creation in manufacturing food products. Energy is needed to operate large manufacturing facilities for cooking, refrigeration and packaging. Energy production and consumption contributes to significant environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution, which have the potential indirectly, yet materially, to affect processed food entity operations. Energy efficiency in production and distribution can mitigate exposure to volatile energy costs and limit an entity's contribution to direct and indirect greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions. Producers may be able to reduce the risk posed by volatile fossil fuel energy costs—particularly natural gas, which the industry uses heavily—by diversifying their energy portfolio across a range of sources.

Decisions regarding alternative fuels use, renewable energy and on-site generation of electricity versus purchasing from the grid, may influence both the costs and reliability of the energy supply.

Metrics

FB-PF-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

Processed Foods entities rely on a reliable water supply for cooking, processing and cleaning finished goods. Additionally, entities in the industry generate and must manage the wastewater discharge from processing activities. As water scarcity becomes an issue of increasing importance, processed foods entities—operating in water-stressed regions—may face increasing operational risks. Entities in the industry may face higher operational costs as well as water shortages because of the physical availability or more stringent regulations. Entities can manage water-related risks and opportunities through capital investments and assessment of facility locations relative to water scarcity risks, improvements to operational efficiency, and partnerships with regulators and communities on issues related to water access and effluent.

Metrics

FB-PF-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.

1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.

- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose its water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

FB-PF-140a.2. Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance, including violations of a technology-based standard and exceedances of quantity or quality-based standards.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations, which include the discharge of a hazardous substance, violation of pre-treatment requirements or total maximum daily load (TMDL) exceedances.
- 3 The scope of disclosure shall only include incidents of non-compliance that resulted in a formal enforcement action(s).
 - 3.1 Formal enforcement actions are defined as governmental recognised actions that address a violation or threatened violation of water quantity or quality laws,

regulations, policies or orders, and can result in administrative penalty orders, administrative orders and judicial actions, among others.

- 4 Violations shall be disclosed, regardless of their measurement methodology or frequency. These include violations for:
 - 4.1 Continuous discharges, limitations, standards and prohibitions that are generally expressed as maximum daily, weekly and monthly averages; and
 - 4.2 Non-continuous discharges or limitations that are generally expressed in terms of frequency, total mass, maximum rate of discharge and mass or concentration of specified pollutants.

FB-PF-140a.3. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits
 - 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
 - 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and

- 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.
- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.
- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:
 - 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
 - 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
 - 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
 - 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
 - 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
 - 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network

Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and

5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations.

5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

Environmental & Social Impacts of Ingredient Supply Chain

Topic Summary

Entities in the Processed Foods industry manage global supply chains to source a wide range of ingredient inputs. How entities screen, monitor and engage with suppliers on environmental and social topics affects the ability of entities to maintain steady supplies and manage price fluctuations. Supply chain management issues related to labour and environmental practices, ethics or corruption also may result in regulatory fines or increased long-term operational costs for entities. The consumer-facing nature of the industry increases the reputational risks associated with supplier performance. Entities can engage with important suppliers to manage environmental and social risks to improve supply chain resiliency, mitigate reputational risks, potentially increase consumer demand, or capture new market opportunities.

Metrics

FB-PF-430a.1. Percentage of food ingredients sourced that are certified to third-party environmental or social standards, and percentages by standard

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of food ingredients sourced that are certified to a third-party environmental or social standard.
 - 1.1 Environmental standards are defined as standards that address environmental impacts related to the production of food ingredients, such as protection of primary forests, maintenance of surface water and groundwater quality, and implementation of integrated pest management solutions or an Organic System Plan.
 - 1.2 Social standards are defined as standards that address social impacts related to the production of food ingredients, such as compensation of workforce, training and continual monitoring of health and safety risks associated with the application of agrochemicals and child-labour practices.
 - 1.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the cost of food ingredients purchased from Tier 1 suppliers certified to a third-party environmental or social standard divided by the total cost of food ingredients purchased from Tier 1 suppliers.

- 1.4 Examples of certifications to third-party environmental and social standards include:
 - 1.4.1 Bonsucro
 - 1.4.2 Fairtrade International
 - 1.4.3 Fair Trade USA
 - 1.4.4 Roundtable on Sustainable Palm Oil (RSPO)
 - 1.4.5 Roundtable on Responsible Soy (RTRS)
 - 1.4.6 Rainforest Alliance
 - 1.4.7 SA8000
 - 1.4.8 U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Organic
 - 1.4.9 UTZ Certified

2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of food ingredients it sourced that are certified to a third-party environmental or social standard, by standard.

- 2.1 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the cost of food ingredients purchased from Tier 1 suppliers certified to each respective third-party environmental or social standard divided by the total cost of agricultural products purchased from Tier 1 suppliers.
 - 2.1.1 For Bonsucro certification, the entity shall disclose whether the food ingredients are certified to the Bonsucro Production Standard or the Bonsucro Chain of Custody Standard.
 - 2.1.2 For Fairtrade International and Fair Trade USA, the entity shall disclose whether the food ingredients are certified to the standards for small producer organisations, hired labour, contract production, traders, independent small holders or capture fisheries.
 - 2.1.3 For RSPO certification, the entity shall disclose which of the RSPO supply chain models the food ingredients are certified to: Identity Preserved (IP); Segregated (SG); Mass Balance (MB); or Book & Claim (B&C).
 - 2.1.4 For RTRS certification, the entity shall disclose whether the food ingredients are certified to the RTRS Production standard or the RTRS Chain of Custody Standard and whether traceability in the chain of custody standard is kept through segregation or mass balance.
 - 2.1.5 For other third-party certifications, the entity may specify the type of certification if there is more than one type.

2.2 The entity may aggregate the percentages of numerous third-party certifications into one aggregate percentage, if the certifications are for the same food

ingredient and deliver similar environmental or social criteria.

3 The disclosure scope includes food ingredients purchased from Tier 1 suppliers.

3.1 Tier 1 suppliers are defined as suppliers that transact directly with the entity for food ingredients.

FB-PF-430a.2. Suppliers' social and environmental responsibility audit (1) non-conformance rate and (2) associated corrective action rate for (a) major and (b) minor non-conformances

1 The entity shall disclose its supplier facilities' (1) non-conformance rate with external social and environmental audit standard(s) or internally developed supplier code(s) of conduct for (a) major non-conformances, and separately, (b) minor non-conformances.

1.1 A major non-conformance is defined as the highest severity of non-conformance and requires escalation by auditors. Major non-conformances confirm the presence of underage child workers (below the legal age for work or apprenticeship), forced labour, health and safety issues that can cause immediate danger to life or serious injury, or environmental practices that can cause serious and immediate harm to the community. Major non-conformance includes material breach or systemic breaking of code requirement or law. Major non-conformances may also be referred to as critical or priority non-conformances.

1.2 A minor non-conformance is defined as a non-conformance that, by itself, is not indicative of a systemic problem with the management system. Minor non-conformances are typically isolated or random incidents and represent a low risk to workers or the environment.

1.3 The entity shall calculate the non-conformance rates as the total number of non-conformances identified (in each respective category) among its supplier facilities divided by the number of supplier facilities audited.

2 The entity shall disclose the (2) corrective action rates associated with its supplier facilities' (a) major non-conformances, and separately, (b) minor non-conformances.

2.1 A corrective action is defined as the completion of an action (generally identified in a corrective action plan) within 90 days, designed to eliminate the cause of a detected non-conformance, including the implementation of practices or systems to eliminate any non-conformance and ensure no reoccurrence of the non-conformance, as well as verification that the action has taken place.

2.2 The entity shall calculate the corrective action rates as the number of corrective actions that address non-conformances (in each respective category) divided by the total number of non-conformances identified (in each respective category).

- 3 The entity shall disclose the standards or code(s) of conduct to which it has measured social and environmental responsibility audit compliance.
 - 3.1 For internally developed supplier code(s) of conduct, the entity shall disclose the public location where such code(s) can be viewed.

Ingredient Sourcing

Topic Summary

Entities in the Processed Foods industry source a wide range of ingredients, largely agricultural inputs, from global suppliers. The industry's ability to source ingredients, and at some price points, fluctuates with supply availability, which may be affected by climate change, water scarcity, land management and other resource scarcity considerations. This exposure may cause price volatility which may affect entity profitability. Climate change, water scarcity and land-use restrictions present risks to an entity's long-term ability to source essential materials and ingredients. Entities that source ingredients which are more productive and less resource-intensive, or coordinate with suppliers to increase their adaptability to climate change and other resource scarcity risks, may reduce price volatility and supply disruptions.

Metrics

FB-PF-440a.1. Percentage of food ingredients sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of food ingredients sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.
- 2 The percentage shall be calculated as the cost of food ingredients purchased from Tier 1 suppliers that withdraw and consume water in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress to produce the agricultural products, divided by the total cost of food ingredients purchased from Tier 1 suppliers.
 - 2.1 Tier 1 suppliers are defined as suppliers that transact directly with the entity for food ingredients.
 - 2.2 The entity shall identify Tier 1 suppliers that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 3 If the entity is unable to identify or collect data pertaining to all Tier 1 suppliers, the entity shall disclose the percentage of agricultural products for which the source region and water risks are unknown.

FB-PF-440a.2. List of priority food ingredients and discussion of sourcing risks related to environmental and social considerations

- 1 The entity shall identify the highest priority food ingredients to its business.
 - 1.1 Priority food ingredients are defined as ingredients (excluding water) that constitute the largest food ingredient expense, or those ingredients identified by the entity as essential to its products or as having significant environmental or social risks.

- 1.2 The scope of disclosure includes priority food ingredients sourced by the entity, which may include those sourced directly from contract growers and from producer supply agreements.
- 2 The entity shall discuss its strategic approach to managing the environmental and social risks that arise from its highest priority food ingredients.
 - 2.1 Environmental risks may include effects of drought and climate change on ingredient prices, reputational damage because of deforestation and other risks resulting from the environmental impacts associated with the entity's supply chain.
 - 2.2 Social risks may include the effects of workers' rights on productivity, reputational damage because of human rights issues and other risks resulting from the social impacts associated with the entity's supply chain.
- 3 The entity may identify which food ingredients present risks to its operations, the risks represented and the strategies the entity uses to mitigate such risks.
 - 3.1 For environmental risks, relevant strategies to discuss may include the diversification of suppliers, supplier training programmes on environmental best management practices, expenditures on research and development for alternative and substitute crops, and audits or certifications of suppliers' environmental practices.
 - 3.2 For social risks, relevant strategies to discuss may include supplier training programmes on agrochemical application, engagement with suppliers on labour and human rights issues and maintenance of a supply chain code of conduct.

Volume 26—Restaurants

Industry Description

Entities in the Restaurants industry prepare meals, snacks and beverages to customers' orders for immediate on- and off-premises consumption. Broadly divided into three sub-categories, the restaurant industry includes limited-service eating places, casual full-service eating places and upscale full-service eating places. Limited-service restaurants provide services to customers who order and pay before eating. Fast-food restaurants represent the largest share of the limited-service restaurants segment. Full-service restaurants offer more service, food for consumption primarily on-premises, and typically reflect higher quality food and prices.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	FB-RN-130a.1
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	FB-RN-140a.1
Supply Chain Management & Food Sourcing	Percentage of food purchased that (1) meets environmental and social sourcing standards, and (2) is certified to third-party environmental or social standards	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by cost	FB-RN-430a.1
	Discussion of strategy to manage environmental and social risks within the supply chain, including animal welfare	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	FB-RN-430a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of (1) entity-owned and (2) franchise restaurants	Quantitative	Number	FB-RN-000.A
Number of employees at (1) entity-owned and (2) franchise locations	Quantitative	Number	FB-RN-000.B

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Restaurant operations have high energy intensity compared with other commercial building operations. Commercial kitchen appliances are energy intensive, and dining areas typically are temperature-controlled for customers. Fossil fuel-based energy production and consumption contribute to significant environmental impacts, including climate change and air pollution,

which have the potential indirectly, yet materially, to affect restaurant operations. Regulations on greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions pricing or regulatory incentives for energy efficiency improvements and renewable energy affect conventional and renewable energy prices. Entities that manage energy consumption at entity-owned and franchise locations can decrease operational costs through energy efficiency upgrades and limit exposure to GHG emissions regulations by using renewable energy resources.

Metrics

FB-RN-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that is renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.

- 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

Water is used in restaurant operations, from cooking and dishwashing to cleaning. The restaurant type, size and equipment all affect water use. Restaurants located in water-stressed regions may be exposed to water usage restrictions or face high water costs. Long-term historical increases in the costs of water, and expectations around continued increases because of overconsumption and constrained supplies resulting from population growth, pollution and climate change, indicate the increasing importance of effective water management. Entities can reduce water use and associated operational costs by implementing water-efficient practices and using water-efficient commercial kitchen equipment.

Metrics

FB-RN-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly included in the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea.
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

Supply Chain Management & Food Sourcing

Topic Summary

Restaurants source ingredients and products from a wide range of suppliers. Supply chain management is crucial for restaurants to ensure food safety, to protect their reputations and increase revenue. Sourcing quality ingredients to maintain a consistent level of quality across different locations can be operationally challenging and exacerbated by the global nature of the industry. Demand from the food and beverage industry, including restaurants, drives and

shapes agricultural production, indicating that actions by industry players have a larger impact on society. Therefore, sustainable and ethical sourcing by industry entities may be necessary to ensure future supply and to minimise lifecycle impacts of entity operations. Sourcing from suppliers that have high quality standards, employ environmentally sustainable farming methods, and honour labour rights may better create value over the long-term. By increasing the amount of food supply sourced in conformance with environmental and social standards, as well as conformance with animal welfare standards and best practices, restaurant operators may be able to maintain food quality, manage food safety issues, enhance their reputation and expand their market share.

Metrics

FB-RN-430a.1. Percentage of food purchased that (1) meets environmental and social sourcing standards, and (2) is certified to third-party environmental or social standards

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the percentage of food purchased that meets both environmental and social sourcing standards.
 - 1.1 Environmental standards are defined as standards that address environmental impacts related to food production, such as protection of natural resources and improvements in resource efficiency.
 - 1.2 Social standards are defined as standards that address social impacts related to food production, such as treatment of workers and community, animal health and welfare, and food quality and safety.
 - 1.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the cost of food (and food products) purchased that meets environmental and social standards divided by the total cost of food (and food products) purchased.
 - 1.4 The scope of environmental or social standards includes programmes, guidelines, best practices, criteria, codes of conduct and certifications developed internally, through industry initiatives or by third-parties.
 - 1.5 Examples of environmental and social sourcing standards include:
 - 1.5.1 Global Roundtable for Sustainable Beef Principles & Criteria for Defining Global Sustainable Beef
 - 1.5.2 IDH Sustainability Initiative Fruits and Vegetables (SIFAV)
 - 1.5.3 Sustainable Agriculture Initiative (SAI) Platform, Principles & Practices for Dairy Farming, Sustainable Fruit Production, Sustainable Green Coffee Production, and Sustainable Production of Arable & Vegetable Crops
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of food purchased that has been certified to a third-party environmental or social standard.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the cost of food (and food products) purchased that has been certified to a third-party environmental or social standard divided by the total cost of food (and food products) purchased.

- 2.2 Examples of certifications to third-party environmental and social standards include:
 - 2.2.1 Fairtrade International
 - 2.2.2 Fair Trade USA
 - 2.2.3 Marine Stewardship Council
 - 2.2.4 Rainforest Alliance Certified
 - 2.2.5 Roundtable on Responsible Soy Association (RTRS)
 - 2.2.6 Roundtable on Sustainable Palm Oil (RSPO)

- 3 The entity shall generally indicate which third-party environmental and social standards it uses.

FB-RN-430a.3 Discussion of strategy to manage environmental and social risks within the supply chain, including animal welfare

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategic approach to managing its environmental and social risks present within, or which may arise out of, its food and food products supply chain.
 - 1.1 Environmental and social risks may include:
 - 1.1.1 Impacts on crop and livestock production because of climate change (for example, changing average temperatures and water stress) that may affect cost and availability of produce, meat, poultry, dairy and processed food products
 - 1.1.2 Animal feed price increases resulting from environmental and social factors or tightening environmental regulations that may have price impacts on meat, poultry and dairy
 - 1.1.3 Fuel economy regulations that affect transportation costs
 - 1.1.4 Labour rights and immigration reforms that affect food prices and availability
 - 1.1.5 International trade barriers and/or varying levels of food safety oversight in a global market
 - 1.1.6 Commercial catch limits that could affect the supply of seafood products
 - 1.1.7 Animal welfare, human rights or related supply chain incidents that may result in reputational damage
 - 1.2 Relevant strategies to discuss may include supplier screening, diversification of suppliers, supplier training programmes on best environmental management practices, supplier engagement on labour and human rights issues, and maintenance of a supply chain code of conduct, supply chain audits and certifications.

2	The entity may identify which products or product lines present risks to its operations, the risks represented, and the strategies the entity uses to mitigate such risks.
3	The entity shall discuss its animal welfare standards applicable to its supply chain. 3.1Animal welfare standards are defined as policies for beef, pork, poultry or dairy production conditions, including: 3.1.1Animal treatment and handling 3.1.2Housing and transportation conditions 3.1.3Slaughter facilities and procedures 3.1.4Use of antibiotics and hormones

Health Care Sector	-
Volume 27—Drug Retailers	-
Industry Description Drug Retailers industry entities operate retail pharmacies and distribution centres that supply retail stores. Stores may be entity-owned or franchised. Large entities source drugs and other merchandise through wholesalers and distributors. Consumer sales of prescription and over-the-counter pharmaceutical products generate a majority of the industry’s revenue; other goods sold include household goods, personal care products and a limited selection of groceries. Additionally, the pharmacy retailer segment is expanding its health-focused services by offering	

clinics at various retail locations, which may add to the industry's shifting sustainability landscape.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management in Retail	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	HC-DR-130a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of pharmacy locations	Quantitative	Number	HC-DR-000.A
Total area of retail space	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	HC-DR-000.B
Number of prescriptions filled, percentage for controlled substances	Quantitative	Number, Percentage (%)	HC-DR-000.C
Number of pharmacists ²⁸	Quantitative	Number	HC-DR-000.D

Energy Management in Retail

Topic Summary

Chain drug retailers operate thousands of locations that consume large quantities of energy. Electricity is used primarily for lighting and refrigeration. Many retail locations may operate 24 hours a day, thereby increasing energy demand. Operational energy efficiency and diversification among a range of energy supply sources may mitigate exposure to rising energy costs and limit an entity's indirect greenhouse gas emissions.

Metrics

HC-DR-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of

renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable state renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Volume 28—Health Care Delivery

Industry Description

The Health Care Delivery industry owns and manages hospitals, clinics and other health care related facilities. Entities provide a range of services, including inpatient and outpatient care, surgery, mental health, rehabilitation and clinical laboratory services. Demand for health care delivery services is driven largely by insurance coverage rates, demographics, illness and injury rates. The industry is characterised by high fixed labour and facilities costs, and an increased regulatory focus on reduced costs of care and improved outcomes. Health care delivery entities also face significant competition for patients and resources from private, non-profit and religious health care systems.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	HC-DY-130a.1
Waste Management	Total amount of medical waste: percentage (a) incinerated, (b)	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	HC-DY-150a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	recycled or treated and (c) landfilled			
	Total amount of: (1) hazardous and (2) non-hazardous pharmaceutical waste, percentage (a) incinerated, (b) recycled or treated and (c) landfilled	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	HC-DY-150a.2
Climate Change Impacts on Human Health & Infrastructure	Description of policies and practices to address: (1) the physical risks because of an increased frequency and intensity of extreme weather events, (2) changes in the morbidity and mortality rates of illnesses and diseases associated with climate change and (3) emergency preparedness and response	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	HC-DY-450a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of (1) facilities and (2) beds, by type	Quantitative	Number	HC-DY-000.A
Number of (1) inpatient admissions and (2) outpatient visits	Quantitative	Number	HC-DY-000.B

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Health Care Delivery entities operate energy-intensive facilities and rely on both purchased electricity and fuel. The consumption of both can contribute to environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution. Legislative attempts to limit these impacts and to incentivise energy efficiency and renewable energy may result in price volatility associated with fossil fuels and conventional electricity. Entities that improve energy efficiency may decrease costs and limit exposure to energy price fluctuations.

Metrics**HC-DY-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable**

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or

replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification, or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, and/or materials that are eligible for an applicable state renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Waste Management

Topic Summary

Health Care Delivery entities generate a significant amount of regulated medical and pharmaceutical waste. Disposal fees for these types of waste are typically higher than that of conventional waste and may present a significant cost for the industry. Entities that reduce the amount of waste generated by enhanced waste segregation strategies, recycling and reuse may limit their exposure to these costs.

Metrics

HC-DY-150a.1. Total amount of medical waste: percentage (a) incinerated, (b) recycled or treated and (c) landfilled

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of medical waste generated, in metric tons, aggregated for all facilities it owns and operates, and the percentage (a) incinerated, (b) recycled or treated and (c) landfilled.
- 2 Medical waste (also known as regulated medical waste, infectious waste, biomedical waste or biohazardous waste) that may be subject to applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations includes:
 - 2.1 Cultures and stocks—cultures and stocks of infection agents and associated biological cultures, including cultures from medical and pathological laboratories, and stocks of infectious agents from research and industrial laboratories, waste from the production of biological, discarded, live and attenuated vaccines, and culture dishes and devices used to transfer, inoculate and mix cultures.

- 2.2 Pathological wastes—human pathological wastes, including tissues, organs, body parts and body fluids removed during surgery and autopsy, or other medical procedures, and specimens of body fluids and their containers.
- 2.3 Human blood and blood products—(1) liquid waste human blood; (2) blood products; (3) items saturated or dripping with human blood; or (4) items saturated or dripping with human blood now caked with dried human blood, including serum, plasma and other blood components, and their containers used or intended for use in patient care, testing and laboratory analysis, or the development of pharmaceuticals. Intravenous bags also are included in this category.
- 2.4 Sharps—sharps used in animal or human patient care or treatment, or in medical research or industrial laboratories, including hypodermic needles, syringes (with or without the attached needle), Pasteur pipettes, scalpel blades, blood vials, needles with attached tubing and culture dishes (regardless of presence of infectious agents). Also included are other types of broken or unbroken glassware that were in contact with infectious agents, such as used slide and cover slips.
- 2.5 Animal waste—contaminated animal carcasses, body parts and bedding of animals known to have been exposed to infectious agents during research (including research in veterinary hospitals), production of biologicals or testing of pharmaceuticals.
- 2.6 Isolation wastes—biological waste and discarded materials contaminated with blood, excretion, exudates or secretions from humans who are isolated to protect others from specific highly communicable diseases, or isolated animals known to be infected with highly communicable diseases.
- 2.7 Unused sharps—unused, discarded sharps including hypodermic needles, suture needles, syringes and scalpel blades.

3 The entity shall calculate the percentages of medical waste by their final disposition method as the total weight of medical waste generated that was (a) incinerated, (b) recycled or treated and (c) landfilled, divided by the total weight of medical waste generated.

- 3.1 Recycling or treatment shall include disposal via recycling facility, treatment facility or other (for example, return to a supplier or commercial composting).

4 If the entity uses a waste transport service, broker or intermediary to handle its medical waste, the entity shall make a good faith effort to determine the final disposition method.

HC-DY-150a.2. Total amount of: (1) hazardous and (2) non-hazardous pharmaceutical waste, percentage (a) incinerated, (b) recycled or treated and (c) landfilled

1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of hazardous pharmaceutical waste generated, in metric tons, aggregated for all facilities it owns and operates, and the percentage (a) incinerated, (b) recycled or treated and (c) landfilled.

- 1.1 Hazardous pharmaceutical waste is defined in accordance with applicable jurisdictional legal or regulatory framework(s) where the waste was generated.
 - 1.2 Hazardous pharmaceutical waste generally displays these characteristics: ignitibility, corrosivity, reactivity or toxicity.
 - 1.3 The entity shall calculate the percentage of hazardous pharmaceutical waste by the final disposition method as the total weight of hazardous pharmaceutical waste generated that was (a) incinerated, (b) recycled or treated and (c) landfilled, divided by the total weight of hazardous pharmaceutical waste generated.
 - 1.3.1 Recycling or treatment shall include disposal via recycling facility, treatment facility or other (for example, return to a supplier or commercial composting).
 - 1.4 The entity may use the United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP) Basel Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movements of Hazardous Wastes and Their Disposal for the purposes of defining hazardous pharmaceutical waste for operations located in jurisdictions that lack applicable legal or regulatory definitions.
 - 1.5 The entity shall disclose the applicable jurisdictional standard or regulation used to define hazardous pharmaceutical waste.
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the total amount of non-hazardous pharmaceutical waste generated, in metric tons, aggregated for all facilities it owns and operates, and the percentage (a) incinerated, (b) recycled or treated and (c) landfilled.
- 2.1 Non-hazardous (solid) waste is defined as any garbage or refuse, sludge from a wastewater treatment plant, water supply treatment plant, or air pollution control facility and other discarded material, including solid, liquid, semi-solid, or contained gaseous material resulting from industrial, commercial, mining and agricultural operations, and from community activities. It may require special handling because it is a controlled substance or poses an environmental or human health threat.
 - 2.2 The entity shall calculate the percentages of non-hazardous pharmaceutical waste by their final disposition method as the total weight of non-hazardous pharmaceutical waste generated that was (a) incinerated, (b) recycled or treated and (c) landfilled, divided by the total weight of non-hazardous pharmaceutical waste generated.
 - 2.2.1 Recycling or treatment shall include disposal via recycling facility, treatment facility or other (for example, return to a supplier or commercial composting).
- 3 If other disposition methods for hazardous or non-hazardous pharmaceutical waste exist (for example, composting or permanent long-term storage), then the entity should

disclose these.

- 4 If the entity uses a waste transport service, broker or intermediary to handle its pharmaceutical waste, the entity shall make a good faith effort to determine the final disposition method.

Climate Change Impacts on Human Health & Infrastructure

Topic Summary

An increase in extreme weather events associated with climate change may present physical threats to health care delivery facilities and create challenges in serving affected populations. Coupled with the potential spread of infectious diseases and food and water scarcity, these events may present material implications for the Health Care Delivery industry.

Metrics

HC-DY-450a.1. Description of policies and practices to address: (1) the physical risks because of an increased frequency and intensity of extreme weather events, (2) changes in the morbidity and mortality rates of illnesses and diseases associated with climate change and (3) emergency preparedness and response

- 1 The entity shall describe the nature, scope and implementation of its policies and practices related to addressing the risks to physical infrastructure and assets presented by changes in the frequency, severity, type and geographical location of extreme weather events such as:
 - 1.1 Risks to physical infrastructure located in flood prone low-lying or hurricane-prone areas
 - 1.2 Risks to physical infrastructure based on facility design, such as having important medical equipment in basements or the availability of backup power
- 2 The entity shall describe the nature, scope and implementation of its policies and practices related to addressing the risks presented by the changes in prevalence, geography and severity of some diseases likely to be impacted by climate change, such as:
 - 2.1 The need for added or flexible capacity because of an influx of patients suffering from heat-related illness
 - 2.2 Obtaining the necessary facilities and expertise to identify and treat changing disease profiles in patients, including:
 - 2.2.1 Malaria, dengue fever and other vector borne diseases that affect tropical populations, but, because of climate change, may target non-tropical regions in the future
 - 2.2.2 Heat-related diseases (for example, lung diseases such as asthma caused by increases in ground level ozone)
 - 2.2.3 Waterborne diseases (for example, cholera because of increased flooding incidence)
 - 2.2.4 Human developmental disorders (for example, malnutrition because of

decreased food availability)

- 3
- The entity shall describe the nature, scope and implementation of its policies and practices related to emergency preparedness and response.
- 3.1
- The discussion shall include the regulatory environment in which the entity operates and whether it requires specific emergency preparedness and response plans.
- 3.2
- The entity may disclose whether it has implemented external policies or best practices voluntarily, such as those outlined in the World Health Organization’s Hospital Emergency Response Checklist.

Volume 29—Health Care Distributors

Industry Description

Health care distributors purchase, inventory and sell pharmaceutical products and medical equipment to hospitals, pharmacies and physicians. Demand for the industry’s services is driven largely by insurance rates, pharmaceutical spending, illness and demographics. The health care sector continues to face an emphasis on reduced costs and improved efficiencies, which also will affect the Health Care Distributors industry. Entities in this industry face challenges from consolidation and partnerships between pharmacies, payers and manufacturers.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Fleet Fuel Management	Payload fuel economy	Quantitative	Litres/RTK	HC-DI-110a.1
	Description of efforts to reduce the environmental impact of logistics	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	HC-DI-110a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of pharmaceutical units sold by product category	Quantitative	Number	HC-DI-000.A
Number of medical devices sold by product category	Quantitative	Number	HC-DI-000.B

Fleet Fuel Management

Topic Summary

The distribution of health care products and supplies requires significant transportation networks. Concern over climate change and dwindling natural resources may affect fuel pricing, and it may expose health care distributors to cost fluctuations. Entities that improve transportation efficiencies may be better positioned to create value over the long-term.

Metrics

HC-DI-110a.1. Payload fuel economy

- 1 The entity shall disclose its aggregate payload fuel economy for its transportation fleet.
- 2 The entity shall calculate payload fuel economy among its delivery fleet, limited to vehicles used for the delivery of products (excluding vehicles used primarily for the transportation of passengers).
 - 2.1 The entity shall disclose payload fuel economy for vehicles it operates (for example, those it owns or leases long-term) and specify if all or a portion of its logistics operations are outsourced.
- 3 Payload fuel economy shall be calculated as: total litres of fuel consumed/revenue tonne-kilometres (RTK).
 - 3.1 Payload includes the total weight of paid tonnage transported and excludes the vehicle weight.
 - 3.2 Revenue tonne-kilometres (RTK) is computed by multiplying the vehicle-kilometres travelled on each leg (distance goods were transported) by the number of metric tons of revenue traffic (payload) carried on that leg.
- 4 The entity shall aggregate payload fuel economy for types of transportation, which include:
 - 4.1 Air transportation
 - 4.2 Marine transportation
 - 4.3 Rail transportation
 - 4.4 Road transportation

HC-DI-110a.2. Description of efforts to reduce the environmental impact of logistics

- 1 The entity shall describe the nature, scope and implementation of its programmes and initiatives to reduce the environmental impact of its logistics operations.
- 2 Relevant efforts to describe may include fleet upgrades (fuel efficiency), alternative or renewable fuels use, optimised logistics routes, and idling reduction programmes.

Volume 30—Managed Care**Industry Description**

The Managed Care industry offers health insurance products for individual, commercial, Medicare and Medicaid members. Entities also provide administrative services and network access for self-funded insurance plans and manage pharmacy benefits. Enrolment in managed care traditionally has been correlated with employment rates, whereas revenue is driven by medical cost inflation. Legislative uncertainty and a focus on reducing health care costs may create downward pricing pressure and continue to drive industry consolidation. In addition, a focus on patient outcomes and plan performance continues to shape the industry's sustainability risks and opportunities.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Climate Change Impacts on Human Health	Discussion of the strategy to address the effects of climate change on business operations and how specific risks presented by changes in the geographical incidence, morbidity and mortality of illnesses and diseases are incorporated into risk models	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	HC-MC-450a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of enrollees by plan type	Quantitative	Number	HC-MC-000.A

Climate Change Impacts on Human Health

Topic Summary

An increase in extreme weather events associated with climate change could have significant health impacts. These events, coupled with the potential spread of infectious diseases and food and water scarcity, may present material implications for the Managed Care industry through an increase in encounters with the health care system. Entities that manage the risks posed by extreme weather events and potential changes in the incidence, morbidity and mortality of illnesses and diseases may protect shareholder value better.

Metrics

HC-MC-450a.1. Discussion of the strategy to address the effects of climate change on business operations and how specific risks presented by changes in the geographical incidence, morbidity and mortality of illnesses and diseases are incorporated into risk models

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategic business approach to addressing significant risks related to the effects of climate change, which may include changes in the following aspects of illnesses and diseases:
 - 1.1 Geographical incidence
 - 1.2 Morbidity
 - 1.3 Mortality
- 2 Relevant disclosure may include discussion of:
 - 2.1 Increases in allergic responses, asthma rates and heat-induced illness
 - 2.2 Migration of tropical diseases such as malaria, dengue fever and other vector-borne tropical diseases to non-tropical regions
 - 2.3 Increases in waterborne diseases, such as cholera, because of increased natural disaster incidence
 - 2.4 Increased rates of human developmental diseases such as malnutrition because of decreased food availability
- 3 The entity shall discuss any projected impacts on revenue, costs or plan affordability.
- 4 The entity may discuss how it incorporates the effects of climate change into its risk assessment and risk adjustment activities.

Volume 31—Medical Equipment & Supplies

Industry Description

The Medical Equipment & Supplies industry researches, develops and produces medical, surgical, dental, ophthalmic and veterinary instruments and devices. Hospitals, clinics and laboratories use these products, which range from disposable items to highly specialised

equipment. The increased prevalence of diseases associated with unhealthy lifestyles and an ageing population are important factors that may encourage growth in this industry. Emerging markets and the expansion of health insurance may contribute to further growth. However, the extension of government insurance programmes, provider and payer consolidation, and regulatory emphasis on reduced costs in all markets may result in downward pricing pressure.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Product Design & Lifecycle Management	Discussion of process to assess and manage environmental and human health considerations associated with chemicals in products, and meet demand for sustainable products	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	HC-MS-410a.1
	Total amount of products accepted for take-back and reused, recycled or donated, broken down by: (1) devices and equipment and (2) supplies	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	HC-MS-410a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of units sold by product category	Quantitative	Number	HC-MS-000.A

Product Design & Lifecycle Management

Topic Summary

Medical equipment and supplies entities face increasing challenges associated with the human and environmental impact of the industry's products. Entities may face consumer and regulatory pressure to limit the use of material inputs associated with health concerns, while also addressing issues such as the energy efficiency and end-of-life disposal of specific products. Entities that address these concerns while engaging in efforts to enhance product take-back may satisfy consumer demand and reduce future liabilities better.

Metrics***HC-MS-410a.1. Discussion of process to assess and manage environmental and human health considerations associated with chemicals in products, and meet demand for sustainable products***

- 1 The entity shall describe its strategic approach to addressing specific environmental and human health impacts of its products, including:
 - 1.1 Energy efficiency of products during use
 - 1.2 Disposal of the products
 - 1.3 Material efficiency
 - 1.4 Product packaging
 - 1.5 Toxicity of materials
- 2 The entity shall only describe design considerations that it can determine will deliver a specific, demonstrable environmental benefit.
 - 2.1 Environmental benefits shall be taken to mean those related to:
 - 2.1.1 Energy consumption
 - 2.1.2 Environmental health
 - 2.1.3 Human health
 - 2.1.4 Waste generation
 - 2.1.5 Water use
- 3 The entity shall provide an indication of how central the environmental benefit imparted is to functionality of products.
- 4 The entity shall make the environmental benefit determination in good faith and clarify whether the benefit relates to the product, package or service, avoiding a general statement of environmental benefits and following guidance from applicable laws and statutes.
- 5 The entity shall specify during which lifecycle stage(s) it assesses the environmental impacts associated with its products.

- 6

The entity shall reference the mechanism through which it implements efforts, including:

6.1

Use of design protocols

6.2

Procurement policies

6.3

Restricted substances lists (RSLs)

6.4

Certifications

6.5

Product take-back programmes

6.6

Packaging take-back
- 7

For efforts related to the end-of-life of product management, the entity shall discuss only design-related considerations.
- 8

The entity shall disclose the percentage of products, by revenue, for which it has integrated environmental considerations into the design.
- HC-MS-410a.2. Total amount of products accepted for take-back and reused, recycled or donated, broken down by: (1) devices and equipment and (2) supplies**
- 1

The entity shall disclose the amount, in metric tons, of its products that it recovered and reused (refurbished), recycled or donated.

1.1

This figure shall be broken down into: (1) devices and equipment and (2) supplies.

1.1.1

Devices and equipment include high-value machines and advanced devices.

1.1.2

Supplies include simple supplies and low-cost equipment (for example, scalpels, gloves and thermometers).

1.2

This figure shall exclude products accepted for take-back but ultimately discarded as waste.

1.2.1

The entity may disclose if it reclaimed any products it was unable to reuse or recycle because proper, safe disposal was necessary.
- 2

The entity shall describe programmes and initiatives it implements, funds or participates in that are related to product take-back for end-of-life management of its products.

Infrastructure Sector

Volume 32—Electric Utilities & Power Generators

Industry Description

Electric Utilities & Power Generators industry entities generate electricity; build, own and operate transmission and distribution (T&D) lines; and sell electricity. Utilities generate

electricity from many different sources, commonly including coal, natural gas, nuclear energy, hydropower, solar, wind and other renewable and fossil fuel energy sources. The industry comprises entities operating in both regulated and unregulated business structures. Regulated utilities face comprehensive regulatory oversight of their pricing mechanisms and their allowed return on equity, among other types of regulation, to maintain their licence to operate as a monopoly. Unregulated entities or merchant power entities are often independent power producers (IPPs) that generate electricity to sell to the wholesale market, which includes regulated utility buyers and other end users. Furthermore, entities in the industry may operate across both regulated and deregulated power markets depending on their operational span. Regulated markets typically contain vertically integrated utilities that own and operate everything from the generation of power to its retail distribution. Deregulated markets commonly split generation from distribution to encourage wholesale power generation competition. Overall, the complex task of providing reliable, accessible, low-cost power while balancing the protection of human life and the environment remains a challenge.

Note: The Electric Utilities & Power Generators industry covers activities related only to electricity provision, not to natural gas provision. Some utilities may operate in both electricity and natural gas markets. Utilities undertaking activities related to natural gas sourcing and distribution also should consider the topics and metrics in the Gas Utilities & Distributors (IF-GU) industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions & Energy Resource Planning	(1) Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under (2) emissions-limiting regulations and (3) emissions-reporting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	IF-EU-110a.1
	Greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions associated with power deliveries	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	IF-EU-110a.2
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-EU-110a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	IF-EU-140a.1
	Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	IF-EU-140a.2
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-EU-140a.3
End-Use Efficiency & Demand	Percentage of electric load served by smart grid technology ²⁹	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by megawatt hours (MWh)	IF-EU-420a.2
	Customer electricity savings from efficiency measures, by market ³⁰	Quantitative	Megawatt hours (MWh)	IF-EU-420a.3
Nuclear Safety & Emergency Management	Total number of nuclear power units, broken down by results of most recent independent safety review	Quantitative	Number	IF-EU-540a.1
	Description of efforts to manage nuclear safety and emergency preparedness	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-EU-540a.2
Grid Resiliency	Number of incidents of non-compliance with physical or cybersecurity standards or regulations	Quantitative	Number	IF-EU-550a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	(1) System Average Interruption Duration Index (SAIDI), (2) System Average Interruption Frequency Index (SAIFI), and (3) Customer Average Interruption Duration Index (CAIDI), inclusive of major event days ³¹	Quantitative	Minutes, Number	IF-EU-550a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of: (1) residential, (2) commercial, and (3) industrial customers served ³²	Quantitative	Number	IF-EU-000.A
Total electricity delivered to: (1) residential, (2) commercial, (3) industrial, (4) all other retail customers, and (5) wholesale customers	Quantitative	Megawatt hours (MWh)	IF-EU-000.B
Length of transmission and distribution lines ³³	Quantitative	Kilometres (km)	IF-EU-000.C
Total electricity generated, percentage by major energy source, percentage in regulated markets ³⁴	Quantitative	Megawatt hours (MWh), Percentage (%)	IF-EU-000.D
Total wholesale electricity purchased ³⁵	Quantitative	Megawatt hours (MWh)	IF-EU-000.E

Greenhouse Gas Emissions & Energy Resource Planning

Topic Summary

Electricity generation represents the largest source of greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions in the world. Mainly carbon dioxide, methane and nitrous oxide, these emissions are mostly by-products of fossil fuel combustion. The transmission or distribution (T&D) segments of the industry produce negligible emissions. Electric utility entities could face significant operating costs and capital expenditures for mitigating GHG emissions as environmental regulations

become increasingly stringent. Although many of these costs may be passed to a utility's customers, some power generators, especially in deregulated markets, may be unable to recoup these costs. Entities may reduce GHG emissions from electricity generation through careful infrastructure investment planning by ensuring the delivery of an energy mix capable of meeting the emissions requirements set forth by regulations, and by implementing industry-leading technologies and processes. Being proactive in cost-effectively reducing GHG emissions may create a competitive advantage for entities and mitigate unanticipated regulatory compliance costs. Failure to properly estimate capital-expenditure needs and permitting costs, or other difficulties in reducing GHG emissions, may result in significant negative effects on returns in the form of asset write-downs, the costs to obtain carbon credits, or unexpected increases in operating and capital expenditures. Regulatory emphasis on this issue may increase in the coming decades, as exemplified by the international emissions-reduction agreement made at the 21st session of the United Nations Conference of the Parties in 2015.

Metrics

IF-EU-110a.1. (1) Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under (2) emissions-limiting regulations and (3) emissions-reporting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its (1) gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 These emissions include direct emissions of GHGs from stationary or mobile sources that include production facilities, office buildings and product transportation (marine, road and rail).
 - 2.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.2.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)

- 2.2.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
- 2.2.3 India GHG Inventory Program
- 2.2.4 ISO 14064-1
- 2.2.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
- 2.2.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)

2.3 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the GHG Protocol, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

3 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.

3.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:

- 3.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)
- 3.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)
- 3.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)

3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).

3.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.

3.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.

4 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions that are covered under emissions reporting-based regulations.

- 4.1 Emissions reporting-based regulations are defined as regulations that demand the disclosure of GHG emissions data to regulators and/or the public, but for which there is no limit, cost, target, or controls on the amount of emissions generated.
 - 4.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) that are covered under emissions reporting-based regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).
 - 4.2.1 For emissions that are subject to more than one emissions reporting-based regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.
 - 4.3 The scope of emissions reporting-based regulations does not exclude emissions covered under emissions-limiting regulations.
- 5 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
 - 6 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
 - 7 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

IF-EU-110a.2. Greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions associated with power deliveries

- 1 The entity shall disclose gross global greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions associated with electric power delivered to retail customers, resulting from owned power generation and purchased power.
 - 1.1 GHG emissions are defined as emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e), calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP factors is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets or credits.

- 2 GHG emissions associated with electric power delivered to retail customers are defined by, and shall be calculated according to, the methodology established by the numerator in 'EPS Metric D-3: Retail Electric Deliveries', contained in the Electric Power Sector Protocol for the Voluntary Reporting Program, June 2009, Version 1.0, provided by The Climate Registry, including 2010 Updates and Clarifications (which clarified that 'EPS Metric D-3: Retail Electric Deliveries' was mislabelled as 'EPS Metric D-1' in Version 1.0).
 - 2.1 These emissions generally are calculated as the sum of emissions from power generation facilities owned by the entity, and those from power purchased from a third-party, subtracted by the emissions from power that was resold at the wholesale level.
 - 2.2 The scope of GHG emissions shall include all emissions associated with power delivered to retail customers, including emissions associated with power lost in transmission and distribution.
 - 2.3 Emissions factors for power purchased from third-parties are based on the most relevant and accurate method, which will depend on the type of power purchased. The Electric Power Sector Protocol for the Voluntary Reporting Program establishes potential methods.
- 3 Disclosure corresponds to the numerator in the metric contained in the Electric Power Research Institute's 2018 *Metrics to Benchmark Electric Power Company Sustainability Performance*, 'Total CO₂ emissions rate for power deliveries', except for the scope of emissions including all seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol.

IF-EU-110a.3. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆) and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);

- 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss its strategy to manage risks and opportunities associated with the GHG emissions regulatory environment, which may include:
- 3.1 Any changes it has made or plans to make to its business structure or model
 - 3.2 The development of new technologies or services
 - 3.3 Any changes it has made or plans to make to its operational process, control or organisational structures
 - 3.4 Influencing the regulatory or legislative process and outcomes, which may include interactions with regulators, regulatory agencies, utility commissions, legislators and policymakers
- 4 The entity may discuss its involvement in green power markets, including the number of customers served (by customer category) and the corresponding electricity generated.
- 4.1 Green power markets are defined as an optional utility service that allows customers the opportunity to support a greater level of utility entity investment in renewable energy technologies.
 - 4.2 The entity may disclose instances in which the provision of green power markets is required by state renewable portfolio standards.
- 5 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 6 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 7 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.

- 8 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Water Management

Topic Summary

Electricity generation is one of the most water-intensive industries in the world in terms of water withdrawals. Thermoelectric power plants—typically coal, nuclear and natural gas—use large quantities of water for cooling purposes. The industry is facing increasing water-related supply and regulatory risks, potentially requiring capital investment in technology or even creating stranded assets. As water supplies tighten in many regions—and electricity generation, agriculture and community use compete for water supplies—power plants increasingly may be unable to operate at full capacity, or at all, because of region-specific water constraints. The availability of water is an important factor to consider when calculating the future value of many electricity-generating assets and for evaluating proposals for new generation sources.

Increased water scarcity—because of factors such as increasing consumption and reduced supplies resulting from climate change, which could result in more frequent or intense droughts—could prompt regulatory authorities to limit entities' ability to withdraw necessary amounts of water, especially in regions with high baseline water stress. Furthermore, entities must manage the growing number of regulations related to the significant biodiversity impacts that such large withdrawals may cause. To mitigate these risks, entities can invest both in more efficient water-usage systems for plants, and place strategic priority on assessing long-term water availability, as well as water-related biodiversity risks, when siting new power plants.

Metrics

IF-EU-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:

- 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
- 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
- 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea

- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

IF-EU-140a.2. Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance, including violations of a technology-based standard and exceedances of quantity or quality-based standards.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations, which include the discharge of a hazardous substance, violation of pre-treatment requirements or total maximum daily load (TMDL) exceedances.
- 3 The scope of disclosure shall only include incidents of non-compliance that resulted in a formal enforcement action(s).
 - 3.1 Formal enforcement actions are defined as governmental recognised actions that address a violation or threatened violation of water quantity or quality laws, regulations, policies or orders, and can result in administrative penalty orders, administrative orders and judicial actions, among others.
- 4 Violations shall be disclosed, regardless of their measurement methodology or frequency. These include violations for:
 - 4.1 Continuous discharges, limitations, standards and prohibitions that are generally expressed as maximum daily, weekly and monthly averages; and
 - 4.2 Non-continuous discharges, limitations that are generally expressed in terms of frequency, total mass, maximum rate of discharge and mass or concentration of specified pollutants.

IF-EU-140a.3. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits
 - 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
 - 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
 - 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.
- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.
- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:
 - 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.

- 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
- 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:

- 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
- 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
- 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations.
- 5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

End-Use Efficiency & Demand

Topic Summary

Energy efficiency is a low-lifecycle-cost method to reduce greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, because less electricity needs to be generated to provide the same end-use energy services. Utilities can promote energy efficiency and conservation among their customers. Such strategies may include offering rebates for energy-efficient appliances, weatherising customers' homes, educating customers on energy-saving methods, offering incentives to customers to curb electricity use during times of peak demand ('demand response'), or investing in technology such as smart meters, which allow customers to track their energy use. While saving consumers money, these efforts also may reduce operating costs for electric utilities by decreasing peak demand. Furthermore, depending on the utility regulatory framework, local jurisdictions may mandate that entities develop energy efficiency plans before permitting new builds. Companies with effective strategies to reduce the downside risks from demand fluctuations, may gain adequate and timely returns on needed investments. Furthermore, reducing costs through efficiency initiatives may earn higher, long-term risk-adjusted returns.

Metrics

IF-EU-420a.2. Percentage of electric load served by smart grid technology

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its electric load, in megawatt hours, served by smart grid technology.
 - 1.1 The electric load served by smart grid technology is defined as the amount of electricity delivered to the entity's customers that incorporates the use of smart grid technologies to meet the electricity demand of the consumer.
 - 1.2 A smart grid is defined, consistent with the International Energy Agency (IEA), as an electricity network that uses digital and other advanced technologies to monitor and manage the transport of electricity from all generation sources to meet the varying electricity demands of end users. Smart grids coordinate the needs and capabilities of all generators, grid operators, end users and electricity market stakeholders to operate all parts of the system as efficiently as possible, minimising costs and environmental impacts while maximising system reliability, resilience and stability.
 - 1.3 An electric load is considered to be served by smart grid technology when the technology enables one or more of the distinguishing characteristics defined by the IEA:
 - 1.3.1 Enables informed participation by customers
 - 1.3.2 Accommodates all generation and storage options
 - 1.3.3 Enables new products, services and markets
 - 1.3.4 Provides the power quality for the range of needs
 - 1.3.5 Optimises asset utilisation and operation efficiency
 - 1.3.6 Provides resiliency to disturbances, attacks and natural disasters

- 1.4 Examples of smart grid technologies may include wide-area monitoring and control, information and communication technology integration, renewable and distributed generation integration, transmission enhancement, distribution grid management, advanced metering infrastructure, electric vehicle charging infrastructure, and customer-side systems.
- 2 The percentage of load served by smart grid technology shall be calculated as the total amount of energy load, in megawatt hours, served by smart grid technology divided by the total amount of energy load, in megawatt hours.
- 3 The entity may discuss the type of smart grid technology through which its electric load is served, the customer types using the technology (for example, residential, commercial or industrial), whether technologies are owned by the utility or the customer, and any plans for further integration of smart grid capabilities.

Note to **IF-EU-420a.2**

- 1 The entity shall discuss the opportunities and challenges associated with the development and operation of a smart grid, including, if relevant:
 - 1.1 Demand-response and end-user efficiency opportunities (for example, smoothing of the demand curve, increased cost-effective electric generation, improved incorporation of distributed generation, and increased generation and transmission efficiency)
 - 1.2 Political and deployment challenges (for example, opposition to smart grid development, disparate degrees of technology deployment and economic disincentives)

IF-EU-420a.3. Customer electricity savings from efficiency measures, by market

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of electricity savings delivered to customers, in megawatt hours, from energy efficiency measures during the reporting period, for each of its markets.
 - 1.1 Markets are defined as those operations subject to distinct public utility regulatory oversight.
 - 1.2 Electricity savings are defined according to the gross savings approach as the changes in energy consumption or demand that result from programme-related actions taken by participants in an efficiency programme, regardless of why they participated.
 - 1.2.1 The entity may list those markets where it reports electricity savings on a net electricity savings basis, and thus, may be different from the figures disclosed here. Net electricity savings are defined as changes in consumption specifically attributable to an energy efficiency programme, and that would not have occurred in the absence of the programme.

- 2 Electricity savings shall be calculated on a gross basis but consistent with the methodology set forth in applicable jurisdictional evaluation, measurement and verification (EM&V) regulations where such savings occur.
- 3 The scope of electricity savings from efficiency measures includes savings delivered directly by the entity and, where regulations provide, savings substantiated through purchases of efficiency savings credits.
 - 3.1 For any savings from efficiency measures delivered directly by the entity, any efficiency savings credits shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as delivered electricity savings.
 - 3.2 For efficiency savings credits purchased, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that credits be retained and retired on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them.

Note to **IF-EU-420a.3**

- 1 The entity shall discuss regulations related to customer efficiency measures for each of its relevant markets, including:
 - 1.1 The amount or percentage of electricity savings from efficiency measures required by regulations for each market.
 - 1.2 Instances of non-compliance with electricity savings obligations.
 - 1.3 In such instances, the entity shall disclose the difference between the energy savings delivered and the amount required by the regulation.
 - 1.4 Electricity savings delivered that exceed those required by regulations and that resulted in the entity receiving energy efficiency performance incentives, including the value of any such incentives.
- 2 The entity shall discuss the forms of policy, by each market, that allow for, or incentivise, energy efficiency, including a discussion of the benefits, challenges and financial effects associated with such regulations.
- 3 Relevant policy mechanisms to discuss may include:
 - 3.1 Deferral decoupling
 - 3.2 Current period decoupling
 - 3.3 Single fixed variable rates
 - 3.4 Lost revenue adjustments
 - 3.5 Energy efficiency feebates
- 4 For markets lacking regulations that allow for, or incentivise, energy efficiency, the entity shall discuss its stance on and efforts to manage risks and opportunities relating to such regulation.

- 5 The entity may discuss any efforts to meet regulations through incentives it has developed for its customers that promote end-use efficiency, including dynamic pricing, energy efficiency rebates and other measures to subsidise customer energy efficiency.

Nuclear Safety & Emergency Management

Topic Summary

Although rare, nuclear accidents can have significant human health and environmental consequences because of their severity. Owners of nuclear power plants in many regions have operated for decades without any major public safety incidents, but the occurrence of infrequent but large-magnitude incidents anywhere in the world can have major effects on the entire nuclear power industry. Entities that own and operate nuclear plants may lose their licence to operate, as well as face many other financial consequences in the event of an accident—though entities carry insurance and may have legal protections from some liabilities. Failure to comply with the safety regulations can be expensive to nuclear power operators; in extreme circumstances it may make the continued operation of the plant uneconomical. Facing potentially significant financial repercussions, both from ongoing safety compliance as well as tail risk incidents, entities that own or operate nuclear plants must be vigilant in the safety compliance, best practices and upgrades of their facilities. They also must maintain robust emergency preparedness training for their staff and a strong safety culture. These measures can reduce the probability that accidents will occur and enable an entity to effectively detect and respond to such incidents.

Metrics

IF-EU-540a.1. Total number of nuclear power units, broken down by results of most recent independent safety review

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total number of nuclear power units that it owns or operates, where:
 - 1.1 A nuclear power unit is defined as a nuclear reactor and associated equipment necessary for electric power generation, including those structures, systems and components required to provide reasonable assurance that the facility can be operated without undue risk to the health and safety of the public.
- 2 The entity shall provide a breakdown of nuclear power units that it owns or operates by results of the most recent independent safety review.
 - 2.1 A review is considered independent when conducted by third parties who are not and have not been directly involved with the design or operation of the nuclear power unit.
 - 2.2 For applicable jurisdictions, the entity shall disclose the results of the most recent independent safety review for both regulatory and peer reviews.
 - 2.3 The entity shall disclose the applicable jurisdictional regulation, guideline or standard under which the safety review was conducted.

IF-EU-540a.2. Description of efforts to manage nuclear safety and emergency preparedness

- 1 The entity shall describe its efforts to manage nuclear safety and emergency preparedness, including its efforts to identify, report and assess initiating events and event sequences relating to nuclear safety and emergency preparedness.
 - 1.1 Initiating events are defined as natural or human-induced events that cause an event sequence.
 - 1.2 An event sequence is defined as a series of actions or occurrences within the natural and engineered components of a geologic repository operations area that potentially could lead to exposure of individuals to radiation. An event sequence includes one or more initiating events and associated combinations of repository system component failures, including those produced by the action or inaction of operating staff.
 - 1.3 Disclosure may focus broadly on nuclear safety and emergency management systems, but it specifically shall address the systems in place to avoid and manage initiating events, accidents, emergencies and incidents that could have catastrophic impacts on human health, the local community and the environment.
- 2 The entity shall discuss how it manages nuclear safety and emergency preparedness, such as through training, rules and guidelines (and their enforcement), implementation of emergency plans and use of technology.
- 3 The entity shall discuss its efforts to create and maintain a culture of nuclear safety and emergency preparedness, including efforts to institute the traits of a positive safety culture, where the traits of a positive safety culture include:
 - 3.1 Leadership safety values and actions
 - 3.2 Problem identification and resolution
 - 3.3 Personal accountability
 - 3.4 Work process
 - 3.5 Continuous learning
 - 3.6 Environment for raising concerns
 - 3.7 Effective safety communications
 - 3.8 Respectful work environment
 - 3.9 Questioning attitude
- 4 The entity may discuss implementation of the Institute of Nuclear Power Operations' (INPO) Principles for a Strong Nuclear Safety Culture or the International Atomic Energy Agency's (IAEA) Best Practices in the Utilization and Dissemination of Operating Experience at Nuclear Power Plants.

Grid Resiliency

Topic Summary

Electricity is critical for the continued function of most elements of modern life, from medicine to finance, creating a societal reliance on continuous service. Major disruptions to electricity infrastructure may result in potentially high societal costs. Disruptions can be caused by extreme weather events, natural disasters and cyberattacks. As the frequency and severity of extreme weather events associated with climate change continues to increase, all segments of electric utilities entities—and especially major transmission and distribution (T&D) operations—will face increasing physical threats to their infrastructure. Extreme weather events could result in frequent or significant service disruptions, outages and require upgrade or repair of damaged or compromised equipment, all of which may add substantial costs and damage brand reputation among regulators and customers. The increased use of smart grid technology has several benefits, including strengthening the resiliency of the grid to extreme weather events. However, this technology may make the grid more vulnerable to cyberattacks, because it provides hackers more entryways into infrastructure systems. Entities must implement strategies that minimise the probability and magnitude of impacts from extreme weather events and cyberattacks. To remain competitive in the face of increasing external competition, entities must improve the reliability, resilience and quality of their infrastructure.

Metrics

IF-EU-550a.1. Number of incidents of non-compliance with physical or cybersecurity standards or regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total number of instances of non-compliance with physical or cybersecurity standards or regulations applicable to electricity infrastructure owned or operated by the entity.
 - 1.1 The scope of physical or cybersecurity standards or regulations includes mandatory, enforceable standards and regulations intended to mitigate physical or cybersecurity risks related to the reliability or resiliency of electricity infrastructure, including the electricity grid.
 - 1.1.1 The entity may disclose instances of non-compliance with voluntary physical or cybersecurity standards or regulations.

IF-EU-550a.2. (1) System Average Interruption Duration Index (SAIDI), (2) System Average Interruption Frequency Index (SAIFI), and (3) Customer Average Interruption Duration Index (CAIDI), inclusive of major event days

- 1 The entity shall disclose its (1) System Average Interruption Duration Index (SAIDI), in minutes.
 - 1.1 The SAIDI is defined as the total duration of an interruption for the average customer during the period under reporting.
 - 1.2 The entity shall calculate its SAIDI as the total number of customers interrupted multiplied by the duration of interruptions (restoration time) divided by the total number of customers served, written as $\sum(r_i \times N_i) / N_T$
 - 1.2.1 $\sum$ = Summation function
 - 1.2.2 r_i = Restoration time, in minutes
 - 1.2.3 N_i = Total number of customers interrupted
 - 1.2.4 N_T = Total number of customers served

- 2 The entity shall disclose its (2) System Average Interruption Frequency Index (SAIFI).
 - 2.1 SAIFI is defined as the average number of times that a system customer experiences an outage during the period under reporting.
 - 2.2 The entity shall calculate its SAIFI as the total number of customers interrupted divided by the total number of customers served, written as $\sum(N_i) / N_T$
 - 2.2.1 $\sum$ = Summation function
 - 2.2.2 N_i = Total number of customers interrupted
 - 2.2.3 N_T = Total number of customers served

- 3 The entity shall disclose its (3) Customer Average Interruption Duration Index (CAIDI).
 - 3.1 The CAIDI is defined as the average amount of time required to restore service once an outage has occurred.
 - 3.2 The entity shall calculate its CAIDI as the total number of customers interrupted multiplied by the duration of interruptions (restoration time in minutes) divided by the sum of the number of customers interrupted, written as $\sum(N_i \times r_i) / \sum(N_i)$
 - 3.2.1 $\sum$ = Summation function
 - 3.2.2 r_i = Restoration time, in minutes
 - 3.2.3 N_i = Total number of customers interrupted

- 4 The entity shall disclose its SAIDI, SAIFI and CAIDI inclusive of major event days, where:
 - 4.1 Major event days are defined, according to IEEE Std 1366, as days in which the daily SAIDI exceeds a threshold value, T_{MED} , where T_{MED} is calculated as follows:
 - 4.1.1 The entity should collect values of daily SAIDI for five sequential years, ending on the last day of the last complete reporting period. If fewer than five years of historical data are available, use all the available historical data.
 - 4.1.2 If any day in the data set has a value of zero for SAIDI, replace it with the lowest non-zero SAIDI value in the data set—this permits taking the logarithm of every day.
 - 4.1.3 Take the natural logarithm ($\ln$) of each daily SAIDI value in the data set.
 - 4.1.4 Find α (Alpha), the average of the logarithms (also known as the logaverage) of the data set.
 - 4.1.5 Find β (Beta), the standard deviation of the logarithms (also known as the log-average) of the data set.

- 4.1.6 Compute the major event day threshold, T_{MED} , using the equation: $T_{MED} = e^{(\alpha+\beta)}$.
- 4.1.7 Any day with daily SAIDI greater than the threshold value T_{MED} that occurs during the subsequent reporting period is a major event day.

Note to IF-EU-550a.2

- 1 The entity shall discuss notable service disruptions such as those that affected a significant number of customers, or disruptions of extended duration.
- 2 For such disruptions, the entity should provide:
 - 2.1 Description and cause of the service disruption
 - 2.2 The total generation or transmission capacity, in megawatts, and population affected by the disruption
 - 2.3 The costs associated with the service disruption
 - 2.4 Actions taken to mitigate the potential for future service interruptions
 - 2.5 Any other significant outcomes (for example, legal proceedings or related fatalities).

Volume 33—Engineering & Construction Services

Industry Description

The Engineering & Construction Services industry provides engineering, construction, design, consulting, contracting and other related services that support various building and infrastructure projects. The industry has four major segments: engineering services, infrastructure construction, non-residential building construction, and building subcontractors and construction-related professional services. The infrastructure construction segment includes entities that design or build infrastructure projects such as power plants, dams, oil and gas pipelines, refineries, highways, bridges, tunnels, railways, ports, airports, waste treatment plants, water networks and stadiums. The non-residential building construction segment includes entities that design or build industrial and commercial facilities such as factories, warehouses, data centres, offices, hotels, hospitals, universities and retail spaces such as shopping centres. The engineering services segment includes entities that provide specialised architectural and engineering services such as design and development of feasibility studies for many of the project types listed above. Finally, the building subcontractors and other construction-related professional services segment includes smaller entities that provide ancillary services such as carpentry, electrical, plumbing, painting, waterproofing, landscaping, interior design and building inspection. The industry's customers include infrastructure owners and developers in the public and private sectors. Large entities in this industry operate and generate revenue globally and typically operate in more than one segment.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Environmental Impacts of Project Development	Number of incidents of non-compliance with environmental permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	IF-EN-160a.1
	Discussion of processes to assess and manage environmental risks associated with project design, siting and construction	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-EN-160a.2
Structural Integrity & Safety	Amount of defect- and safety-related rework costs	Quantitative	Presentation currency	IF-EN-250a.1
	Total amount of monetary losses as a result of legal proceedings associated with defect- and safety-related incidents ³⁶	Quantitative	Presentation currency	IF-EN-250a.2
Lifecycle Impacts of Buildings & Infrastructure	Number of (1) commissioned projects certified to a third-party multi-attribute sustainability standard and (2) active projects seeking such certification	Quantitative	Number	IF-EN-410a.1
	Discussion of process to incorporate operational-phase energy and water efficiency considerations into project planning and design	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-EN-410a.2
Climate Impacts of Business Mix	Amount of backlog for (1) hydrocarbon-related projects and (2) renewable energy projects	Quantitative	Presentation currency	IF-EN-410b.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	Amount of backlog cancellations associated with hydrocarbon-related projects	Quantitative	Presentation currency	IF-EN-410b.2
	Amount of backlog for non-energy projects associated with climate change mitigation	Quantitative	Presentation currency	IF-EN-410b.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of active projects ³⁷	Quantitative	Number	IF-EN-000.A
Number of commissioned projects ³⁸	Quantitative	Number	IF-EN-000.B
Total backlog ³⁹	Quantitative	Presentation currency	IF-EN-000.C

Environmental Impacts of Project Development

Topic Summary

Infrastructure construction projects improve economic and social development; however, they also may pose risks to the local environment and surrounding communities. Industry activities can disrupt local ecosystems through biodiversity impacts, air emissions, water discharges, natural resource consumption, waste generation and hazardous chemicals use. Construction entities perform clearing, grading and excavation activities and may generate harmful waste during project construction. Effectively assessing environmental impacts before construction may mitigate unforeseen issues that may increase operational expenses and capital costs. In some cases, environmental concerns or local community pushback may result in project delays and, in extreme cases, project cancellations, which may affect an entity's profitability and growth opportunities. Failure to comply with environmental regulations during construction may result in costly fines and remediation costs, and it can damage an entity's reputation. Environmental impact assessments can provide an understanding of a project's potential environmental impacts and necessary mitigation activities before it begins. Likewise, proper management of environmental risks during project construction may reduce regulatory oversight or community pushback. By assessing environmental considerations before project initiation, as well as continuing to evaluate them during project development, engineering and construction entities may be prepared to mitigate potential environmental issues and the

associated financial risks that may occur, while also establishing a competitive advantage for obtaining new contracts with prospective clients.

Metrics

IF-EN-160a.1. Number of incidents of non-compliance with environmental permits, standards and regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance associated with the environment, including violations of permits, standards or regulations associated with waste, air quality or emissions, water discharges, water withdrawal exceedances, effluent limit exceedances (such as waste load allocation), violation of wastewater pre-treatment requirements, oil or hazardous substance spills, land use, and endangered species.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations.
- 3 The scope of disclosure includes incidents of non-compliance received by the entity and by subcontractors under the entity's direct supervision.
- 4 An incident of non-compliance shall be disclosed regardless of whether it resulted in an enforcement action (for example, fine or warning letter).
- 5 An incident of non-compliance, regardless of the measurement method or frequency, shall be disclosed. These include one-time violations, continuous discharges and non-continuous discharges.

IF-EN-160a.2. Discussion of processes to assess and manage environmental risks associated with project design, siting and construction

- 1 The entity shall discuss the processes employed to assess and manage the environmental risks associated with project siting, design and construction.
 - 1.1 Environmental risks may include ecological impacts, biodiversity impacts, emissions to air, discharges to water, slope disturbance, soil disturbance and erosion, storm water management, waste management, natural resource consumption and hazardous chemical usage.
- 2 The entity shall discuss the due diligence practices employed to assess project environmental risks in which relevant due diligence practices include environmental impact assessments and stakeholder engagement practices.
 - 2.1 Relevant items to discuss include: practices to assess the baseline environmental considerations of the project site; feasible, environmentally preferable alternatives for the project; local legal requirements; biodiversity protection; renewable natural resources use; hazardous substances use; and efficient energy production, delivery and use.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the operational practices employed to minimise environmental impacts during project siting, design and construction, which may include: waste management, reducing biodiversity impacts, emissions to air, discharges to water, natural resource consumption and hazardous chemical use.

- 4 The entity shall describe how it operates in compliance with all applicable environmental regulations and permits.
 - 4.1 Relevant items to include: employee training on relevant regulations and clean up procedures, quality control processes on project sites, internal mechanisms for reporting and following up on environmental incidents, and maintenance and reporting of accurate data.

- 5 The entity shall discuss the use of codes, guidelines and standards to assess and minimise environmental impacts of project siting, design and construction, when applicable. Relevant codes, guidelines and standards may include:
 - 5.1 BREEAM®
 - 5.2 The Equator Principles
 - 5.3 International Finance Corporation's Environmental and Social Performance Standards and Guidance Notes
 - 5.4 Institute for Sustainable Infrastructure's (ISI) Envision® rating system
 - 5.5 International Organization for Standardisation (ISO) environmental standards
 - 5.6 United Nations Development Programme's Performance Standards on Environmental and Social Sustainability
 - 5.7 United Nations Global Compact's Environmental Principles
 - 5.8 U.S. Green Building Council's LEED® certification

- 6 The entity shall describe how it manages projects that have increased environmental or social due diligence requirements or are expected to have significant adverse environmental or social impacts, including additional measures or policies it employs.
 - 6.1 An example of a project type that has increased environmental or social impacts are 'Category A' projects categorised by the International Finance Corporation (IFC).
 - 6.2 The entity may describe how it categorises the environmental risk severity of its projects, including how it determines if a project has increased environmental risk.

- 7 When applicable and relevant, the entity shall describe differences between policies and practices for its various operating regions, project types and business segments.

- 8 The scope of disclosure includes project stages associated with siting, design and construction with which the entity is involved through contractual responsibility, which may include feasibility studies, proposals, design and planning, subcontractor procurement, and construction.

Structural Integrity & Safety

Topic Summary

Whether providing engineering, design, architectural, consulting, inspection, construction or maintenance services, entities in this industry have a professional responsibility to ensure the safety and integrity of their work. Errors or inadequate quality in the project design phase and construction of buildings or infrastructure may result in significant personal injury, loss of property value and economic harm. Entities that manage structural integrity and safety poorly may incur incremental costs because of redesign or repair work and legal liabilities, as well as reputational damage that could hurt growth prospects. Moreover, when designing and constructing buildings or infrastructure, entities in the industry increasingly must contemplate potential climate change impacts, which may affect the project's structural integrity and public safety. Compliance with minimum applicable codes and standards may not be enough to maintain and grow reputational value (or even mitigate legal liabilities) in some circumstances, especially if the frequency and severity of climate-change-related events increases as expected. Meeting or exceeding new industry quality standards, and setting up internal control procedures to identify and fix potential design issues, including those resulting from climate risks, are practices that may help entities reduce these risks.

Metrics

IF-EN-250a.1 Amount of defect- and safety-related rework costs

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of defect- and safety-related rework costs incurred.
 - 1.1 Rework is defined as activities in the field that must be done more than once, or activities that remove work previously installed as part of the project.
 - 1.2 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of rework costs excludes costs resulting from client- or project-owner-driven modifications including change orders, revisions to scope or revisions to design.
 - 1.3 The scope of rework costs includes costs associated with labour, materials, design, equipment and subcontractors.
- 2 The entity may discuss projects with significant rework costs relative to actual or projected total project costs. Relevant context to provide may include:
 - 2.1 Root causes of rework
 - 2.2 Corrective actions implemented
 - 2.3 Financial impacts to entity

IF-EN-250a.2. Total amount of monetary losses as a result of legal proceedings associated with defect- and safety-related incidents

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of monetary losses incurred during the reporting period resulting from legal proceedings associated with defect- and safety-related incidents and allegations.
- 2 The legal proceedings shall include any adjudicative proceeding involving the entity, whether before a court, a regulator, an arbitrator or otherwise.
- 3 The losses shall include all monetary liabilities to the opposing party or to others (whether because of settlement or verdict after trial or otherwise), including fines and

other monetary liabilities incurred during the reporting period as a result of civil actions (for example, civil judgments or settlements), regulatory proceedings (for example, penalties, disgorgement or restitution) and criminal actions (for example, criminal judgement, penalties or restitution) brought by any entity (for example, governmental, business or individual).

- 4 The scope of monetary losses shall exclude legal and other fees and expenses incurred by the entity in its defence.

Note to **IF-EN-250a.2**

- 1 The entity shall briefly describe the nature (for example, judgement or order issued after trial, settlement, guilty plea, deferred prosecution agreement or non-prosecution agreement) and context (for example, negligence) of all monetary losses resulting from legal proceedings.
- 2 The entity shall describe any corrective actions implemented in response to the legal proceedings. These corrective actions may include specific changes in operations, management, processes, products, business partners, training or technology.

Lifecycle Impacts of Buildings & Infrastructure

Topic Summary

Buildings and major infrastructure projects are among the largest users of natural resources in the economy; during construction, these materials include iron and steel products, cement, concrete, bricks, drywall, wallboards, glass, insulation, fixtures, doors, and cabinetry, among others. Once completed, and during their daily use, these projects often consume significant amounts of resources in the form of energy and water (for a discussion on direct environmental impacts from project construction see the Environmental Impacts of Project Development topic). Therefore, the sourcing of construction materials and the everyday use of buildings and infrastructure may contribute to direct and indirect greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, global or local resource constraints, water stress and negative human health outcomes. Client and regulatory pressures to develop a sustainable built environment are contributing to the growth of markets intended to reduce the lifecycle impacts of buildings and infrastructure projects. In response, various international sustainable building and infrastructure certification schemes assess, among other aspects, a project's use-phase energy and water efficiency, impacts on human health, and the use of sustainable construction and building materials. As a result, various opportunities are being created for industries in the value chain—from suppliers that can provide such materials, to entities in the Engineering & Construction Services industry that can provide sustainability-oriented project design, consulting and construction services. Such services can provide a competitive advantage and revenue growth opportunities as client demand for economically advantageous sustainable projects increases and related regulations evolve. Entities unable to effectively integrate such considerations into their services may lose market share in the long term.

Metrics

IF-EN-410a.1. Number of (1) commissioned projects certified to a third-party multi-attribute sustainability standard and (2) active projects seeking such certification

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the number of projects commissioned during the reporting period certified to a third-party multi-attribute sustainability standard.
 - 1.1 The scope of third-party multi-attribute sustainability standards is limited to standards or certifications that, at a minimum, address the following aspects of building or infrastructure design and construction:
 - 1.1.1 Energy efficiency;
 - 1.1.2 Water conservation;
 - 1.1.3 Material and resource efficiency; and
 - 1.1.4 Indoor environmental quality.
 - 1.2 Examples of third-party multi-attribute sustainability standards include:
 - 1.2.1 BREEAM®
 - 1.2.2 Green Globes®
 - 1.2.3 Institute for Sustainable Infrastructure's (ISI) Envision®
 - 1.2.4 LEED®
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the number of active projects that sought certification to a third-party multi-attribute sustainability standard during the reporting period.
 - 2.1 The scope of active projects includes all buildings and infrastructure projects actively under development at the close of the reporting period, which may include those in the design and construction stages.
 - 2.2 The scope of active projects excludes projects commissioned during the reporting period.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the third-party multi-attribute sustainability standard(s) to which projects are certified or seeking certification.
- 4 The scope of disclosure is limited to projects in which the entity had a direct role in design, engineering, procurement or construction of the building or infrastructure project.
- 5 The scope of disclosure includes buildings (such as residential, commercial and retail, government, healthcare and offices) and other infrastructure projects (such as transportation, oil and gas, electrical grid, renewable energy, water supply distribution and water treatment).
- 6 The entity may discuss sustainability standards or guidelines implemented during its building or infrastructure design and construction projects that are not third-party verified.

IF-EN-410a.2. Discussion of process to incorporate operational-phase energy and water efficiency considerations into project planning and design

- 1 The entity shall provide a discussion of the process used to incorporate operational-phase energy and water efficiency considerations into project planning and design.
 - 1.1 Operational-phase energy and water efficiency considerations to reduce and optimise operational use of energy and water may include water collection and reuse designs, repair and retrofits, improved insulation and material use, shading devices, energy procurement, and the use of energy- and water-efficient devices and lighting.
 - 1.2 Relevant information to disclose may include:
 - 1.2.1 The actions taken to incorporate such considerations, such as design solutions, technological solutions, material use, modelling of energy and water use
 - 1.2.2 The geographical markets where the entity operates, including current and expected future energy and water efficiency regulations, potential constraints on water or energy resources, and stakeholder demands in those markets
 - 1.2.3 Whether these energy and water efficiency solutions serve as competitive advantages in project bids and proposals, and how the entity communicates performance—including any perceived competitive advantages—to project owners
 - 1.2.4 How the entity communicates long-term cost-benefit analyses to project owners or developers, including the potential savings from energy efficiency projects based on past performance of energy efficiency projects
- 2 The entity shall describe how it assesses the risks associated with operational-phase energy and water efficiency considerations, including internal policies, practices and procedures.
- 3 The entity shall describe its use of codes, guidelines and standards that address operational-phase energy and water efficiency, when applicable.
 - 3.1 The entity may discuss how its energy and water efficiency efforts exceed building code requirements.
- 4 The scope of disclosure excludes environmental impacts associated with project construction, as well as codes, guidelines and standards associated with project construction, both of which are included within the scope of IF-EN-160a.2.

Climate Impacts of Business Mix

Topic Summary

Engineering & Construction Services industry clients may be exposed to potentially disruptive climate regulation as well as those that mitigate climate change. Some types of construction projects are significant climate change contributors because of the greenhouse gases (GHGs) emitted during their use phase. Projects that may contribute to global GHG emissions include

those in extractive industries, as well as large buildings. Whereas some infrastructure projects, such as renewable energy projects, are designed to reduce GHG emissions, many types of projects present trade-offs. Mass transit systems, for example, may contribute to GHG emissions while reducing net emissions once the benefits offered by the system are factored. Several entities in the industry generate a substantial share of revenue and profits from clients in carbon-intensive industries and whose future capital investments may be at risk because of evolving climate regulations. Downside risks may manifest through project delays, cancellations and diminished long-term revenue growth opportunities. On the other hand, entities that specialise in infrastructure projects that contribute to GHG mitigation could develop competitive advantages as they continue to focus on these growing markets. As the industry and its customers continue to operate within an uncertain business environment and face increasing environmental and regulatory requirements, assessing and communicating the risks and opportunities stemming from climate change that are embedded in an entity's backlog and future business prospects may help investors in assessing the overall business impact of climate change.

Metrics

IF-EN-410b.1. Amount of backlog for (1) hydrocarbon-related projects and (2) renewable energy projects

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of its backlog associated with (1) hydrocarbon-related projects.
 - 1.1 Backlog is defined as the value of projects not completed as of the close of the reporting period (revenue contractually expected in the future but that has not been recognised), or is defined by the entity, consistent with its existing disclosure of backlog. Backlog also may be referenced as revenue backlog or unsatisfied performance obligations.
 - 1.2 Hydrocarbon-related projects are defined as any type of project directly associated with the hydrocarbon value chain, which may include: hydrocarbon exploration, extraction, development, production or transportation; hydrocarbon infrastructure services and maintenance; hydrocarbon power generation; and hydrocarbon-related downstream services.
 - 1.2.1 Examples of hydrocarbon-related projects include any project directly associated with oil, gas or coal production, transportation, refining, and fossil fuel-based electricity generation.
- 2 If a significant portion of the entity's backlog in hydrocarbon-related projects is associated with natural gas power generation projects, the entity may provide supplementary disclosures describing this proportion of backlog and the sustainability impacts of such projects relative to alternatives or baseline scenarios.
- 3 The entity may provide a description of the sustainability implications of hydrocarbon-related projects, which may include project descriptions, categorisations by resource type, expected sustainability impacts, and risks related to project completion or conversion to revenue.

- 4 The entity shall disclose the amount of its backlog associated with (2) renewable energy projects.
 - 4.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
- 5 The entity shall exclude from its calculations and disclosures of backlog any amount of an order backlog cancellation that re-enters order backlog during the same reporting period because of a project owner's successful re-planning of the project.
- 6 The scope of disclosure is limited to projects in which the entity provided engineering, architecture, design, construction, installation, planning, consulting, repair or maintenance services, or other similar services.

IF-EN-410b.2. Amount of backlog cancellations associated with hydrocarbon-related projects

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of its total backlog associated with hydrocarbon-related projects of any type cancelled during the reporting period for any reason.
 - 1.1 Backlog is defined as the value of projects not completed as of the close of the reporting period (revenue contractually expected in the future but that has not been recognised), or is defined by the entity, consistent with its existing disclosure of backlog. Backlog also may be referenced as revenue backlog or unsatisfied performance obligations.
 - 1.2 Backlog cancellations are defined as the amount of backlog cancelled, reduced, terminated or deferred such that it no longer meets the definition of backlog, or that which is removed from the backlog for any reason other than conversion to revenue or currency exchange rate fluctuations.
 - 1.2.1 Backlog cancellations include cancellations that occur for any reason, which may include a customer's failure to obtain necessary project permitting or financing, a customer's voluntary project cancellation, and reduction in project scope because of financial constraints.
 - 1.2.2 The scope of backlog cancellations excludes cancellations associated with decommissioning projects.
 - 1.3 Hydrocarbon-related projects are defined as any type of project directly associated with the hydrocarbon value chain, which may include: hydrocarbon exploration, extraction, development, production or transportation; hydrocarbon infrastructure services and maintenance; hydrocarbon power generation; and hydrocarbon-related downstream services.
 - 1.3.1 Examples of hydrocarbon-related projects include any project directly associated with oil, gas or coal production, transportation, refining, and fossil fuel-based electricity generation.

- 2 The scope of disclosure is limited to projects in which the entity provided engineering, architecture, design, construction, installation, planning, consulting, repair or maintenance services, or other similar services.
- 3 The entity may discuss specific backlog cancellations, including the root cause and corrective actions taken to prevent future backlog cancellations.

IF-EN-410b.3. Amount of backlog for non-energy projects associated with climate change mitigation

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of its backlog for non-energy projects associated with climate change mitigation.
 - 1.1 Backlog is defined as the value of projects not completed as of the close of the reporting period (revenue contractually expected in the future but that has not been recognised), or is defined by the entity, consistent with its existing disclosure of backlog. Backlog also may be referenced as revenue backlog or unsatisfied performance obligations.
 - 1.2 Non-energy projects are defined as projects not directly associated with the energy value chain, such that the energy value chain may include: hydrocarbon exploration, extraction, development, production and transportation; power generation projects (hydrocarbon and renewable); and energy infrastructure services and maintenance.
 - 1.3 Climate change mitigation is defined by the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) as an anthropogenic intervention to reduce the sources or enhance the sinks of greenhouse gases (GHG).
- 2 The scope of disclosure shall only include projects that are significantly motivated by, or undertaken in response to, climate change mitigation. Such climate change mitigation is not required to be the primary project motivation, but it shall be a significant motivating factor for project development and implementation.
 - 2.1 Examples of projects that may be associated with climate change mitigation include: mass transportation systems; alternative, low-carbon transportation systems; carbon capture and storage; hydrocarbon-related decommissioning projects; and energy efficiency infrastructure retrocommissioning.
- 3 The scope of disclosure shall only include projects that provide significant climate change mitigation relative to a baseline scenario, or baseline emissions, defined as the GHG emissions that may occur without project implementation.
 - 3.1 The entity may use jurisdictional or proprietary methodologies for assessing climate change mitigation relative to a baseline scenario or baseline emissions.
- 4 The scope of disclosure shall exclude all backlog directly associated with the energy value chain, which may be equivalent to backlog included in IF-EN-410b.1, except for hydrocarbon-related decommissioning projects.
- 5 The entity may exclude backlog associated with decommissioning projects.

6

The scope of disclosure is limited to buildings and infrastructure projects in which the entity provided engineering, architecture, design, construction, installation, planning, consulting, repair or maintenance services, or other similar services.

Volume 34—Gas Utilities & Distributors

-

Industry Description

The Gas Utilities & Distributors industry consists of gas distribution and marketing entities. Gas distribution involves operating local, low-pressure pipes to transfer natural gas from larger transmission pipes to end users. Gas marketing entities are gas brokers that aggregate and deliver natural gas in quantities that meet the needs of various customers, generally through other entities’ transmission and distribution lines. A relatively smaller portion of this industry is involved in propane gas distribution; therefore, this standard is focused on natural gas distribution. Both types of gas are used for heating and cooking by residential, commercial and industrial customers. In regulated markets, the utility is granted a full monopoly over the distribution and sale of natural gas. A regulator must approve the rates utilities charge to prevent the abuse of their monopoly position. In deregulated markets, distribution and marketing are separated legally, and customers have a choice of which entity from which to buy their gas. In this case, a common carrier utility is guaranteed a monopoly only over distribution and is required legally to transmit all gas equitably along its pipes for a fixed fee. Overall, entities must provide safe, reliable, low-cost gas, while effectively managing their social and environmental impacts, such as community safety and methane emissions.

Note: The Gas Utilities & Distributors industry does not include gas transmission entities that transport high pressure natural gas over long distances from the wellhead. Gas transmission entities are included in the Oil & Gas—Midstream (EM-MD) industry. Furthermore, the Gas Utilities & Distributors industry covers activities related only to gas provision and not to electricity provision. Some utilities may operate in both gas and electricity markets. Entities undertaking activities related to electricity generation or distribution also should consider the topics and metrics in the Electric Utilities & Power Generators (IF-EU) industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
End-Use Efficiency	Customer gas savings from efficiency measures, by market ⁴⁰	Quantitative	Million British Thermal Units (MMBtu)	IF-GU-420a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Integrity of Gas Delivery Infrastructure	Number of (1) reportable pipeline incidents, (2) corrective actions received and (3) violations of pipeline safety statutes ⁴¹	Quantitative	Number	IF-GU-540a.1
	Percentage of distribution pipeline that is (1) cast or wrought iron and (2) unprotected steel	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by length	IF-GU-540a.2
	Percentage of gas (1) transmission and (2) distribution pipelines inspected	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by length	IF-GU-540a.3
	Description of efforts to manage the integrity of gas delivery infrastructure, including risks related to safety and emissions	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-GU-540a.4

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of: (1) residential, (2) commercial, and (3) industrial customers served ⁴²	Quantitative	Number	IF-GU-000.A
Amount of natural gas delivered to: (1) residential customers, (2) commercial customers, (3) industrial customers, and (4) transferred to a third party ⁴³	Quantitative	Million British Thermal Units (MMBtu)	IF-GU-000.B
Length of gas (1) transmission and (2) distribution pipelines ⁴⁴	Quantitative	Kilometres (km)	IF-GU-000.C

End-Use Efficiency**Topic Summary**

Natural gas produces fewer greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions than other fossil fuels. Expanding its use in the economy may be an important strategy for many governments and regulators striving to reduce GHG emissions. However, despite the relatively lower emissions, the natural gas value chain still produces meaningful levels of GHG emissions overall. As policymakers and regulators seek to mitigate climate change, the efficient consumption of natural gas will be an important long-term theme. Energy efficiency is a low-lifecycle-cost method to reduce greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions. Utilities can offer customers a wide range of options to promote energy efficiency, including providing rebates for energy-efficient appliances, weatherising customers' homes and educating customers on energy saving methods. Overall, entities that sponsor efficiency initiatives may reduce the downside risks from demand fluctuations, gain returns on needed investments, decrease operating costs and earn higher risk-adjusted returns over the long term.

Metrics

IF-GU-420a.2. Customer gas savings from efficiency measures, by market

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of gas savings delivered to customers, in million British thermal units (MMBtu), from energy efficiency measures during the reporting period for each of its markets.
 - 1.1 Markets are defined as operations that are subject to distinct public utility regulatory oversight.
 - 1.2 Gas savings are defined according to the gross savings approach as the changes in energy consumption or demand that result from programme-related actions taken by participants in an efficiency programme, regardless of why they participated.
 - 1.2.1 The entity may list those markets where it reports gas savings on a net savings basis, and thus may be different from the figures disclosed here.
 - 1.2.2 Net gas savings are defined as changes in consumption specifically attributable to an energy efficiency programme and would not have happened otherwise in the absence of the programme.
- 2 Gas savings shall be calculated on a gross basis but consistent with the methodology set forth in jurisdictional evaluation, measurement and verification (EM&V) regulations in which such savings occur.
- 3 The scope of gas savings from efficiency measures includes savings delivered directly by the entity and, when regulations provide, savings substantiated by purchases of efficiency savings credits.
 - 3.1 For any savings from efficiency measures delivered directly by the entity, any efficiency savings credits shall be retained (not sold) and retired on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as delivered gas savings.
 - 3.2 For efficiency savings credits that are purchased, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that credits be retained and retired on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them.

- 4 The entity shall consider guidance on regulations as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

Note to **IF-GU-420a.2**

- 1 The entity shall discuss customer efficiency measures required by regulations for each of its relevant markets, including a discussion of:
- 1.1 The amount or percentage of gas savings from efficiency measures required by regulations for each market
 - 1.2 Instances of noncompliance with gas savings obligations
 - 1.2.1 In such instances, the entity shall disclose the difference between the gas savings delivered and the amount required by the regulation.
 - 1.3 Gas savings delivered that exceed those required by regulations and that resulted in the entity receiving energy efficiency performance incentives, including the value of any such incentives
- 2 The entity shall discuss the policy mechanisms in place for each market that allows for or incentivises energy efficiency, including a discussion of the benefits, challenges and financial effects associated with such mechanisms.
- 3 Relevant policy mechanisms to discuss may include:
- 3.1 Deferral decoupling
 - 3.2 Current period decoupling
 - 3.3 Single fixed variable rates
 - 3.4 Lost revenue adjustments
 - 3.5 Energy efficiency feebates
- 4 The entity may discuss incentives developed for its customers that promote end-use efficiency, which may include energy efficiency rebates and other measures to subsidise customer energy efficiency.

Integrity of Gas Delivery Infrastructure

Topic Summary

Operating a vast network of gas pipelines, equipment and storage facilities requires a multifaceted, long-term approach to ensuring infrastructure integrity and managing related risks. Although customers depend on reliable gas supplies, entities manage substantial risks—including those related to human health, property and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions—that result from operating gas distribution networks and related infrastructure. Ageing infrastructure, inadequate monitoring and maintenance, and other operational factors may result in gas leaks. Gas leak safety-related risks, such as losses of containment, may result in fires or explosions that can be particularly dangerous in urban areas where entities often operate. Furthermore, gas leaks also result in fugitive emissions (methane), causing adverse environmental impacts. Regulated gas utilities generally incur no direct costs for gas leaks, because the cost of gas

typically is passed on to customers (though this may vary by region). However, gas leaks that result in safety-related risks or fugitive emissions may affect entities financially through a variety of regulatory, legal and product demand channels. Accidents, particularly fatal accidents, may result in negligence claims against entities, leading to costly court battles and fines. GHG emissions may result in increased regulatory scrutiny—a critical element directly connected to financial performance, given the importance of regulatory relations—and potential fines and penalties. Importantly, regulated gas utilities can financially benefit from capital investment opportunities to improve performance and mitigate risks related to safety and emissions, which can be factored into their rate base. Entities manage such risks through pipeline replacements, regular inspections and monitoring, employee training and emergency preparedness, investments in technology, and other strategies such as working closely with regulators. In response to concerns about ageing infrastructure, many entities are seeking ways to expedite the replacement permitting and approval process, especially in cases where pipelines are located near densely populated areas.

Metrics

IF-GU-540a.1. Number of (1) reportable pipeline incidents, (2) corrective actions received and (3) violations of pipeline safety statutes

- 1 The entity shall disclose the number of reportable pipeline incidents, where:
 - 1.1 Reportable incidents are defined as events that involve a release of gas from a pipeline and result in one or more of the following consequences: a death or personal injury necessitating in-patient hospitalisation; estimated property damage equivalent to US\$50,000 or more or the equivalent in the entity's presentation currency, including losses to the operator, losses to others, or both, but excluding the cost of gas lost; an unintentional estimated gas loss of three million cubic feet or more; or an event that is significant in the judgement of the operator.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the number of violations of pipeline safety statutes where:
 - 2.1 A corrective action is issued when a particular pipeline facility is found to be hazardous to life, property or the environment. A corrective action may include suspended or restricted use of the facility, physical inspection, testing, repair, replacement or other appropriate action.
 - 2.2 If corrective actions are not issued by applicable jurisdictional legal or regulatory authorities, the entity shall disclose the number that contain a statement of the provisions of the laws, regulations, or orders the entity is alleged to have violated and a statement of the evidence upon which the allegations are based.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the number of violations of pipeline safety statutes where:
 - 3.1 A violation of pipeline safety statute is defined as a violation of jurisdictional pipeline safety protocol considered to be hazardous to life, property or the environment and that results in the receipt of a notice or warning.
- 4 The entity shall disclose the applicable jurisdictional law or regulation used to define reportable pipeline incidents, corrective actions and pipeline safety violations.

Note to **IF-GU-540a.1**

- 1 The entity shall discuss notable incidents such as those that affected a significant number of customers, created extended disruptions to service or resulted in a 'serious incident'.
 - 1.1 Serious incidents are defined as incidents that resulted in a fatality or an injury requiring in-patient hospitalisation.
- 2 For such incidents, the entity may provide:
 - 2.1 A description and cause of the incident
 - 2.2 The total population affected by the incident
 - 2.3 The costs associated with the incident
 - 2.4 Actions taken to mitigate the potential for future service interruptions
 - 2.5 Any other significant outcomes (for example, legal proceedings, serious injuries or fatalities)

IF-GU-540a.2. Percentage of distribution pipeline that is (1) cast or wrought iron and (2) unprotected steel

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage, by length, in kilometres, of its natural gas pipelines that are (1) cast or wrought iron, and separately, (2) unprotected steel.
 - 1.1 A distribution pipeline is defined as a pipeline other than a gathering or transmission line, where:
 - 1.1.1 A gathering line is defined as a pipeline that transports gas from a production facility to a transmission line or main line
 - 1.1.2 A transmission line is defined as a pipeline, other than a gathering line, that (1) transports gas from a gathering line or storage facility to a distribution centre, storage facility or large-volume customer that is not downstream from a distribution centre; (2) operates at a hoop stress of 20% or more of the specified minimum yield strength (SMYS); or (3) transports gas within a storage field
 - 1.2 Cast or wrought iron is defined as iron heated to its melting point and poured into moulds and cannot be moulded further or screwed.
 - 1.3 Unprotected steel is defined as steel without corrosion protection.
- 2 The percentage of (1) cast or wrought iron distribution pipelines shall be calculated as the total length of cast or wrought iron pipelines the entity owns or operates divided by the total length of distribution pipelines the entity owns or operates.
- 3 The percentage of (2) unprotected steel distribution pipelines shall be calculated as the total length of unprotected steel pipelines the entity owns or operates divided by the total length of distribution pipelines the entity owns or operates.

- 4 The entity may discuss its pipeline replacement rates, its use of polyethylene pipes, or other efforts to reduce fugitive emissions and leaks and improve the safety of its distribution pipelines.

IF-GU-540a.3. Percentage of gas (1) transmission and (2) distribution pipelines inspected

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage, by length, of gas (1) transmission pipelines, and separately, (2) distribution pipelines inspected during the reporting period.
- 1.1 A transmission pipeline is defined as a pipeline, other than a gathering line, that (1) transports gas from a gathering line or storage facility to a distribution centre, storage facility or large-volume customer that is not downstream from a distribution centre; (2) operates at a hoop stress of 20% or more of the specified minimum yield strength (SMYS); or (3) transports gas within a storage field.
- 1.2 A distribution pipeline is defined as a pipeline other than a gathering or transmission line.
- 2 Inspection activities include:
- 2.1 Internal inspection tool(s) capable of detecting corrosion and any other threats to which the covered segment is susceptible
- 2.2 Pressure test(s)
- 2.3 Direct assessment to address threats of external corrosion, internal corrosion or stress corrosion cracking
- 2.4 Other technology that an operator demonstrates can provide an equivalent understanding of pipeline condition
- 2.4.1 If other technologies were used by the entity to conduct inspections, the entity shall disclose which technology was used.
- 3 The percentage is calculated as the length of gas pipelines inspected divided by the total length of gas pipelines.

IF-GU-540a.4. Description of efforts to manage the integrity of gas delivery infrastructure, including risks related to safety and emissions

- 1 The entity shall describe its efforts to manage the integrity of gas delivery infrastructure.
- 1.1 Gas delivery infrastructure may include transmission pipelines, distribution pipelines, storage facilities, compressor stations, metering and regulation stations, and liquid natural gas facilities.
- 1.2 Efforts may include those related to employee training, emergency preparedness, process safety and asset integrity management.
- 1.3 Relevant information to provide may include the use of standards, industry best practices, benchmarking and participation in third-party initiatives.
- 2 The entity shall describe how it integrates a culture of safety and emergency preparedness throughout its project lifecycles, such as through training, oversight of

workforce, rules and guidelines for communicating risks, and use of technology.

2.1 The project lifecycle includes, at a minimum, pipeline design, construction, commissioning, operation, maintenance and decommissioning.

3 The entity shall describe its approach to ensuring pipeline operators are qualified or supervised when performing a covered task, including ongoing reviews of operator qualifications, assurance that unqualified workers are properly supervised, and efforts to maintain enough qualified pipeline operators, where:

3.1 Pipeline operators are defined as those people who engage in the transportation of gas.

3.2 A pipeline operator is considered qualified to perform covered tasks when the individual has been evaluated, can perform the assigned covered task, and can recognise and react to abnormal operating conditions.

3.2.1 A covered task is defined as an activity, identified by the operator, that is performed on a pipeline facility, is an operations or maintenance task, is performed as a requirement of maintaining regulatory compliance, and affects the operation or integrity of a pipeline.

4 The entity shall describe its efforts to mitigate risks and promote emergency preparedness, such as coordinating with third parties (for example, sewer line and buried power line developers), performing timely pipeline inspections, repairing ageing infrastructure and maintaining current pipeline operator certifications.

5 The entity shall describe its efforts to manage risks related to human health and safety, and emissions, including fugitive emissions and process emissions, that arise from the integrity of gas delivery infrastructure.

5.1 Fugitive emissions are defined as natural gas (primarily methane) emissions resulting from leaks or other types of unintended or irregular releases.

5.2 Process emissions are defined as natural gas emissions resulting from intentional releases.

5.3 Disclosure shall include relevant strategies, plans or targets related to reductions in fugitive emissions and process emissions, the entity's ability to measure such emissions, the activities and investments required to achieve the plans, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.

6 Disclosure may focus broadly on safety and emergency management systems, but it specifically shall address operations in high consequence areas and the systems to avoid and manage emergencies, accidents and incidents that could have catastrophic impacts on human health, the local community and the environment.

7 The entity shall discuss direct or indirect financial opportunities related to the integrity of gas delivery infrastructure, which may include improvements to stakeholder relations,

opportunities for capital investments, reduction in customer rates through improved operational efficiency, and reduced risks of regulatory or civil fines or settlements.

- 8
- The entity may disclose the following:
- 8.1

Pipeline replacement rates
- 8.2

Average response time for gas emergencies
- 8.3

Open Grade 2 and 2+ leaks
- 8.4

Fugitive emissions, including the technique(s) employed to measure leakage, the amount of leakage calculated according to each technique it employs, and the regulations to which its gas leakage is subject.
- 8.5

Process emissions
- 8.6

Other efforts designed to reduce emissions or improve the safety of its gas delivery infrastructure

Volume 35—Home Builders

-

Industry Description

Home Builders industry entities build new homes and develop residential communities. Development efforts generally include land acquisition, site preparation, home construction and home sales. The majority of the industry focuses on the development and sale of single-family homes, which are typically part of entity-designed residential communities. A smaller segment develops town homes, condominiums, multi-family housing and mixed-use development. Many entities in the industry offer financing services to individual homebuyers. The industry is fragmented, since many developers of all sizes exist, which vary in entity structure and geographical focus. Listed entities tend to be significantly larger and more integrated than the numerous privately held home builders.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Land Use & Ecological Impacts	Number of (1) lots and (2) homes delivered on redevelopment sites	Quantitative	Number	IF-HB-160a.1
	Number of (1) lots and (2) homes delivered in regions with	Quantitative	Number	IF-HB-160a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress			
	Total amount of monetary losses as a result of legal proceedings associated with environmental regulations ⁴⁵	Quantitative	Presentation currency	IF-HB-160a.3
	Discussion of process to integrate environmental considerations into site selection, site design and site development and construction	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-HB-160a.4
	(1) Number of homes that obtained a certified residential energy efficiency rating and (2) average rating	Quantitative	Number, Rating	IF-HB-410a.1
	Percentage of installed water fixtures certified to a water efficiency standard	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	IF-HB-410a.2
Design for Resource Efficiency	Number of homes delivered certified to a third-party multi-attribute green building standard	Quantitative	Number	IF-HB-410a.3
	Description of risks and opportunities related to incorporating resource efficiency into home design, and how benefits are communicated to customers	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-HB-410a.4
Climate Change Adaptation	Number of lots located in 100-year flood zones	Quantitative	Number	IF-HB-420a.1
	Description of climate change risk exposure analysis, degree of systematic portfolio	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-HB-420a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	exposure, and strategies for mitigating risks			

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of controlled lots ⁴⁶	Quantitative	Number	IF-HB-000.A
Number of homes delivered ⁴⁷	Quantitative	Number	IF-HB-000.B
Number of active selling communities ⁴⁸	Quantitative	Number	IF-HB-000.C

Land Use & Ecological Impacts

Topic Summary

Home builders face risks associated with the ecological impacts of development activities. Developments often take place on previously undeveloped land, and entities must manage the ecosystem disruption of construction activities as well as the regulations and permitting processes that accompany 'greenfield' land development. Regardless of the siting decisions entities make, industry development activities generally carry risks related to land and water contamination, mismanagement of waste, and excessive strain on water resources during the construction and use phases. Violation of environmental regulations can result in costly fines and delays that decrease financial returns while potentially harming brand value. Entities with repeated violations or a history of negative ecological impacts may find seeking permits and approvals from local communities for new developments difficult, thereby decreasing future revenue and market share. Entities that concentrate development efforts in water-stressed regions may witness challenges to permitting approvals and increased land or home value depreciation because of water shortage concerns. Environmental quality control procedures, 'smart growth' strategies (including a focus on redevelopment sites) and conservation strategies may help ensure compliance with environmental laws, and therefore mitigate financial risks, while improving future growth opportunities.

Metrics

IF-HB-160a.1. Number of (1) lots and (2) homes delivered on redevelopment sites

- 1The entity shall (1) disclose the number of controlled lots that are located on redevelopment sites.
- 1.1The scope of controlled lots includes all lots owned or contractually available for ownership through option contracts or other equivalent types of contracts.
- 1.2The scope of redevelopment sites shall include brownfield and greyfield sites, and shall include sites that meet jurisdictional designations for such terms. In

the absence of jurisdictional definitions, the following definitions shall be used:

1.2.1 Redevelopment sites are defined as sites previously developed, including the replacement, remodelling or reuse of existing structures to accommodate new development.

1.2.2 Brownfield sites are defined as real property, the expansion, redevelopment or reuse of which may be complicated by the presence or potential presence of a hazardous substance, pollutant or contaminant.

1.2.3 Greyfield sites are defined as any site previously developed with at least 50% of the surface area covered with impervious material.

1.3 The scope of redevelopment sites excludes undeveloped infill sites but includes infill sites to the extent that such sites meet the above definitions of redevelopment, brownfield or greyfield sites.

2 The entity shall disclose (2) the number of homes delivered that were constructed on redevelopment sites.

2.1 The scope of homes shall include single-family dwelling units, whether detached, attached or part of multi-family residential buildings.

IF-HB-160a.2. Number of (1) lots and (2) homes delivered in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

1 The entity shall (1) disclose the number of controlled lots located in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.

1.1 The scope of controlled lots includes all lots owned or contractually available for ownership through option contracts or other equivalent types of contracts.

1.2 The entity shall identify controlled lots in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress with the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

2 The entity shall disclose (2) the number of homes delivered in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.

2.1 The scope of homes shall include single-family dwelling units whether detached, attached or part of multi-family residential buildings.

IF-HB-160a.3. Total amount of monetary losses as a result of legal proceedings associated with environmental regulations

1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of monetary losses incurred during the reporting period resulting from legal proceedings associated with environmental regulations, such as those related to: enforcement of laws and regulations on ground- and surface-water contamination; hazardous waste transport, containment or disposal; air emissions; and public disclosure of contamination events.

- 2 The legal proceedings shall include any adjudicative proceeding involving the entity, whether before a court, a regulator, an arbitrator or otherwise.
- 3 The losses shall include all monetary liabilities to the opposing party or to others (whether as the result of settlement or verdict after trial or otherwise), including fines and other monetary liabilities incurred during the reporting period as a result of civil actions (for example, civil judgment or settlements), regulatory proceedings (for example, penalties, disgorgement or restitution) and criminal actions (for example, criminal judgement, penalties or restitution) brought by any entity (for example, governmental, business or individual).
- 4 The scope of monetary losses shall exclude legal and other fees and expenses incurred by the entity in its defence.
- 5 The scope of disclosure shall include relevant enforcements related to activities adjudicated by applicable jurisdictional legal or regulatory authorities with an enforcement mandate broader than the home builders industry.

Note to **IF-HB-160a.3**

- 1 The entity shall briefly describe the nature (for example, judgement or order issued after trial, settlement, guilty plea, deferred prosecution agreement, non-prosecution agreement) and context (for example, permitting violation) of all monetary losses resulting from legal proceedings.
- 2 The entity shall describe any corrective actions implemented in response to the legal proceedings. This may include specific changes in operations, processes, products, business partners, training or technology.

IF-HB-160a.4. Discussion of process to integrate environmental considerations into site selection, site design and site development and construction

- 1 The entity shall provide a discussion of the process used to integrate environmental considerations into site selection, design and development and construction.
 - 1.1 Environmental considerations may include ecological impacts, biodiversity impacts, emissions to air, discharges to water, slope disturbance, soil disturbance and erosion, storm water management, waste management, natural resource consumption and hazardous chemical usage.
- 2 The entity shall describe how it manages the following aspects of site selection:
 - 2.1 The process used to assess the level of ecological sensitivity of sites under consideration for acquisition or development, and how such assessments are incorporated into acquisition and development decisions.
 - 2.2 The use of site classifications (for example, greenfield, greyfield, brownfield or infill sites) in decision-making processes.
- 3 The entity shall describe how it manages the following aspects of site design:
 - 3.1 The process used to design sites to minimise ecological impacts, including management of slope disturbance, soil disturbance and erosion, storm water,

waste and wildlife habitat impacts.

- 4 The entity shall describe how it manages the following aspects of site development and construction:
 - 4.1 The process used to minimise ecological impacts during construction, including management of construction and demolition waste, runoff, soil disturbance and erosion and hazardous materials.
- 5 The entity shall describe how it assesses risks associated with environmental considerations and related internal policies, practices and procedures for managing those risks.
- 6 The entity shall describe its use of codes, guidelines and standards that address site selection, design and development and construction, if applicable.

Design for Resource Efficiency

Topic Summary

Residential buildings, when occupied, consume significant amounts of energy and water. Entities in the Home Builders industry can improve home resource efficiency through sustainable design practices and choice of materials. Energy-saving products and techniques such as designing homes for efficient heating and cooling may reduce energy dependence, whether it comes from the electric grid or onsite fuel combustion. Intended to improve home resource efficiency, these measures may decrease home ownership costs through lower utility bills. Water-saving features such as low-flow faucets alleviate stress in water-scarce communities, while likely also reducing homeowner costs. Homebuyer awareness of energy and water efficiency creates an opportunity for entities to increase target market demand, thereby increasing revenue or margins. Effectively applying resource efficiency design principles in a cost-effective manner may be a competitive advantage, especially when entities are successful in systematically educating customers on the long-term benefits of these homes.

Metrics

IF-HB-410a.1. (1) Number of homes that obtained a certified residential energy efficiency rating and (2) average rating

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the number of homes that obtained a certified, standardised residential energy efficiency rating recognised by relevant industry associations or jurisdictional legal or regulatory authorities during the reporting period.
 - 1.1 The scope of homes shall include single-family dwelling units, whether detached, attached or part of multi-family residential buildings.
 - 1.2 The entity shall disclose the energy efficiency rating system used to calculate this metric.
- 2 The entity shall (2) disclose the simple average rating of all homes that obtained a certified, standardised residential energy efficiency rating during the reporting period.
 - 2.1 The simple average shall be calculated as the sum of all ratings associated with homes that obtained a rating during the reporting period divided by the number

of homes that obtained a rating during the reporting period.

- 3 An entity operating in multiple jurisdictions shall disclose separately the number of homes and the average ratings by individual jurisdiction in which they operate.
- 4 The scope of disclosure includes all homes that are or were controlled by the entity, regardless of the stage of construction and the stage within the sales cycle.

IF-HB-410a.2. Percentage of installed water fixtures certified to a water efficiency standard

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of installed water fixtures certified to the jurisdictional water efficiency standard.
 - 1.1 A water fixture is defined as a device used for the distribution of water or a device that consumes water.
 - 1.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the number of water fixtures installed during the reporting period that were certified to the applicable jurisdictional water efficiency standard divided by the total number of water fixtures installed.
 - 1.2.1 The scope of water fixtures includes those that are within an eligible jurisdictional water efficiency standard product category. Examples of product categories may include bathroom sink faucets and accessories, showerheads, toilets, urinals, irrigation controllers and pre-rinse spray valves.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes all water fixtures installed in homes that are or were controlled by the entity, regardless of the stage of construction, the stage within the sales cycle or the entity that performed such installations.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the jurisdictional standard, guideline or regulation used for its calculation.

IF-HB-410a.3. Number of homes delivered certified to a third-party multi-attribute green building standard

- 1 The entity shall disclose the number of homes delivered certified to a third-party multi-attribute green building standard designed for homes.
 - 1.1 The scope of third-party multi-attribute green building standards is limited to home standards or certifications that, at a minimum, judge important aspects of new home design and construction:
 - 1.1.1 Energy efficiency
 - 1.1.2 Water conservation
 - 1.1.3 Material and resource efficiency
 - 1.1.4 Indoor environmental quality
 - 1.1.5 Owner education

1.2 Examples of third-party multi-attribute green building standards include:

1.2.1 Environments For Living Certified Green®

1.2.2 ICC 700 National Green Building Standard

1.2.3 LEED® for Homes.

2 The entity shall disclose the third-party multi-attribute green building standard(s) to which its homes are certified.

3 The scope of disclosure includes all homes delivered during the reporting period.

4 The entity may discuss other green building or sustainability standards or guidelines it implements in its home design and construction processes that are not third-party verified.

IF-HB-410a.4. Description of risks and opportunities related to incorporating resource efficiency into home design, and how benefits are communicated to customers

1 The entity shall describe the risks or opportunities associated with its approach to integrating environmental considerations into home design, including, where relevant:

1.1 Risks of failing to achieve adequate returns on technology investments and sufficient market demand to improve home sustainability performance or earn sustainability certifications

1.2 Risks to market demand associated with the entity's potential failure to advance its design approach at the same pace as its peers, resulting in the production of less sustainable and less energy- and water-efficient homes

1.3 Risks associated with cost-effectively building homes that meet evolving building codes

1.4 Opportunities to achieve sales price premiums, capture target market demand and create competitive advantages by producing homes with market-leading energy efficiency and water efficiency

2 The entity shall discuss its strategy to measure and communicate energy efficiency and water efficiency performance improvements to homes, including:

2.1 Measurement of homeowner benefits related to energy and water efficiency, including performance audits, certifications, standards, guidelines and use of projected energy and water costs and savings relative to a baseline

2.2 Communication of the benefits of resource efficiency to prospective home buyers, including the benefits of resource efficiency performance and certifications, projected energy and water costs and savings, and the integration of resource efficiency into sales and marketing

3 The entity may provide an analysis of such price increases relative to the cost of improvements in, and third-party certifications of, energy efficiency, water efficiency and

indoor environmental quality. Analysis additionally may include target return rates compared to realised return rates of improvements.

Climate Change Adaptation

Topic Summary

The impacts of climate change, including extreme weather events and changing climate patterns, may affect the markets entities select to develop homes and residential communities. Entities with business models that incorporate ongoing assessments of climate change risks, and adapt to such risks, are likely to grow entity value more effectively over the long term, partially through reductions in risk. More specifically, strategies focused on home development activities in floodplains and coastal regions exposed to extreme weather events, such as flooding, have increased the need to adapt to climate change, especially considering long-term challenges like flood insurance rates, the financial stability of government-subsidised flood insurance programs, permitting approvals and financing stipulations. Rising climate risks may translate into reduced long-term demand, land value depreciation and concerns over understated long-term costs of home ownership. Additionally, entities that build developments in water-stressed regions risk losing land value and may have problems getting permitting approvals. The active assessment of climate change risks and a holistic view of long-term homebuyer demand may enable entities to successfully adapt to such risks.

Metrics

IF-HB-420a.1. Number of lots located in 100-year flood zones

- 1 The entity shall disclose the number of controlled lots in 100-year flood zones.
 - 1.1 100-year flood zones are defined as land areas subject to a 1% or greater chance of flooding in any given year. Such areas also may be referenced as being subject to the 1% annual chance flood, the 1% annual exceedance probability flood, or the 100-year flood.
 - 1.1.1 Examples of 100-year flood zones may include coastal flood plains, flood plains along major rivers and areas subject to flooding from ponding in low-lying areas.
 - 1.2 The scope of controlled lots includes all lots owned or contractually available for ownership through option contracts or other equivalent types of contracts.
- 2 The scope of disclosure shall include all entity-controlled lots located in 100-year flood zones, regardless of the jurisdiction in which they are located.
- 3 The entity may disclose its risks, opportunities and potential impacts resulting from reclassifications of 100-year flood zones, including the risk of expansion of such areas into lots controlled by the entity or its active selling communities.

IF-HB-420a.2. Description of climate change risk exposure analysis, degree of systematic portfolio exposure, and strategies for mitigating risks

- 1 The entity shall describe the significant risks and opportunities presented to its business by climate change scenarios.

- 1.1 The entity shall identify each significant risk and opportunity.
 - 1.1.1 Risks and opportunities may include water availability, extreme weather events, evolving regulation and legislation, home permitting processes, time lines and approvals and impacts to local economies and infrastructure.
 - 1.2 The entity shall discuss the time line over which such risks and opportunities are expected to manifest.
 - 1.3 The entity shall disclose the climate change scenarios used to determine the risks and opportunities presented by climate change, where scenarios may include the New Policies Scenario, Sustainable Development Scenario, and Current Policies Scenario, as established by the International Energy Agency in its annual World Energy Outlook.
- 2 The entity shall describe how it assesses and monitors climate change impacts and related strategies to alleviate or adapt to any risks or use any opportunities, where:
- 2.1 Alleviation strategies may include: site selection and the incorporation of climate or weather models into such analysis; site selection as it pertains to water scarcity; the strategy and timing of lot acquisitions, permitting, construction and sales; the use of sales and purchase agreement clauses addressing risks to the entity; and insurance.
 - 2.2 Adaptation strategies may include: lot design; home design for physical resiliency; contingency plans; and maximising energy and water efficiency of homes.
- 3 The entity shall discuss its strategies related to the use of physical measures to manage climate change risk (for example, floodplain avoidance or home design for physical resiliency) or financial mechanisms to manage these risks (for example, the use of insurance or option contracts on lots).

Volume 36—Real Estate

Industry Description

Real Estate industry entities own, develop and operate income-producing real estate assets. Entities in this industry commonly are structured as real estate investment trusts (REITs) and operate in a wide range of real estate industry segments, including residential, retail, office, health care, industrial and hotel properties. REITs typically participate in direct real estate asset ownership, thereby providing investors with the opportunity to obtain real estate exposure without direct asset ownership and management. Although REITs often concentrate on individual Real Estate industry segments, many REITs diversify investments across multiple property types.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	Energy consumption data coverage as a percentage of total floor area, by property sector	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by floor area	IF-RE-130a.1
	(1) Total energy consumed by portfolio area with data coverage, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable, by property sector	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	IF-RE-130a.2
	Like-for-like percentage change in energy consumption for the portfolio area with data coverage, by property sector	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	IF-RE-130a.3
	Percentage of eligible portfolio that (1) has an energy rating and (2) is certified to ENERGY STAR, by property sector	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by floor area	IF-RE-130a.4
	Description of how building energy management considerations are integrated into property investment analysis and operational strategy	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-RE-130a.5
Water Management	Water withdrawal data coverage as a percentage of (1) total floor area and (2) floor area in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress, by property sector	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by floor area	IF-RE-140a.1
	(1) Total water withdrawn by portfolio area with data	Quantitative	Thousand cubic	IF-RE-140a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	coverage and (2) percentage in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress, by property sector		metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	
	Like-for-like percentage change in water withdrawn for portfolio area with data coverage, by property sector	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	IF-RE-140a.3
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-RE-140a.4
	(1) Percentage of new leases that contain a cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements and (2) associated leased floor area, by property sector	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by floor area, Square metres (m ²)	IF-RE-410a.1
Management of Tenant Sustainability Impacts	Percentage of tenants that are separately metered or submetered for (1) grid electricity consumption and (2) water withdrawals, by property sector	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by floor area	IF-RE-410a.2
	Discussion of approach to measuring, incentivising and improving sustainability impacts of tenants	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-RE-410a.3
Climate Change Adaptation	Area of properties located in 100-year flood zones, by property sector	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	IF-RE-450a.1
	Description of climate change risk exposure analysis, degree	Discussion and	n/a	IF-RE-450a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	of systematic portfolio exposure, and strategies for mitigating risks	Analysis		

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of assets, by property sector ⁴⁹	Quantitative	Number	IF-RE-000.A
Leasable floor area, by property sector ⁵⁰	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	IF-RE-000.B
Percentage of indirectly managed assets, by property sector ⁵¹	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by floor area	IF-RE-000.C
Average occupancy rate, by property sector ⁵²	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	IF-RE-000.D

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Real estate assets consume significant amounts of energy for space heating, ventilating, air conditioning, water heating, lighting and using equipment and appliances. The type and magnitude of energy used and strategies for energy management are dependent upon the real estate asset class, among other factors. Generally, grid electricity is the predominant form of consumed energy, though on-site fuel combustion and renewable energy production also serve important roles. Energy costs may be borne by entities or property occupants; either way, energy management is a significant industry issue. To the extent that the real estate owner assumes direct responsibility for energy costs, such costs often represent significant operating costs, indicating the importance of energy management. Energy pricing volatility and a general trend of electricity price increases, energy-related regulations, potentially wide variations in energy performance in existing building stock, and opportunities for efficiency improvements through economically attractive capital investments all show the importance of energy management. Energy costs assumed by occupants, either in whole or in part, are nonetheless likely to affect entities through various channels. Building energy performance is a notable driver of tenant demand, because it allows them to control operating costs, mitigate potential environmental impacts, and, often just as importantly, maintain a reputation for resource conservation. Additionally, real estate owners may be exposed to energy-related regulations

even if energy costs are the occupants' responsibility. Overall, entities that effectively manage asset energy performance may realise reduced operating costs and regulatory risks, as well as increased tenant demand, rental rates and occupancy rates—all of which drive revenue and asset value appreciation. Improving energy performance is dependent upon property type and location, target tenant market, local building codes, physical and legal opportunities to deploy distributed renewable energy, the ability to measure consumption, and existing building stock, among other factors.

Metrics

IF-RE-130a.1. Energy consumption data coverage as a percentage of total floor area, by property sector

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its portfolio, based on total gross floor area, with complete energy consumption data coverage.
 - 1.1 Gross floor area is defined as the total property area in square metres, measured between the principal exterior surfaces of the enclosing fixed walls of the building(s).
 - 1.1.1 Leasable floor area may be used in place of gross floor area if gross floor area is not available for the relevant area of the portfolio (for example, a building with an unknown gross floor but a known leasable floor area).
 - 1.1.2 Number of units may be used in place of floor area in the Apartments and Lodging/Resorts property sectors.
 - 1.2 Floor area is considered to have complete energy consumption data coverage when the entity obtains energy consumption data (for example, energy types and amounts consumed) for all types of energy consumed in the relevant floor area during the reporting period, regardless of when such data was obtained.
 - 1.2.1 If such data is unavailable for one or more types of energy consumed, the relevant floor area shall be considered to have incomplete energy consumption data coverage.
 - 1.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the portfolio gross floor area with complete energy consumption data coverage divided by the total portfolio gross floor area for which energy is used.
 - 1.4 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from sources external to the entity and its tenants, and energy produced by the entity or its tenants (self-generated). For example, direct fuel use, purchased electricity and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
- 2 The entity shall disclose energy consumption data coverage separately for each property type in its portfolio, where properties are classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification system.

- 3 The entity may discuss the data coverage comprehensiveness if there are coverage variations by energy type. For example, if a portion of floor area consumes electricity and natural gas and the entity has energy consumption data coverage for electricity but not natural gas, the entity has incomplete energy consumption data coverage. However, the entity may disclose the portion of total portfolio gross floor area that has partial energy consumption data coverage.
- 4 The entity may describe energy consumption data coverage variations, including the factors that influence them.
 - 4.1 Variations in energy consumption data coverage may occur based on distinctions which may include:
 - 4.1.1 Base Building, Tenant Space and Whole Building
 - 4.1.2 Energy Purchased by the Landlord and energy Purchased by Tenants
 - 4.1.3 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets
 - 4.1.4 Geographical markets
 - 4.2 Relevant factors that influence energy consumption data coverage may include:
 - 4.2.1 Geographical markets and the applicable enabling or inhibiting laws, regulations and policies within such markets, including utilities policies
 - 4.2.2 Administrative or logistical barriers to obtaining energy consumption data (for example, lack of integration of utilities' data reporting systems)
 - 4.2.3 Tenant demands around privacy or the proprietary nature of energy consumption data
 - 4.2.4 Property sectors or other more nuanced classifications of property types
 - 4.2.5 Lease structures, including the length of leases, access to energy consumption data by the entity, and the entity's ability to influence energy management performance of Tenant Spaces
 - 4.2.6 The entity's belief that obtaining Tenant Space energy consumption data may negatively impact tenant demand
- 5 The following terms are defined according to the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide:
 - 5.1 Base Building is defined as the energy consumed in supplying central building services to lettable/leasable areas and common areas.
 - 5.2 Tenant Space is defined as the lettable floor area (both vacant and let/leased areas) that is, or can be, occupied by tenants.
 - 5.3 Whole Building is defined as the energy used by tenants and Base Building services to lettable/leasable and common spaces. This should include all

energy supplied to the building for the operation of the building and the tenant space.

- 5.4 Purchased by Landlord is defined as the energy purchased by the landlord but consumed by the tenant. This can include energy purchased by the landlord but used for vacant space.
- 5.5 Purchased by Tenant is defined as the energy purchased by the tenant. Typically, this is data outside the entity's immediate control.
- 5.6 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets are defined as follows: 'This definition of Managed assets and the definition of Indirectly Managed assets are solely based on the landlord/tenant relationship. [Managed and Indirectly Managed Assets are] assets or buildings for which the landlord is determined to have 'operational control', where operational control is defined as having the ability to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures. In case both the landlord and tenant have the authority to introduce and implement any or all the policies mentioned above, the asset or building should be reported as a Managed asset. Where a single tenant has the sole authority to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures, the tenant should be assumed to have operational control, so it should be considered to be an Indirectly Managed asset.'

- 6 The entity shall consider the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

IF-RE-130a.2. (1) Total energy consumed by portfolio area with data coverage, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable, by property sector

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) total energy consumption by the portfolio area for which energy consumption data coverage is available as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ) or their multiples, where:
 - 1.1 The scope of disclosure includes all property area in the entity's portfolio for which energy consumption data coverage is available, regardless of whether the Tenant Space or Base Building consumes the energy (including outdoor, exterior and parking areas) and which party pays for energy expenses.
 - 1.2 The scope of disclosure excludes the portion of energy consumed by the portfolio area for which energy consumption data is unavailable.
 - 1.2.1 If energy consumption data is unavailable for Tenant Space or Whole Building for a property but is available for the Base Building, then the entity shall disclose this energy consumption data.
 - 1.3 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from sources external to the entity and its tenants, and energy produced by the entity or its tenants (self-generated). For example, direct fuel use, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.

- 1.4 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are directly measured or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumed divided by total energy consumed.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier program, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs must be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement must explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
 - 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to: materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification, or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e

regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data, including electricity from solar or wind energy).
- 5 Energy consumption data shall be disclosed by (a) Base Building and (b) Tenant Space, or (c) Whole Building, or a combination of these.
- 6 The entity shall disclose (1) total energy consumption, (2) percentage grid electricity, and (3) percentage renewable energy, separately for each property type in its portfolio where properties are classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification system.
- 7 The entity may describe the variations in energy consumption.
 - 7.1 Variations in energy consumption data coverage may occur based on distinctions which may include:
 - 7.1.1 Base Building, Tenant Space and Whole Building
 - 7.1.2 Energy Purchased by the Landlord and energy Purchased by Tenants
 - 7.1.3 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets
 - 7.1.4 Geographical markets
- 8 The following terms are defined according to the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide:
 - 8.1 Base Building is defined as the energy consumed in supplying central building services to lettable/leasable areas and common areas.
 - 8.2 Tenant Space is defined as the lettable floor area (both vacant and let/leased areas) that is, or can be, occupied by tenants.
 - 8.3 Whole Building is defined as the energy used by tenants and Base Building services to lettable/leasable and common spaces. This should include all energy supplied to the building for the operation of the building and the tenant space.
 - 8.4 Purchased by Landlord is defined as the energy purchased by the landlord but consumed by the tenant. This can include energy purchased by the landlord but used for vacant space.
 - 8.5 Purchased by Tenant is defined as the energy purchased by the tenant. Typically, this is data outside the entity's immediate control.
 - 8.6 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets are defined as follows: 'This definition of Managed assets and the definition of Indirectly Managed assets are solely based on the landlord/tenant relationship. [Managed and Indirectly

Managed Assets are] assets or buildings for which the landlord is determined to have 'operational control', where operational control is defined as having the ability to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures. In case both the landlord and tenant have the authority to introduce and implement any or all the policies mentioned above, the asset or building should be reported as a Managed asset. Where a single tenant has the sole authority to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures, the tenant should be assumed to have operational control, so it should be considered to be an Indirectly Managed asset.'

- 9 The entity shall consider the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

IF-RE-130a.3. Like-for-like percentage change in energy consumption for the portfolio area with data coverage, by property sector

- 1 The entity shall disclose the like-for-like percentage change in energy consumption for the portfolio area with data coverage.
 - 1.1 The percentage shall be calculated as energy consumed in the reporting period divided by the energy consumed in the immediately prior reporting period minus one.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption included in the calculation shall be aligned with the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide ('Like-for-like Comparison') as including all energy consumed by properties in the entity's portfolio for both the full reporting period and the immediately prior full reporting period.
 - 1.2.1 Energy consumed by properties acquired, sold, under development or have undergone a major renovation during the reporting period or the immediately prior reporting period shall be excluded.
 - 1.2.2 No correction for changes in the occupancy rate is needed and properties with a high variation in vacancy rates shall be included.
 - 1.2.3 If energy consumption data coverage is unavailable for either (or both) the reporting period or the immediately prior reporting period, the energy consumed by that relevant portfolio floor area is excluded from the numerator and the denominator in the calculation.
- 2 The scope, methodology and calculations of energy consumption shall be consistent with IF-RE-130a.2.
- 3 Like-for-like change in energy consumption shall be disclosed by (a) Base Building and (b) Tenant Space, or (c) Whole Building, or a combination of these.
 - 3.1 If like-for-like change in energy consumption data is not available for Tenant Space or Whole Building for a property but is available for the Base Building,

then the entity shall disclose this like-for-like change in energy consumption data.

- 4 The entity shall disclose like-for-like change in energy consumption separately for each property type in its portfolio where properties are classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification system.
- 5 The entity may disclose the floor area, in square metres, included in the scope of like-for-like percentage change in energy consumption if the scope significantly diverges from the floor area of energy consumption data coverage.
- 6 Like-for-like data collection, analysis and disclosure may be consistent with the approach with which the entity discloses its financial reporting data.
 - 6.1 If the entity discloses its financial reporting data using a concept and methodology similar to 'Like-for-like Comparison', the entity shall describe divergences between the scope of assets or floor area used in financial reporting and like-for-like change in energy consumption. For example, if additional assets are excluded from the like-for-like change in energy consumption relative to like-for-like financial reporting because of data coverage limitations, such inconsistencies shall be described.
- 7 The entity may additionally present like-for-like percentage change in energy consumption on a normalised basis.
 - 7.1 Normalisation factors and methodologies may include the following, which are presented in the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide:
 - 7.1.1 Air conditioning or natural ventilation
 - 7.1.2 Building age
 - 7.1.3 Degree days
 - 7.1.4 Footfall
 - 7.1.5 Occupancy rate
 - 7.1.6 Operational hours
 - 7.1.7 Weather conditions
 - 7.1.8 Other
 - 7.2 If the entity chooses to additionally disclose normalised like-for-like percentage change in energy consumption, the entity shall provide a brief description of the normalisation factor and methodology or its use of a third-party methodology.
- 8 The entity may describe the variations in like-for-like percentage change in energy consumption.
 - 8.1 Variations in energy consumption may occur based on distinctions which may include:

- 8.1.1 Base Building, Tenant Space and Whole Building
- 8.1.2 Energy Purchased by the Landlord and energy Purchased by Tenant
- 8.1.3 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets
- 8.1.4 Geographical markets

9 The following terms are defined according to the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide:

- 9.1 Base Building is defined as the energy consumed in supplying central building services to lettable/leasable areas and common areas.
- 9.2 Tenant Space is defined as the lettable floor area (both vacant and let/leased areas) that is, or can be, occupied by tenants.
- 9.3 Whole Building is defined as the energy used by tenants and base building services to lettable/leasable and common spaces. This should include all energy supplied to the building for the operation of the building and the tenant space.
- 9.4 Purchased by Landlord is defined as the energy purchased by the landlord but consumed by the tenant. This may include energy purchased by the landlord but used for vacant space.
- 9.5 Purchased by Tenant is defined as the energy purchased by the tenant. Typically, this is data outside the entity's immediate control.
- 9.6 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets are defined as follows: 'This definition of Managed assets and the definition of Indirectly Managed assets are solely based on the landlord/tenant relationship. [Managed and Indirectly Managed Assets are] assets or buildings for which the landlord is determined to have 'operational control' where operational control is defined as having the ability to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures. In case both the landlord and tenant have the authority to introduce and implement any or all the policies mentioned above, the asset or building should be reported as a Managed asset. Where a single tenant has the sole authority to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures, the tenant should be assumed to have operational control, so it should be considered to be an Indirectly Managed asset.'

10 The entity shall consider the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

IF-RE-130a.4. Percentage of eligible portfolio that (1) has an energy rating and (2) is certified to ENERGY STAR, by property sector

1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of the portfolio that has a valid or current energy rating, by gross floor area, where:

- 1.1 Gross floor area is defined as the total property square footage, measured between the principal exterior surfaces of the enclosing fixed walls of the building(s).
- 1.2 An energy rating is defined according to the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a scheme that measures the energy performance of buildings, including schemes solely concerned with measuring energy efficiency performance as well as cases in which an energy rating is an element of a broader scheme measuring environmental performance.
- 1.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the portfolio gross floor area that has an energy rating divided by the total portfolio gross floor area.
 - 1.3.1 The entity may exclude from the denominator the portfolio gross floor area that is ineligible to receive an energy rating based on the property sector, location (for example, located in a region in which energy ratings are unavailable), or other specific use characteristics that cause the property to be ineligible.
- 1.4 The scope of energy rating schemes includes:
 - 1.4.1 ENERGY STAR® for operations in the U.S. and Canada
 - 1.4.2 EU Energy Performance Certificates (EPC) for operations in the European Union
 - 1.4.3 National Australian Built Environment Rating System (NABERS) Energy for operations in Australia
 - 1.4.4 NABERSNZ for operations in New Zealand
 - 1.4.5 Other energy rating schemes that can be demonstrated to have substantially equivalent criteria, methodology and presentation of results as those schemes stated above
- 1.5 The scope of energy rating schemes is aligned with the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide in that it 'only include[s] energy ratings that were awarded before or during the reporting period (pre-assessments or other unofficial rating schemes are not valid). Some energy ratings are valid for a limited period only—the rating should be officially in effect during the reporting period.'

2 The entity may additionally disclose the percentage(s) by energy rating scheme.

3 The entity shall (2) disclose the percentage of its portfolio certified to ENERGY STAR®.

- 3.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the portfolio gross floor area certified to ENERGY STAR® in the US divided by the total portfolio gross floor area in the US.
 - 3.1.1 For a property to qualify as certified to ENERGY STAR®, the certification must be officially in effect during the reporting period (as

aligned with the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide).

3.1.2 The entity may exclude from the denominator the portfolio gross floor area that is ineligible to be certified to ENERGY STAR® based on the property sector or other specific use characteristics that cause the property to be ineligible.

3.2 If property is located in Canada, the entity may separately disclose the percentage of the portfolio in Canada that is certified to ENERGY STAR®.

3.2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the portfolio gross floor area that is certified to ENERGY STAR® in Canada divided by the total portfolio gross floor area in Canada.

4 The entity shall disclose (1) the percentage of its portfolio that has an energy rating, and (2) the percentage of its portfolio that is certified to ENERGY STAR®, separately for each property type in its portfolio where properties are classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification.

5 The entity shall consider the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

IF-RE-130a.5. Description of how building energy management considerations are integrated into property investment analysis and operational strategy

1 The entity shall describe its strategic approach and the operational processes used to integrate energy-related considerations into the analysis of current and future property investments.

2 The entity shall describe the following elements of its strategic approach, where relevant:

2.1 The use of energy-reduction targets and performance against those targets

2.2 The integration of property energy performance into the property acquisition due diligence process—for example, if these measures are qualitative (for example, whether the building has an energy rating) or quantitative (for example, the entity adjusts occupancy rate projections based on energy performance data)

2.3 Entity-level energy consumption and management policies, applicable across the entity's portfolio (aligned with 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Q8)

3 The entity shall discuss the operational processes used, which may include:

3.1 Management of the technical energy performance of its portfolio

3.2 The integration of renewable energy into its portfolio.

4 Relevant elements of its technical approach may include:

- 4.1 Use of technical building assessments to identify energy efficiency opportunities—including whether such assessments are in-house or external and the general portfolio coverage of such assessments during the last four years (aligned with 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Q16)
- 4.2 Measures implemented to improve the energy efficiency of the portfolio—including specific measures taken, general portfolio coverage of such measures and estimated energy savings (aligned with 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Q17)
- 4.3 Approach to retrocommissioning—including applicability to the entity's portfolio, the comprehensiveness of retrocommissioning conducted, general portfolio coverage and estimated energy savings
- 4.4 Use of environmental management systems to measure, manage and improve the energy performance of buildings and such systems' alignment with third-party standards or verification (aligned with 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Q21, 'Environmental Management Systems')
- 4.5 Use of data management systems to monitor, analyse and benchmark energy performance of individual buildings, and such systems' alignment with third-party standards or verification (aligned with 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Q22, 'Data Management Systems')
- 5 The entity shall discuss its strategies relating to energy ratings, benchmarking and certifications, including:
 - 5.1 Impact on tenant demand within the entity's target market(s)
 - 5.2 Relevance to the property types in its portfolio, such as the sector(s), locations and construction (new versus existing stock)
 - 5.3 Costs and benefits associated with obtaining and maintaining an energy rating, benchmark and certification
 - 5.4 If applicable, whether the entity prefers certifications based on ongoing performance or performance-modelled design objectives
- 6 The entity shall describe its approach to renewable energy generation, which may include:
 - 6.1 The relevance of on-site and off-site renewable energy generation to the portfolio and energy management strategy
 - 6.2 Technical or legal limitations on the ability to incorporate renewable energy into its portfolio and energy management strategy
 - 6.3 The energy generated from on-site and off-site renewable energy (aligned with 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Q25.3)

- 7 If the entity participates in new construction or major renovations, it shall discuss whether and how it incorporates energy efficiency strategies into design and development.
- 8 The entity shall consider the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

Water Management

Topic Summary

Buildings consume significant amounts of water in their operations, through water fixtures, building equipment, appliances and irrigation. Water consumption operating costs may be significant depending on property type, tenant operations, geographical locations and other factors. Entities can be responsible for a building's water costs, or common area water costs, though entities commonly allocate all, or a portion, of these costs to occupants. In these arrangements, water management through tenant demand and regulatory exposure continues to be important. Tenants may assess real estate asset water efficiency to control operating costs, mitigate environmental impacts of operations, and, often just as importantly, develop a reputation for resource conservation. Additionally, real estate owners may comply with water-related regulations even if water costs are the occupants' responsibility. Overall, entities that effectively manage asset water efficiency, even if they bear no direct water costs, may realise reduced operating costs and regulatory exposure, as well as increased tenant demand, rental rates and occupancy rates—all of which drive revenue and asset value appreciation. Long-term historic water expense increases and expectations of continued increases because of overconsumption and constrained supplies resulting from population growth and shifts, pollution and climate change show the importance of water management. Improving asset water efficiency is dependent upon the property type, water availability, target tenant market, local building codes, the ability to measure consumption and the existing building stock, among other factors.

Metrics

IF-RE-140a.1. Water withdrawal data coverage as a percentage of (1) total floor area and (2) floor area in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress, by property sector

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the percentage of its portfolio, based on total gross floor area, with complete water withdrawal data coverage.
 - 1.1 Gross floor area is defined as the total property area in square metres, measured between the principal exterior surfaces of the enclosing fixed walls of the building(s).¹
 - 1.1.1 Leasable floor area may be used in place of gross floor area if gross floor area is unavailable for the relevant area of the portfolio (for example, a building with an unknown gross floor but a known leasable floor area).
 - 1.1.2 Number of units may be used in place of floor area in the Apartments and Lodging/Resorts property sectors.

- 1.2 Floor area is considered to have complete water withdrawal data coverage when the entity obtains water withdrawal data (amounts withdrawn) for the relevant floor area during the reporting period, regardless of when such data was obtained.
- 1.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the portfolio gross floor area with complete water withdrawal data coverage divided by the total portfolio gross floor area for which water is used.
- 1.4 The scope of water withdrawals is aligned with the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide, and it includes water that was withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.4.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities, or other entities.
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of its portfolio, based on gross floor area, located in regions classified as High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress with complete water withdrawal data coverage.
 - 2.1 High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress shall be determined by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
 - 2.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the portfolio gross floor area located in regions classified as High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress and that have complete water withdrawal data coverage, divided by the total portfolio gross floor area for which water is used in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (1) water withdrawal data coverage and (2) the percentage of water withdrawal data coverage in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress, separately for each property type in its portfolio if properties are classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification.
- 4 The entity may describe the variations in water withdrawal data coverage, including the factors that influence it.
 - 4.1 Variations in water withdrawal data coverage may occur based on distinctions, which may include:
 - 4.1.1 Base Building, Tenant Space and Whole Building
 - 4.1.2 Water Purchased by the Landlord and water Purchased by Tenants
 - 4.1.3 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets
 - 4.1.4 Geographical markets

- 4.2 Relevant factors that influence water withdrawal data coverage may include:
 - 4.2.1 Geographical markets and the applicable enabling or inhibiting laws, regulations and policies within such markets, including those policies of utilities
 - 4.2.2 Geographical markets and the applicability of risks related to water scarcity (and related current or future regulations)
 - 4.2.3 Administrative or logistical barriers to obtaining water withdrawal data (for example, lack of integration of utilities' data reporting systems)
 - 4.2.4 Tenant demands around the privacy or proprietary nature of water withdrawal data
 - 4.2.5 Property sectors or other more nuanced classifications of property types
 - 4.2.6 Lease structures, including the length of leases, access to water withdrawal data by the entity, and the entity's ability to influence water management performance of Tenant Spaces
 - 4.2.7 The entity's belief that obtaining Tenant Space water withdrawal data may impact tenant demand negatively

5 The following terms are defined according to the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide:

- 5.1 Base Building is defined as water consumed in supplying central building services to lettable/leasable areas and common areas.
- 5.2 Tenant Space is defined as the lettable floor area (both vacant and let/leased areas) that is or can be occupied by tenants.
- 5.3 Whole Building is defined as water used by tenants and base building services to lettable/leasable and common spaces. This should include all water supplied to the building for the operation of the building and the tenant space.
- 5.4 Purchased by Landlord is defined as water purchased by the landlord but consumed by the tenant. This may include water purchased by the landlord but used for vacant space.
- 5.5 Purchased by Tenant is defined as water purchased by the tenant. Typically, this is data outside the entity's immediate control.
- 5.6 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets are defined as follows: 'This definition of Managed assets and the definition of Indirectly Managed assets are solely based on the landlord/tenant relationship. [Managed and Indirectly Managed Assets are] assets or buildings for which the landlord is determined to have 'operational control' where operational control is defined as having the ability to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures. In case both the landlord and tenant have the authority to introduce and implement any or all the policies mentioned above, the asset or building

should be reported as a Managed asset. Where a single tenant has the sole authority to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures, the tenant should be assumed to have operational control, so it should be considered to be an Indirectly Managed asset.'

- 6 The entity shall consider the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

IF-RE-140a.2. (1) Total water withdrawn by portfolio area with data coverage and (2) percentage in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress, by property sector

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn by the portfolio area for which water withdrawal data coverage is available.
 - 1.1 The scope of disclosure includes all property area in the entity's portfolio for which water withdrawal data coverage is available, regardless of whether water is consumed by the Tenant Space or Base Building (including outdoor, exterior and parking areas) or which party pays for water expenses.
 - 1.2 The scope of disclosure excludes the portion of water consumed by the portfolio area for which water withdrawal data is unavailable.
 - 1.2.1 If water withdrawal data is unavailable for Tenant Space or Whole Building for a property but is available for the Base Building, then the entity shall disclose this water withdrawal data.
 - 1.3 The scope of water withdrawals is aligned with the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide and includes water withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.3.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of water withdrawn in regions with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (> 80%) Baseline Water Stress.
 - 2.1 High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress shall be determined by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
 - 2.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of water withdrawn (by volume) in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress divided by the total amount of water withdrawn (by volume).
- 3 Water withdrawal data shall be disclosed by (a) Base Building and (b) Tenant Space, or (c) Whole Building, or a combination of these.
- 4 The entity shall disclose (1) total water withdrawn and (2) percentage in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress, separately for each property type in its

portfolio where properties are classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification.

5 The entity may describe the variations in water withdrawn.

5.1 Variations in water withdrawn may occur based on distinctions which may include:

5.1.1 Base Building, Tenant Space and Whole Building

5.1.2 Water Purchased by the Landlord and water Purchased by Tenant

5.1.3 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets

5.1.4 Geographical markets

6 The following terms are defined according to the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide:

6.1 Base Building is defined as water consumed in supplying central building services to lettable/leasable areas and common areas.

6.2 Tenant Space is defined as the lettable floor area (both vacant and let/leased areas) that is or can be occupied by tenants.

6.3 Whole Building is defined as water used by tenants and base building services to lettable/leasable and common spaces. This should include all water supplied to the building for the operation of the building and the tenant space.

6.4 Purchased by Landlord is defined as water purchased by the landlord but consumed by the tenant. This may include water purchased by the landlord but used for vacant space.

6.5 Purchased by Tenant is defined as water purchased by the tenant. Typically, this is data outside the entity's immediate control.

6.6 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets are defined as follows: 'This definition of Managed assets and the definition of Indirectly Managed assets are solely based on the landlord/tenant relationship. [Managed and Indirectly Managed Assets are] assets or buildings for which the landlord is determined to have 'operational control' where operational control is defined as having the ability to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures. In case both the landlord and tenant have the authority to introduce and implement any or all the policies mentioned above, the asset or building should be reported as a Managed asset. Where a single tenant has the sole authority to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures, the tenant should be assumed to have operational control, so it should be considered to be an Indirectly Managed asset.'

7 The entity shall consider the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

IF-RE-140a.3. Like-for-like percentage change in water withdrawn for portfolio area with data coverage, by property sector

- 1 The entity shall disclose the like-for-like percentage change in water withdrawn for the portfolio area with data coverage.
 - 1.1 The percentage shall be calculated as water withdrawn (by volume) in the reporting period divided by the water withdrawn (by volume) in the immediately prior reporting period minus one.
 - 1.2 The scope of water withdrawn included in the calculation shall be aligned with the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide ('Like-for-like Comparison') as including all water withdrawn by properties in the entity's portfolio for both the full reporting period and the immediately prior full reporting period.
 - 1.2.1 Water withdrawn by properties acquired, sold, under development, or that have undergone a major renovation during the reporting period or the immediately prior reporting period shall be excluded.
 - 1.2.2 No correction for changes in the occupancy rate is needed and properties with a high variation in vacancy rates shall be included.
 - 1.2.3 If water withdrawal data coverage is unavailable for either (or both) the reporting period or the immediately prior reporting period, the water withdrawn by that relevant portfolio floor area is excluded from the numerator and the denominator in the calculation.
- 2 The scope, methodology and calculations of water withdrawn shall be consistent with IF-RE-140a.2.
- 3 Like-for-like change in water withdrawn shall be disclosed by (a) Base Building and (b) Tenant Space, or (c) Whole Building, or a combination of these.
 - 3.1 If like-for-like change in water withdrawal data is not available for Tenant Space or Whole Building for a property but is available for the Base Building, then the entity shall disclose this like-for-like water withdrawal data.
- 4 The entity shall disclose like-for-like percentage change in water withdrawn separately for each property type in its portfolio where properties are classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification.
- 5 The entity may disclose the floor area, in square metres, included in the scope of like-for-like percentage change in water withdrawn if the scope significantly diverges from the floor area of water withdrawal data coverage.
- 6 Like-for-like data collection, analysis and disclosure may be consistent with the approach with which the entity discloses its financial reporting data.
 - 6.1 If the entity discloses its financial reporting data using a concept and methodology similar to 'Like-for-like Comparison', the entity shall describe divergences between the scope of assets or floor area used in financial

reporting and like-for-like change in water withdrawn. For example, if additional assets are excluded from the like-for-like change in water withdrawn relative to like-for-like financial reporting because of data coverage limitations, such inconsistencies shall be described.

- 7 The entity may additionally present like-for-like percentage change in water withdrawn on a normalised basis.
 - 7.1 Normalisation factors and methodologies may include the following which are presented in the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide:
 - 7.1.1 Air conditioning or natural ventilation
 - 7.1.2 Building age
 - 7.1.3 Degree days
 - 7.1.4 Footfall
 - 7.1.5 Occupancy rate
 - 7.1.6 Operational hours
 - 7.1.7 Weather conditions
 - 7.1.8 Other
 - 7.2 If the entity chooses to additionally disclose normalised like-for-like percentage change in water withdrawn, the entity shall provide a brief description of the normalisation factor and methodology or its use of a third-party methodology.
- 8 The entity may describe the variations in like-for-like percentage change in water withdrawn.
 - 8.1 Variations in water withdrawn may occur based on distinctions which may include:
 - 8.1.1 Base Building, Tenant Space and Whole Building
 - 8.1.2 Water Purchased by the Landlord and water Purchased by Tenant
 - 8.1.3 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets
 - 8.1.4 Geographical markets
- 9 The following terms are defined according to the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide:
 - 9.1 Base Building is defined as water consumed in supplying central building services to lettable/leasable areas and common areas.
 - 9.2 Tenant Space is defined as the lettable floor area (both vacant and let/leased areas).

- 9.3 Whole Building is defined as water used by tenants and base building services to lettable/leasable and common spaces. This should include all water supplied to the building for the operation of the building and the tenant space.
- 9.4 Purchased by Landlord is defined as water purchased by the landlord but consumed by the tenant. This may include water purchased by the landlord but used for vacant space.
- 9.5 Purchased by Tenant is defined as water purchased by the tenant. Typically, this is data outside the entity's immediate control.
- 9.6 Managed Assets and Indirectly Managed Assets are defined as follows: 'This definition of Managed assets and the definition of Indirectly Managed assets are solely based on the landlord/tenant relationship. [Managed and Indirectly Managed Assets are] assets or buildings for which the landlord is determined to have 'operational control' where operational control is defined as having the ability to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures. In case both the landlord and tenant have the authority to introduce and implement any or all the policies mentioned above, the asset or building should be reported as a Managed asset. Where a single tenant has the sole authority to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures, the tenant should be assumed to have operational control, so it should be considered to be an Indirectly Managed asset.'

- 10 The entity shall consider the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

IF-RE-140a.4. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits

- 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
 - 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
 - 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.
- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.
- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:
 - 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
 - 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
 - 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
 - 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.

- 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
- 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations
- 5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

- 6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

Management of Tenant Sustainability Impacts

Topic Summary

Real estate assets generate significant sustainability impacts, including resource consumption (energy and water), waste generation and impacts on occupant health through indoor environmental quality. While entities own real estate assets, the tenant operations of such assets dominate the sustainability impacts produced by the built environment. Tenants may design and construct leased spaces according to their operating needs. In turn, their operations consume significant amounts of energy and water, generate waste, and impact the health of those living, working, shopping, or visiting the properties. While these sustainability impacts often are often generated by tenant operations and activities, real estate owners play an important role in influencing tenant sustainability impacts. The way entities in the industry structure their agreements, contracts and relationships with tenants may be instrumental in managing the sustainability impacts of their tenants effectively, and ultimately, the impacts of their assets. Managing tenant sustainability impacts may include mitigating the problem of split incentives by aligning both parties' financial interests with sustainability outcomes, establishing systematic measurement and communication of resource consumption data, creating shared performance goals, and mandating minimum sustainability performance or design requirements, among other strategies. Effective management of tenant sustainability impacts,

particularly related to energy, water and indoor environmental quality, may drive asset value appreciation, increase tenant demand and satisfaction, decrease direct operating costs, or decrease risks related to building codes and regulations.

Metrics

IF-RE-410a.1. (1) Percentage of new leases that contain a cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements and (2) associated leased floor area, by property sector

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the percentage of new leases that contain a cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements.
 - 1.1 A cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements is defined as a clause in a lease agreement that allows the entity to invest in energy or water efficiency capital improvements to properties, while recovering all or a proportion of associated expenditures from tenants, regardless of the mechanism of cost recovery. This definition is generally aligned with:
 - 1.1.1 The Green Lease Leaders application: 'Tenant cost recovery clause that can be used for energy efficiency-related capital improvements. This typically means that the list of operating expenses is expanded to include capital expenses intended to save energy, with the annual pass-through amount most often determined either by an amortisation schedule or projected savings.'
 - 1.1.2 The 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide: 'Cost recovery clause for energy efficiency-related capital improvements: Allows the landlord to implement energy-efficiency measures during the lease and to recover a proportion or all of those costs from the tenant.'
 - 1.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the portfolio newly leased floor area associated with leases that contain a cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements divided by total portfolio newly leased floor area.
 - 1.2.1 Number of units may be used in place of floor area in the Apartments and Lodging/Resorts property sectors.
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the leased floor area, in square metres, associated with new leases that contain a cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements.
- 3 The scope of disclosure includes all the properties in the entity's portfolio that were newly leased during any part of the reporting period, and for which the entity and a tenant executed an associated lease.
 - 3.1 If the entity executed lease amendments or letter agreements during the reporting period that contain a cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements, the associated leased floor area shall be included within the scope of disclosure.

- 4 The entity shall disclose (1) the percentage of new leases that contain a cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements, and (2) the associated leased floor area, separately for each property type in its portfolio where properties are classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification.
- 5 The entity may describe whether its standard lease contracts include a cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements (aligned with 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Q39).
- 6 The entity may additionally disclose the percentage of all leases (as opposed to new leases only) in effect as of the last day of the reporting period that contain a cost recovery clause for resource efficiency-related capital improvements, calculated in a manner consistent with the above calculation.
- 7 The entity may provide a brief description of instances when it exercised cost recovery clauses for resource efficiency-related capital improvements, including the extent throughout the portfolio and the financial implications.
- 8 The entity additionally may disclose the amount of actual capital expenditures associated with resource efficiency-related capital improvements recovered from tenants during the reporting period using cost recovery clauses in leases.
- 9 The entity shall consider the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a normative reference, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

IF-RE-410a.2. Percentage of tenants that are separately metered or submetered for (1) grid electricity consumption and (2) water withdrawals, by property sector

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of tenants separately metered or submetered for (1) the grid electricity use resulting from their exclusive electricity consumption.
 - 1.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the leasable floor area leased to tenants that are separately metered or submetered for the electricity consumption resulting from their exclusive consumption divided by the total portfolio leasable floor area.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of tenants separately metered or submetered for (2) the water usage resulting from their exclusive water withdrawals.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the leasable floor area leased to tenants that are separately metered or submetered for the water use resulting from their exclusive withdrawals divided by the total portfolio leasable floor area.
- 3 Number of units may be used in place of floor area in the Apartments and Lodging/Resorts property sectors.
- 4 The entity shall disclose the percentage of tenants that are separately metered or submetered for their exclusive (1) grid electricity consumption, and (2) water withdrawals, separately for each property type in its portfolio where properties are

classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification.

IF-RE-410a.3. Discussion of approach to measuring, incentivising and improving sustainability impacts of tenants

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategy and process for integrating considerations of sustainability into its leases and tenant relationships (for example, tenant communication, voluntary initiatives and selection of a third-party property manager, if applicable) to measure, incentivise and improve impacts.
- 2 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of sustainability topics includes energy management, water management and the impacts of properties on tenant health, including indoor environmental quality.
- 3 Relevant strategies to discuss may include:
 - 3.1 The following components, which are generally aligned with the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Q39.1:
 - 3.1.1 Whether the entity has agreements with tenants to mutually share energy consumption or water withdrawal data
 - 3.1.2 Whether the entity has shared energy consumption and water withdrawal targets
 - 3.1.3 Whether the entity establishes requirements that any tenant works should meet standards provided by the entity related to energy consumption, water efficiency and indoor environmental quality
 - 3.1.4 Whether the entity establishes requirements that tenants provide accurate information required for mandatory energy rating schemes
 - 3.1.5 Whether the entity can prioritise sustainability requirements over minimising the costs of improvements and adjustments
 - 3.2 Whether the entity prioritises separately metering or submetering tenant energy consumption and water withdrawals, and if so, if the entity also prioritises its own ability to measure the tenant energy consumption and water withdrawals
 - 3.3 Whether the entity prioritises lease structures that require tenants to pay grid electricity and water utility expenses based on actual and exclusive consumption of such resources
- 4 The entity shall include a discussion of its support, participation and use of third-party initiatives concerning green leases.
 - 4.1 Third-party initiatives concerning green leases may include green lease templates, principles, requirements, strategies and educational programs provided by organisations.
 - 4.2 Examples of third-party initiatives concerning green leases may include:
 - 4.2.1 Building Owners and Managers Association International, *Commercial Lease: Guide to Sustainable and Energy Efficient Leasing for High-*

Performance Buildings

- 4.2.2 California Sustainability Alliance, *Green Leases Toolkit*
- 4.2.3 CMS, *Green Lease Clauses in Europe - A practical approach*
- 4.2.4 Corporate Realty, Design & Management Institute, *Model Green Lease*
- 4.2.5 Green Lease Leaders and Green Lease Library (programs jointly operated by the Institute for Market Transformation and the U.S. Department of Energy's Better Building Alliance)
- 4.2.6 Natural Resources Defence Council, *Energy Efficiency Lease Guidance*
- 4.2.7 Real Property Association of Canada, *Green Office Leases*
- 4.2.8 U.S. General Services Administration, *Green Lease Policies and Procedures*
- 4.2.9 U.S. Green Building Council, *Green Office Guide: Integrating LEED into Your Leasing Process and Greening Your Lease*

- 4.3 The entity shall describe whether third-party initiatives concerning green leases are integrated into standard lease contracts (generally aligned with GRESB Real Estate Assessment Q39.1).

- 5 The entity shall describe how the lease types used (for example, triple-net or full-service) and their provisions (for example, cost recovery clauses, tenant fit out guides, utility information sharing, mandatory participation in energy ratings) may influence or incentivise tenant behaviour related to sustainability impacts.

- 5.1 The entity may provide a discussion of how such lease structures may impact property values—including tenant demand and the associated rental rates and occupancy rates—over the long term.

Climate Change Adaptation

Topic Summary

Climate change affects entities in the industry via frequent or high-impact extreme weather events and changing climate patterns. How an entity structures its business model to incorporate assessments of climate change risks, and the adaptation to such risks, may increasingly be relevant to entity value over the long-term. More specifically, investment strategies with assets located on floodplains and in coastal regions exposed to inclement weather may require increased risk mitigation and business model adaptation to long-term climate change. These strategies are especially important considering the long-term challenges associated with flood insurance rates, the financial stability of government-subsidised flood insurance programs, and financing stipulations or other creditor concerns. Besides insurance, other risk mitigation measures include improvements to physical asset resiliency and lease terms that transfer risk to tenants, although these measures can create their own costs and risks for real estate entities. To ensure long-term growth, entities must implement comprehensive climate change adaptation strategies, account for trade-offs between various

risk mitigation strategies, and integrate all projected cost and benefit considerations over the long-term.

Metrics

IF-RE-450a.1. Area of properties located in 100-year flood zones, by property sector

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total leasable floor area, in square metres, of properties in the entity's portfolio located in 100-year flood zones.
 - 1.1 100-year flood zones are defined as land areas subject to a 1% or greater chance of flooding in any given year. Such areas also may be referenced as being subject to the 1% annual chance flood, the 1% annual exceedance probability flood, or the 100-year flood.
 - 1.1.1 Examples of 100-year flood zones may include coastal flood plains, flood plains along major rivers and areas subject to flooding from ponding in low-lying areas.
 - 1.2 Number of units may be used in place of floor area in the Apartments and Lodging/Resorts property sectors when floor area is not available.
- 2 The scope of disclosure shall include all the entity's properties located in 100-year flood zones, regardless of the jurisdiction in which they are located.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the total leasable floor area of properties that are located in 100-year flood zones separately for each property type in its portfolio where properties are classified into sectors aligned with the FTSE EPRA Nareit Global Real Estate Index property sector classification.
- 4 The entity may separately provide the planned leasable floor area of properties under development or construction that are located in 100-year flood zones.
- 5 The entity may disclose its risk perception and potential impacts resulting from reclassification of 100-year flood zones, including the risk of expansion of such areas into real estate property owned by the entity.

IF-RE-450a.2. Description of climate change risk exposure analysis, degree of systematic portfolio exposure, and strategies for mitigating risks

- 1 The entity shall describe the significant risks and opportunities presented to its business by climate change scenarios.
 - 1.1 The entity shall identify each significant risk and opportunity.
 - 1.1.1 Risks and opportunities may include availability of water, extreme weather events, evolving regulation and legislation, impacts on regional infrastructure, impacts on tenant demand, and impacts on local economies and populations, regardless of the impact of physical risks presented to the entity's portfolio.
 - 1.2 The entity shall discuss:
 - 1.2.1 The time line over which such risks and opportunities are expected to manifest.

- 1.2.2 How such climate change scenarios may manifest (for example, effects directly on the entity or effects on the entity's tenants).
- 1.2.3 How risks and opportunities may differ by property sector.
- 1.2.4 How risks and opportunities may differ by region.
- 1.3 The entity shall disclose the climate change scenarios used to determine the risks and opportunities presented by climate change as defined by the International Energy Agency in its annual World Energy Outlook.
- 2 The entity shall describe efforts to assess and monitor the impacts of climate change and the related strategies to alleviate or adapt to any risks or use any opportunities.
 - 2.1 Alleviation strategies may include the use of property insurance, flood insurance, lease structures and lease durations.
 - 2.2 Adaptation strategies may include investments in physical asset resiliency and contingency plans.
 - 2.3 The entity shall discuss:
 - 2.3.1 How strategies may differ by property sector; and
 - 2.3.2 How strategies may differ by region.
- 3 The discussion shall differentiate between physical asset risk and financial risk to focus on the risks, opportunities, and alleviation or adaptation strategies that are most likely to impact financial value.

Volume 37—Real Estate Services

Industry Description

Real Estate Services industry entities provide a range of services to real estate owners, tenants, investors and developers. Primary services include property management, brokerage, appraisal and information services for real estate owners. Property management services may include leasing, tenant relations, building maintenance and building security. Many entities also provide brokerage services, facilitating sales and leasing transactions. Appraisals and other advisory or information services are other specialised services commonly provided to clients. Entities in the industry play important roles in the real estate value chain, which is a substantial part of the global economy.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Sustainability Services	Revenue from energy and sustainability services ⁵³	Quantitative	Presentation currency	IF-RS-410a.1
	(1) Floor area and (2) number of buildings under management provided with energy and sustainability services	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²), Number	IF-RS-410a.2
	(1) Floor area and (2) number of buildings under management that obtained an energy rating	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²), Number	IF-RS-410a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of property management clients, categorised by: (1) tenants and (2) real estate owners	Quantitative	Number	IF-RS-000.A
Floor area under management with owner operational control ⁵⁴	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	IF-RS-000.B
Number of buildings under management with owner operational control ⁵⁵	Quantitative	Number	IF-RS-000.C
Number of leases transacted, categorised by: (1) tenants and (2) real estate owners ⁵⁶	Quantitative	Number	IF-RS-000.D
Number of appraisals provided	Quantitative	Number	IF-RS-000.E

Sustainability Services

Topic Summary

In the Real Estate Services industry, buildings owned or occupied by clients generally have significant sustainability impacts. Buildings, and the activities that take place within them, drive energy consumption, direct and indirect greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, water consumption, waste generation and indoor environmental quality concerns that can impact occupant health.

Entities have an opportunity to improve the sustainability impacts of buildings and their operations through sustainability-related services. These services may include utility data management, energy procurement, energy and water benchmarking, resource efficiency improvements, activities related to sustainability certifications, and sustainability consulting and training. Entities may impact building sustainability further by arranging leases that incentivise both owners and tenants to improve sustainability performance, while yielding financial benefits for both parties. Providing these services may drive new revenue growth and increase client retention. Effective sustainability services may benefit owners or tenants through improved asset values, increased tenant demand, decreased operating costs and improved tenant experiences.

Metrics

IF-RS-410a.1. Revenue from energy and sustainability services

- 1 The entity shall disclose its revenue from energy and sustainability services.
 - 1.1 Energy and sustainability services are defined as services provided to clients directly related to resource efficiency (including energy, water and waste), utility data management, energy procurement, obtaining and retaining sustainability and resource-related certifications, environmental reporting and corporate sustainability consulting and training.
 - 1.1.1 Examples of energy and sustainability services include energy management and performance monitoring (for example, through sub-meters to measure electric usage); energy, water, and waste benchmarking or ratings-scheme services; advisory services related to renewable energy procurement; services related to LEED, ENERGY STAR® or other sustainability-related building certifications; energy- and sustainability-related building valuation analysis; and energy- and sustainability-related client training or consulting.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy and sustainability services excludes services that impart improved energy and sustainability performance in an ancillary, indirect or minimal way, as well as environmental services that are part of the ordinary operation and maintenance of buildings (for example, facilities maintenance or janitorial services).
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes services provided to leasing clients, project- and development-service clients, and capital market and investment management clients.

Note to IF-RS-410a.1

- 1 The entity shall provide a description of the energy and sustainability services offered, where relevant information includes:
 - 1.1 The degree to which the entity integrates energy and sustainability services into, or keeps these services distinct from, the entity's base property management services. Property management services may include the sales process for such services, the amount of overlap between clients for base property management services and energy and sustainability services, and the

level of consistency of contract lengths and terms among base property management services and energy and sustainability services.

- 1.2 The market dynamics of energy and sustainability services, including competition, risks and opportunities, market share, customer demands and preferences, market growth and legislative and regulatory impacts.
- 1.3 Opportunities associated with providing market-leading energy and sustainability services, such as the potential to win a new client based solely on energy and sustainability services, which may result in additional non-energy and sustainability-related services in the future.
- 1.4 Risks associated with providing inadequate or insufficient energy and sustainability services, such as the potential to lose a client based on inadequate or insufficient energy and sustainability services.

2 The entity may disclose the number of energy- and sustainability-accredited professionals it employs.

3 The entity may disclose the estimated energy savings, greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reductions, water savings, waste reductions or other performance measurements associated with the energy and sustainability services provided to clients.

IF-RS-410a.2. (1) Floor area and (2) number of buildings under management provided with energy and sustainability services

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the floor area under management for which it provided energy or sustainability-related services during the reporting period.
 - 1.1 Floor area under management is defined as the gross rentable floor area where property management services are provided and for which the real estate owner has operational control.
 - 1.1.1 Operational control is defined, consistent with the 2018 GRESB® Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide, as an instance when the real estate owner can introduce and implement operating policies, health and safety policies, or environmental policies.
 - 1.2 Energy and sustainability services are defined as services provided to clients directly related to resource efficiency (including energy, water and waste), utility data management, energy procurement, obtaining and retaining sustainability and resource-related certifications, environmental reporting, and corporate sustainability consulting and training.
 - 1.3 The scope of energy and sustainability services excludes services that impart improved energy and sustainability performance in an ancillary, indirect or minimal way, as well as environmental services that are part of the ordinary operation and maintenance of buildings (for example, facilities maintenance or janitorial services).

- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the number of buildings for which it provided energy and sustainability-related services during the reporting period.
 - 2.1 'Buildings under management' is defined as distinct buildings or real estate assets where property management services are provided and where the real estate owner has operational control.
- 3 The scope of disclosure includes the total floor area and all buildings that were provided with energy and sustainability services during the reporting period, regardless of the date of inception of such services.

IF-RS-410a.3. (1) Floor area and (2) number of buildings under management that obtained an energy rating

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the floor area under management that obtained an energy rating during the reporting period.
 - 1.1 Floor area under management is defined as the gross rentable floor area where property management services are provided and for which the real estate owner has operational control.
 - 1.1.1 Operational control is defined consistent with the 2018 GRESB® Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as an instance in which the real estate owner can introduce and implement operating policies, health and safety policies, or environmental policies.
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the number of buildings that obtained an energy rating during the reporting period, where:
 - 2.1 The number of buildings under management is defined as distinct buildings or real estate assets where property management services are provided and where the real estate owner has operational control.
 - 2.2 An energy rating is defined, consistent with the 2018 GRESB® Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide, as a scheme that measures the energy performance of buildings.
 - 2.3 The scope of energy rating schemes includes:
 - 2.3.1 ENERGY STAR® for operations in the United States and Canada
 - 2.3.2 EU Energy Performance Certificates (EPC) for operations in the European Union
 - 2.3.3 National Australian Build Environment Rating System (NABERS) Energy for operations in Australia
 - 2.3.4 NABERSNZ for operations in New Zealand
 - 2.3.5 Government energy efficiency benchmarking
 - 2.3.6 Other energy rating schemes that can be demonstrated to have substantially equivalent criteria, methodology, and presentation of results to those schemes above

- 3 The scope of disclosure is aligned with the 2018 GRESB® Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide in that it 'only include[s] energy ratings that were awarded before or during the reporting period (pre-assessments or other unofficial forms of pre-certification are not valid). Some energy ratings are valid for a limited period; only the rating should be effective and official during the reporting period.'
- 4 The entity shall consider the GRESB® Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as a normative reference; thus, any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.

Volume 38—Waste Management

Industry Description

Waste Management industry entities collect, store, dispose of, recycle or treat various forms of waste from residential, commercial and industrial clients. Types of waste include municipal solid waste, hazardous waste, recyclable materials, and compostable or organic materials. Major entities commonly are integrated vertically, providing a range of services from waste collection to landfilling and recycling, while others provide specialised services such as treating medical and industrial waste. Waste-to-energy operations are a distinct industry segment. Some industry players also provide environmental engineering and consulting services, mostly to large industrial clients.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	(1) Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under (2) emissions-limiting regulations and (3) emissions-reporting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	IF-WM-110a.1
	(1) Total landfill gas generated, (2) percentage flared and (3) percentage used for energy	Quantitative	Million British Thermal Units (MMBtu), Percentage (%)	IF-WM-110a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-WM-110a.3
Fleet Fuel Management	(1) Fleet fuel consumed, (2) percentage natural gas and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	IF-WM-110b.1
	Percentage of alternative fuel vehicles in fleet	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	IF-WM-110b.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of customers by category: (1) municipal, (2) commercial, (3) industrial, (4) residential, and (5) other ⁵⁷	Quantitative	Number	IF-WM-000.A
Vehicle fleet size	Quantitative	Number	IF-WM-000.B
Number of: (1) landfills, (2) transfer stations, (3) recycling centres, (4) composting centres, (5) incinerators, and (6) all other facilities ⁵⁸	Quantitative	Number	IF-WM-000.C
Total amount of materials managed, by customer category: (1) municipal, (2) commercial, (3) industrial, (4) residential, and (5) other ⁵⁹	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	IF-WM-000.D

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Landfills are a significant anthropogenic contributor to global greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions because they generate methane. As a result, regulators frequently require entities to limit

landfill gas emissions. Entities can reduce these emissions through a variety of control technologies that require significant capital investments such as landfill gas collection efficiency improvements, control devices and increased methane oxidisation. Entities can capture and combust methane using a flare, an engine or a turbine to reduce the overall toxicity and potency of raw emissions dramatically. Landfill gas capture is particularly important for owners and operators of large landfills that have been the focus of regulation. Entities that operate in the waste-to-energy industry segment may reduce waste lifecycle emissions through decreased future emissions from landfills and displaced energy generation, but they face increased Scope 1 emissions from waste-to-energy facilities operations. Overall, GHG emissions pose regulatory risks for the industry, with potential effects on operational costs and capital expenditures. Entities also may generate revenue through the sale of natural gas and energy from waste-to-energy facilities, as well as reduce fuel purchases by using processed landfill gas to power operations. Performance on this issue may affect an entity's ability to secure new permits or renew existing ones, which can affect revenue.

Metrics

IF-WM-110a.1. (1) Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under (2) emissions-limiting regulations and (3) emissions-reporting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)

2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program

2.1.4 ISO 14064-1

2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA

2.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)

2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

3 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.

3.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:

3.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)

3.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)

3.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)

3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).

3.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.

3.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.

4 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under emissions reporting-based regulations.

4.1 Emissions reporting-based regulations are defined as regulations that demand the disclosure of GHG emissions data to regulators or the public, but for which no limit, cost, target or controls on the amount of emissions generated exists.

4.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions reporting-based regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).

4.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions reporting-based regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.

4.3 The scope of emissions reporting-based regulations does not exclude emissions covered under emissions-limiting regulations.

5 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.

6 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.

7 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

IF-WM-110a.2. (1) Total landfill gas generated, (2) percentage flared and (3) percentage used for energy

1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount, in millions of British Thermal Units (MMBtu), of landfill gas generated from its owned or operated facilities.

1.1 Landfill gas is defined as gas produced because of anaerobic decomposition of waste materials in the landfill.

2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of landfill gas that was flared.

2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount (in MMBtu) of landfill gas that was flared divided by the total amount (in MMBtu) of landfill gas generated.

2.1.1 Flared landfill gas includes gas flared through air injection and is defined as gas that is combusted using an open flame with combustion air provided by uncontrolled ambient air around the flame, or air that is blown into the flare to induce complete combustion.

3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of landfill gas used for energy.

3.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount (in MMBtu) of landfill gas captured and used for energy divided by the total amount (in MMBtu) of landfill gas generated.

3.1.1 Landfill gas used for energy includes gas combusted for use in on-site energy or heat production, conveyed through pipelines for off-site combustion, and any other on-site or off-site use as a fuel.

- 4 The entity shall disclose the methodology used to calculate the amount of landfill gas generated, the percentage flared and the percentage used for energy.

IF-WM-110a.3. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
- 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
- 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss how lifecycle GHG emissions factor into Scope 1 emissions management and overall business strategy.
- 2.1 Relevant aspects to discuss include:
- 2.1.1 The trade-offs between lifecycle emissions and Scope 1 emissions
- 2.1.2 How such trade-offs are evaluated within the context of the entity's business strategy and operational areas of focus (for example, landfill gas management, waste-to-energy, recycling, composting)
- 2.1.3 The extent to which the trade-offs factor into the entity's business strategy, including identified areas of opportunity for growth and its capital expenditure strategy
- 2.1.4 Whether the short-term management of Scope 1 emissions or the long-term management of lifecycle emissions is prioritised by the entity
- 2.1.5 The impact of waste-to-energy (WTE) operations on lifecycle emissions versus Scope 1 emissions
- 2.2 The entity may disclose related quantitative measures, which may include:
- 2.2.1 Avoided emissions (for example, *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement)
- 2.2.2 Estimated future Scope 1 emissions from landfills

- 3 The entity shall discuss risks and opportunities arising out of lifecycle emissions and Scope 1 emissions, which may include:
 - 3.1 Risks arising from future Scope 1 emissions over the long-term resulting from landfills
 - 3.2 Risks arising from short-term increases in Scope 1 emissions resulting from WTE facilities
 - 3.3 Opportunities arising from long-term decreases in lifecycle emissions resulting from WTE facilities, recycling and composting
- 4 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 4.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 4.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 4.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 4.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 4.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 4.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 5 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 6 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 7 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 8 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Fleet Fuel Management

Topic Summary

Many entities in the Waste Management industry own and operate large vehicle fleets for waste collection and transfer. The fuel consumption of vehicle fleets is a significant industry cost, both in terms of operating expenses and associated capital expenditures. Fossil fuel consumption can contribute to environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution. These environmental impacts may affect waste management entities through increased regulatory exposure and reduced competitiveness of new contract proposals. Hedging fuel purchases is a common tool used to manage fleet-fuel risks; however, increasingly, waste management entities are upgrading to more fuel-efficient fleets or switching to natural gas vehicles. A cleaner-burning fleet also may be perceived favourably by communities living near waste management facilities with heavy traffic.

Metrics

IF-WM-110b.1. (1) Fleet fuel consumed, (2) percentage natural gas and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of fuel consumed by its fleet vehicles as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.
 - 1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:
 - 1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, minus any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period
 - 1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicle
 - 1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of fuel consumed that is natural gas.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of natural gas consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of fuel consumed that was renewable fuel.
 - 3.1 Renewable fuel generally is defined as fuel that meets all the following requirements:
 - 3.1.1 Produced from renewable biomass
 - 3.1.2 Used to replace or reduce the quantity of fossil fuel present in a transportation fuel, heating oil or jet fuel
 - 3.1.3 Achieved net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a life cycle basis
 - 3.2 The entity shall disclose the standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable.

3.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of renewable fuel consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).

4 The scope of disclosure is limited to fuel consumed by vehicles owned or operated by the entity.

5 In calculating energy consumption from fuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are directly measured or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.

6 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage.

IF-WM-110b.2. Percentage of alternative fuel vehicles in fleet

1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its fleet vehicles that are alternative fuel vehicles.

1.1 Alternative fuel vehicles are defined as vehicles powered by biodiesel, denatured alcohol, electricity, hydrogen, methanol, mixtures containing up to 85% methanol or denatured ethanol, natural gas, or propane (liquefied petroleum gas). Alternative energy vehicles also include any vehicle achieving a significant reduction in petroleum consumption, advanced lean burn technology vehicles, fuel cell vehicles and hybrid electric vehicles.

1.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the number of alternative energy vehicles in its fleet divided by the total number of vehicles in its fleet.

Volume 39—Water Utilities & Services

Industry Description

Water Utilities & Services industry entities own and operate water supply and wastewater treatment systems (generally structured as regulated utility businesses) or provide operational and other specialised water services to system owners (usually market-based operations). Water supply systems include the sourcing, treatment and distribution of water to residences, businesses and other entities such as governments. Wastewater systems collect and treat wastewater, including sewage, greywater, industrial waste fluids and stormwater runoff, before discharging the resulting effluent back into the environment.

Note: The scope of the Water Utilities & Services (IF-WU) industry excludes water services categorised as infrastructure design and development. These activities fall within the Engineering & Construction Services (IF-EC) industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	IF-WU-130a.1
	Water main replacement rate 60	Quantitative	Rate	IF-WU-140a.1
Distribution Network Efficiency	Volume of non-revenue real water losses	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³)	IF-WU-140a.2
End-Use Efficiency	Percentage of water utility revenue from rate structures designed to promote conservation and revenue resilience	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	IF-WU-420a.1
	Customer water savings from efficiency measures, by market 61	Quantitative	Cubic metres (m ³)	IF-WU-420a.2
	Total water sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress; percentage purchased from a third party	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	IF-WU-440a.1
Water Supply Resilience	Volume of recycled water delivered to customers	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³)	IF-WU-440a.2
	Discussion of strategies to manage risks associated with the quality and availability of water resources	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-WU-440a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Network Resiliency & Impacts of Climate Change	Wastewater treatment capacity located in 100-year flood zones	Quantitative	Cubic metres (m³) per day	IF-WU-450a.1
	(1) Number and (2) volume of sanitary sewer overflows (SSO) and (3) percentage of volume recovered	Quantitative	Number, Cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	IF-WU-450a.2
	(1) Number of unplanned service disruptions and (2) customers affected, each by duration category ⁶²	Quantitative	Number	IF-WU-450a.3
	Description of efforts to identify and manage risks and opportunities related to the impact of climate change on distribution and wastewater infrastructure	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	IF-WU-450a.4

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of: (1) residential, (2) commercial, and (3) industrial customers served, by service provided ⁶³	Quantitative	Number	IF-WU-000.A
Total water sourced, percentage by source type ⁶⁴	Quantitative	Cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	IF-WU-000.B
Total water delivered to: (1) residential, (2) commercial, (3) industrial, and (4) all other	Quantitative	Thousand cubic	IF-WU-000.C

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
customers ⁶⁵		metres (m³)	
Average volume of wastewater treated per day, by (1) sanitary sewer, (2) stormwater, and (3) combined sewer	Quantitative	Cubic metres (m³) per day	IF-WU-000.D
Length of (1) water mains and (2) sewer pipe	Quantitative	Kilometres (km)	IF-WU-000.E

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Entities in the Water Utilities & Services industry consume significant amounts of energy for the withdrawal, conveyance, treatment, and distribution or discharge of potable water and wastewater. Typically, an entity’s largest operating cost after purchased water, chemicals, labour and utility operating costs is energy use. Purchased grid electricity is the most common energy input. In more remote locations, entities may use on-site generation to power equipment. The inefficient use of purchased grid electricity creates environmental externalities, such as increased Scope 2 greenhouse gas emissions. Environmental regulations may affect the future grid energy mix, resulting in price increases. Additionally, climate change is expected to impact grid reliability and affect the availability of water resources. As a result, water utility energy intensity may increase in the future as water resource access becomes more difficult. Alternative water treatment, such as recycling and desalination, also can require more energy. Together with decisions about the use of alternative fuels, renewable energy and on-site electricity generation, energy efficiency can influence both the cost and the reliability of the energy supply.

Metrics

IF-WU-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
- 1.1The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.

1.2The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.

- 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
 - 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification, or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e

regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).
- 5 The scope of disclosure includes all water, wastewater, and stormwater operations and services.
 - 5.1 The entity may categorise out its disclosures by water, wastewater or stormwater services.

Distribution Network Efficiency

Topic Summary

Water utilities develop, maintain and operate complex interconnected infrastructure networks that include extensive pipelines, canals, reservoirs and pump stations. Distribution networks may lose significant volumes of water (called 'non-revenue water' because it is a distributed volume of water not reflected in customer billings). This water is lost primarily because of infrastructure failures and inefficiencies, such as leaking pipes and service connections. Non-revenue real water losses may impact financial performance, raise customer rates, and squander water and other resources such as energy and treatment chemicals. Conversely, improvements to infrastructure and operating processes may limit non-revenue losses, increase revenue and reduce costs. Efficiently directing operational and maintenance expenses or capital expenditures to distribution systems including primarily pipeline and service connection repair, refurbishment, or replacement may improve entity value and provide strong investment returns.

Metrics

IF-WU-140a.1. Water main replacement rate

- 1 The entity shall disclose its water main replacement rate for the distribution system(s) it owns or operates.
 - 1.1 The distribution system includes all water utility components for the distribution of finished or potable water to customers or other users. This includes the distribution of water for non-potable uses, including fire suppression.
- 2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total length of pipe replaced during the reporting period divided by the total length of water mains in its distribution system.
 - 2.1 The scope of water main replacements includes complete main replacements, as well as rehabilitations or renewals that substantially extend the life of the water main.
 - 2.2 The scope of water main replacements excludes water main repairs.

- 3 The scope of disclosure is limited to water operations and services (wastewater and stormwater services are excluded).

Note to **IF-WU-140a.1**

- 1 The entity shall describe the use of, and challenges associated with, planned and corrective maintenance in its distribution system, where:
 - 1.1 Corrective maintenance is defined as all maintenance undertaken after asset failure.
 - 1.2 Planned maintenance is defined as all regular maintenance activities undertaken in advance of asset failure.
- 2 Relevant challenges to describe may include the impacts of corrosion and soil properties on pipe materials (for example, cast iron, ductile iron, polyvinyl chloride and wood), the entity's ability to finance maintenance and replacement through rate adjustments, and the age of the current distribution network.

IF-WU-140a.2. Volume of non-revenue real water losses

- 1 The entity shall disclose the volume, in cubic metres, of non-revenue real water losses from the distribution system.
 - 1.1 Non-revenue real water losses are defined as the physical water losses, which are not billed and produce no revenue, from the pressurised system and storage tanks up to the point of customer consumption, which is the customer meter for those utilities that meter their customers. In unmetered systems, the delineation is the point at which the customer becomes responsible for customer service connection piping maintenance and repairs. Real losses include leakage from mains and service connections and storage tank overflows.
- 2 The entity shall calculate the amount of non-revenue real water losses according to applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations when such loss occurs.
- 3 The scope of disclosure is limited to water operations and services (wastewater and stormwater services are excluded).
- 4 If applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations do not exist, the entity shall calculate the volume of real losses according to voluntary initiatives.
- 5 The entity may disclose the technique(s) employed to measure non-revenue water from real losses and the amount calculated according to each technique employed.

End-Use Efficiency

Topic Summary

Consumer level water efficiency and conservation—whether a product of government mandates, environmental consciousness or demographic trends—is increasingly important for long-term resource availability and the financial performance of the water supply segment of the industry. How utilities work with regulators to mitigate revenue declines while increasing

end-use resource efficiency may be financially material. Water efficiency mechanisms, including rate decoupling, may ensure that a utility's revenue can adequately cover its fixed costs and provide the desired level of returns regardless of sales volume, while incentivising customers to conserve water. Efficiency mechanisms can align utilities' economic incentives with environmental and social interests, including improved resource efficiency, lower rates and increased capital investments in infrastructure. Water utilities may manage rate mechanism impacts through positive regulatory relations, forward-looking rate cases that incorporate efficiency and a strong execution of efficiency strategy.

Metrics

IF-WU-420a.1. Percentage of water utility revenue from rate structures designed to promote conservation and revenue resilience

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of water utility revenue from rate structures designed to promote conservation and revenue resilience.
 - 1.1 The scope of rate structures designed to promote conservation and revenue resilience is limited to rate structures explicitly and intentionally designed to:
 - 1.1.1 Financially incentivise customers to reduce water consumption or improve water efficiency
 - 1.1.2 Improve the revenue resilience of the water utility, primarily in circumstances of declining average customer water use or improving average customer water efficiency
 - 1.2 The scope of rate structures that are designed to promote conservation and revenue resilience includes revenue decoupled rate structures.
 - 1.2.1 Revenue decoupled rate structures are defined as a rate adjustment mechanism that separates the utility's fixed cost recovery from the volume sold, and the utility's revenue is collected based on the regulatory determined revenue requirement.
 - 1.2.2 Revenue decoupled rate structures may also be referred to as 'revenue regulation' or 'revenue cap regulation' in which the regulator sets up an allowed revenue requirement and adjusts collections to achieve allowed, or 'target', revenue irrespective of actual sales.
 - 1.2.3 Additional guidance on the scope of revenue decoupled rate structures is contained in Alternative Regulation and Ratemaking Approaches for Water Companies, The Brattle Group, September 23, 2013.
 - 1.3 The scope of rate structures designed to promote conservation and revenue resilience may include rate structures that contain a lost revenue adjustment mechanism (LRAM).
 - 1.3.1 Rate structures that contain an LRAM are defined as volumetric rates that contain a mechanism allowing the entity to recover revenues lost directly resulting from water conservation, water efficiency, or demand side management programmes the entity directly manages or implements.

1.3.2 Additional guidance on the scope of revenue decoupled rate structures is contained in *Alternative Regulation and Ratemaking Approaches for Water Companies*, The Brattle Group, September 23, 2013.

1.3.3 The scope of LRAM includes mechanisms that allow the estimation of lost revenue based on the programmes' actual impacts, but it excludes lost revenue from planned or forecast programmes' impacts (as described in *Alternative Regulation and Ratemaking Approaches for Water Companies*, The Brattle Group, September 23, 2013).

1.4 The scope of rate structures designed to promote conservation and revenue resilience excludes straight fixed variable rate design, absent other rate mechanisms explicitly designed to promote conservation.

2 The percentage shall be calculated as the regulated water utility revenue from rate structures designed to promote conservation and revenue resilience divided by total regulated water utility revenue.

3 The scope of disclosure is limited to water operations and services (wastewater and stormwater services are excluded).

IF-WU-420a.2. Customer water savings from efficiency measures, by market

1 The entity shall disclose the total volume of water savings, in cubic metres, from water efficiency measures installed or otherwise supported by the entity during the reporting period for each of its markets.

1.1 Markets are defined as those operations subject to distinct public utility regulatory oversight.

2 Water savings shall be defined according to the gross savings approach as the changes in water consumption or demand that result from programme-related actions taken by participants in an efficiency programme, regardless of why they participated.

2.1 The entity should list those markets where it reports water savings on a net savings basis, and thus may be different from the figures disclosed here.

2.1.1 Net water savings are defined as changes in consumption specifically attributable to a water efficiency programme that would not otherwise have happened without the programme.

3 Water savings shall be calculated on a gross basis, but consistent with the methodology set forth in jurisdictional evaluation, measurement, and verification (EM&V) regulations when such savings occur.

4 If jurisdictional regulations do not exist, the entity shall calculate water savings in a manner consistent with the measurement and verification methods outlined by Efficiency Valuation Organisation's (EVO) *International Performance Measurement and*

Verification Protocol: Concepts and Options for Determining Energy and Water Savings, Volume 1 (IPM&V Protocol).

- 5 The entity shall consider the EVO IPM&V Protocol and jurisdictional regulations as normative references, thus any updates made year-on-year shall be considered updates to this guidance.
- 6 The scope of disclosure is limited to water operations and services (wastewater and stormwater services are excluded).

Note to IF-WU-420a.2

- 1 The entity shall describe customer efficiency measures required by regulations for each of its relevant markets, including a discussion of:
 - 1.1 The amount or percentage of water savings from efficiency measures required by regulations for each market
 - 1.2 Instances of non-compliance with water savings obligations
 - 1.2.1 In such instances, the entity shall disclose the difference between the water savings delivered and the amount required by the regulation.
 - 1.3 Water savings delivered that exceed those required by regulations that resulted in the entity receiving energy efficiency performance incentives, including the value of any such incentives
- 2 The entity shall describe the forms of regulation in each market that allow for or incentivise water efficiency, including a discussion of the benefits, challenges and financial effects associated with such regulations.
- 3 Relevant policy mechanisms to discuss may include:
 - 3.1 Deferral decoupling
 - 3.2 Current period decoupling
 - 3.3 Single fixed variable rates
 - 3.4 Lost revenue adjustments
 - 3.5 Water efficiency feebates
- 4 The entity may describe incentives it has developed for its customers that promote end-use efficiency, which may include dynamic pricing, water efficiency rebates, and other measures to subsidise customer water efficiency.
- 5 The entity may describe voluntary initiatives in which it has participated to manage end-user water efficiency.

Water Supply Resilience

Topic Summary

Water supply systems obtain water from groundwater and surface water sources. Water supplies either may be accessed directly or purchased from a third party, often a government entity. Water scarcity, water source contamination, infrastructure failures, regulatory restrictions, competing users and overconsumption by customers are all factors that may jeopardise sufficient water supply access. These issues, combined with an increasing risk of extreme and frequent drought conditions because of climate change, may result in inadequate supplies or mandated water restrictions. The related financial impacts may manifest in diverse ways, depending on rate structure, but are most likely to impact entity value through decreased revenue. Water supply challenges also may increase the price of purchased water, which could result in higher operating costs. Failures of critical infrastructure such as aqueducts and canals, which could result from events such as earthquakes, can present catastrophic risks to customers of the water supply system and could inflict untold financial consequences. Entities may mitigate water supply risks (and the resulting financial risks) through diversification of water supplies, sustainable withdrawal levels, technological and infrastructure improvements, contingency planning, positive relations with regulators and other major users, as well as rate structures.

Metrics

IF-WU-440a.1. Total water sourced from regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress; percentage purchased from a third party

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of fresh water, in thousands of cubic metres, sourced from all sources in regions with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater and wholesale water purchased from a third party.
 - 1.2 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 1.3 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
 - 1.4 High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress shall be classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of fresh water sourced in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress that was purchased from a third party.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of fresh water sourced in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress (in thousands of cubic metres) purchased from a third party divided by the total amount of fresh water sourced in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress (in thousands of cubic metres).

IF-WU-440a.2. Volume of recycled water delivered to customers

- 1 The entity shall disclose the volume, in cubic metres, of water recycled and delivered to its customers.
- 2 Recycled water shall be defined as wastewater treated to meet specific water quality criteria with the intention of being used for a range of purposes, which may include:
 - 2.1 Potable reuse, such as direct augmentation of the drinking water supply and indirect augmentation of a drinking water source when an environmental buffer precedes drinking water treatment
 - 2.2 Non-potable reuse, such as recreational landscape irrigation, agricultural reuse, industrial process reuse and environmental reuse (for example, wetland enhancement and groundwater recharge)
- 3 The amount of recycled water delivered shall be calculated as the amount of water that meets the quality standards for approved uses of recycled water as set forth through applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations where the recycling occurs.

IF-WU-440a.3. Discussion of strategies to manage risks associated with the quality and availability of water resources

- 1 The entity shall identify and describe its significant risks associated with the quality and availability of, and access to, water resources, including a discussion of its strategies to manage such risks.
 - 1.1 Relevant information to provide may include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints such as water resources in water-stressed regions, drought, interannual or seasonal variability, severe weather events, risks from the impacts of climate change, and any impacts or risks associated with contaminated sources.
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory, infrastructure and financial constraints such as reliance on essential infrastructure to obtain water, risk of regulatory restrictions to obtaining sufficient water or the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights, permits and allocations, and stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water sources (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
 - 1.1.3 How risks may vary by water source including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater or wholesale water supplies.
- 2 The entity shall include a description of the potential impacts these risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 2.1 Impacts may include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations, access to water and reputation.
- 3 The entity shall provide a discussion of its short- and long-term strategy or plans to manage these risks, including, when relevant:

- 3.1 Diversification of water sources
 - 3.2 Contingency planning in the event of critical infrastructure failure
 - 3.3 The use of alternative, watershed-based approaches to align overall infrastructure decisions with overall watershed goals
 - 3.4 The scope of its strategy, plans or targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units (for example, residential versus industrial), geographies or regulatory frameworks (for example, rate structures or mandated water-use restrictions)
 - 3.5 The activities and investments established to manage water sourced from areas of water stress or scarcity and any risks or limiting factors that might affect the ability to address water scarcity
 - 3.6 The efforts to secure and retain reliable long-term water supplies through senior water rights, permits, or allocations, including the entity's ability to secure water (for example, through purchase from a third party) should sufficient allocations be unavailable
- 4 Disclosure of strategies, plans and infrastructure investments shall be limited to activities that were active or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 The entity shall discuss if its management of water scarcity results in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs including trade-offs in land use (for example, development of water storage facilities such as reservoirs), energy consumption, and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

Network Resiliency & Impacts of Climate Change

Topic Summary

Climate change may create uncertainty for water supply systems and wastewater systems because of potential impacts on infrastructure and operations. Climate change may result in increased water stress, more frequent severe weather events, reduced water quality and rising sea levels that could impair utility assets and operations. Water supply and wastewater disposal are basic services for which maintaining operational continuity is of utmost importance. The increasing frequency and severity of storms challenge water and wastewater treatment facilities, and these factors can affect service continuity. Intense precipitation may result in sewage volumes that exceed treatment facility capacity resulting in the release of untreated effluent. Minimising current and future risks of service disruptions and improving service quality may require additional capital expenditures and operational expenses. As the likelihood of extreme weather events increases, entities that address these risks through redundancies and strategic planning may better serve customers and improve performance.

Metrics

IF-WU-450a.1. Wastewater treatment capacity located in 100-year flood zones

- 1 The entity shall disclose the capacity, in cubic metres per day, of its wastewater treatment facilities located in 100-year flood zones.
 - 1.1 100-year flood zones are defined as land areas subject to a 1% greater chance of flooding in any given year. Such areas also may be referenced as being subject to the 1% annual chance flood, the 1% annual exceedance probability flood or the 100-year flood.
 - 1.1.1 Examples of 100-year flood zones may include coastal flood plains, flood plains along major rivers and areas subject to flooding from ponding in low-lying areas.

- 2 The scope of disclosure shall include all the entity's wastewater treatment facilities located in 100-year flood zones.

IF-WU-450a.2. (1) Number and (2) volume of sanitary sewer overflows (SSO) and (3) percentage of volume recovered

- 1 The entity shall disclose the (1) number of sanitary sewer overflows (SSO) originating from sewer systems under the entity's operational control.
 - 1.1 SSOs are defined as overflows, spills, releases or diversions of wastewater from a sanitary sewer system.
 - 1.2 If regulations do not require reporting of SSOs, the entity shall disclose the calculation methodology or combination of methodologies used. Relevant methods may include:
 - 1.2.1 Duration and flow rate comparison method
 - 1.2.2 Upstream lateral connections method
 - 1.2.3 Continuous flow metering
- 2 The entity shall disclose the (2) volume, in cubic metres, of SSOs originating from sewer systems under the entity's operational control.
 - 2.1 The volume of SSOs shall be calculated according to the methodologies used for regulatory reporting in the corresponding jurisdiction.
- 3 The entity shall report the (3) percentage of SSOs recovered, by volume.
 - 3.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the volume, in cubic metres, of sewage discharged to the environment through SSOs that was recovered, divided by the total amount of sewage discharged to the environment through SSOs.
 - 3.2 The recovered volume is defined as the amount of sewage discharged that was captured and returned to the sanitary sewer system, private lateral or collection system.
 - 3.3 The volume of SSOs recovered shall be calculated according to the methodologies used for regulatory reporting in the corresponding jurisdiction.

- 3.4 If regulations do not require reporting the recovery of SSOs, the entity shall disclose the calculation methodology or combination of methodologies used. Relevant methods may include:
 - 3.4.1 Measured volume method
 - 3.4.2 Visual estimation method

- 4 The entity may describe programmes and initiatives including those programmes overseen by applicable jurisdictional legal or regulatory authorities and those the entity has developed internally to reduce the number and volume of SSOs and to mitigate such occurrences.

IF-WU-450a.3. (1) Number of unplanned service disruptions and (2) customers affected, each by duration category

- 1 The entity shall disclose the (1) number of unplanned service disruptions to its drinking water supply services and (2) the total number of customers affected by such disruptions.
 - 1.1 An unplanned service disruption shall be defined according to the applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations where the disruption occurred.
 - 1.2 In cases when regulations to define disruptions do not exist, disruptions shall be considered as incidents of complete water shutoff, low flow restrictions, boil-water advisories and water main flushing, and they exclude those incidents when a reduction of service occurs, but normal activities (for example, dishwashing, showering, laundry washing and toilet flushing) are maintained.
 - 1.3 The scope of unplanned service disruptions shall be limited to those disruptions that were not planned or scheduled and those disruptions exceeding the scheduled duration of disruption.
 - 1.3.1 A scheduled disruption shall be defined according to local regulations where the disruption occurred. If such regulations do not exist, a scheduled disruption shall be considered a disruption for which the entity has provided a minimum of 24 hours advanced notification.
 - 1.4 Customers are defined as the number of individual service agreements for water services at single properties, where an individual may own more than one property and be counted as a customer more than once.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the number of unplanned service disruptions and the number of customers affected, by the length of duration category.
 - 2.1 The length of duration categories is under four hours, between four and 12 hours, or 12 hours or more.

2.2 The duration of a disruption is defined as the time taken for all unplanned or emergency corrective activities by all utility employees and contractors working for the utility after discovery of an unplanned service disruption.

3 The scope of disclosure is limited to water operations and services (wastewater and stormwater services are excluded).

4 The entity may separately disclose the number of disruptions that were intentionally planned or scheduled by the entity, the number of customers affected, and the duration of those disruptions.

Note to **IF-WU-450a.3**

1 The entity shall discuss notable service disruptions such as those that affected a significant number of customers or those of extended duration.

2 For such disruptions, the registrant should provide:

2.1 Description and cause of the service disruptions

2.2 The costs associated with the service disruptions

2.3 Actions taken to mitigate the potential for future service disruptions

2.4 Any other significant outcomes (for example, legal proceedings)

IF-WU-450a.4. Description of efforts to identify and manage risks and opportunities related to the impact of climate change on distribution and wastewater infrastructure

1 The entity shall describe its efforts to identify and manage risks and opportunities associated with climate change-related impacts on its water distribution and wastewater infrastructure.

1.1 Risks include, among others, threats to the entity's physical infrastructure resulting from climate change-related events (for example, rising sea levels, increasing storm intensity and impacts of drought) that could result in service disruption(s).

1.2 Opportunities include the need for infrastructure improvements within the entity's current service area and the opportunity to expand its services through the water infrastructure.

2 The entity shall describe how it identifies and prioritises the potential for risks to, and vulnerabilities of, its water distribution and wastewater infrastructure.

2.1 Relevant risks and vulnerabilities to describe may include those relating to the age, geographical location and physical qualities of the entity's distribution infrastructure.

2.2 Relevant efforts to discuss include involvement in climate change adaptation and mitigation programmes.

- 3 The entity shall describe its efforts to manage the risks and opportunities associated with its water distribution and wastewater infrastructure including, but not limited to, infrastructure development, current storm tracking, global gridded climate models and the use of redundant systems to assure service continuity.
- 4 The scope of disclosure includes all water, wastewater, and stormwater operations and services.
 - 4.1 The entity may categorise its disclosures by water, wastewater or stormwater services.
- 5 The entity may describe its efforts to manage risks and opportunities associated with its distribution network in the context of the rate case and rate making political environment, including the effects on the entity's ability to expand, maintain and enhance the resiliency of its distribution network.

Renewable Resources & Alternative Energy Sector -

Volume 40—Biofuels -

Industry Description

Biofuels industry entities produce biofuels and process raw materials for production. Using organic feedstocks, entities manufacture biofuels that are used primarily in transportation. Entities typically source feedstocks, which include food, oil crops and animal products, from agricultural product distributors. Ethanol and biodiesel are the most widely produced biofuels, while other types include biogas, biohydrogen and synthetic biofuels, produced from a variety of organic feedstocks. Biofuels entities' customers are chiefly fuel-blending and fuel-supply entities, including major integrated oil entities. Government regulations related to the use of renewable fuel are a significant demand driver in the industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Water Management in Manufacturing	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	RR-BI-140a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-BI-140a.2
	Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	RR-BI-140a.3
Lifecycle Emissions Balance	Lifecycle greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, by biofuel type	Quantitative	Grammes of CO ₂ -e per megajoule (MJ)	RR-BI-410a.1
Sourcing & Environmental Impacts of Feedstock Production	Discussion of strategy to manage risks associated with environmental impacts of feedstock production	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-BI-430a.1
	Percentage of biofuel production third-party certified to an environmental sustainability standard	Quantitative	Percentage (%) of litres	RR-BI-430a.2
Management of the Legal & Regulatory Environment	Amount of subsidies received through government programmes	Quantitative	Presentation currency	RR-BI-530a.1
	Discussion of corporate positions related to government regulations or policy proposals that address environmental and social factors affecting the industry	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-BI-530a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Biofuel production capacity	Quantitative	Millions of litres (ML)	RR-BI-000.A
Production of: (1) renewable fuel, (2) advanced biofuel, (3) biodiesel, and (4) cellulosic biofuel	Quantitative	Millions of litres (ML)	RR-BI-000.B
Amount of feedstock consumed in production 66	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	RR-BI-000.C

Water Management in Manufacturing

Topic Summary

Biofuel refining is water-intensive. Biorefineries require water for feedstock processing, fermentation, distillation and cooling. Although water use at biorefineries is modest relative to the quantities consumed during feedstock crop production, it is concentrated, and thus may affect local water resources. Facilities also may generate wastewater containing salts, organic compounds, dissolved solids, phosphorus and other substances, requiring wastewater treatment. Biofuel refineries also may face reduced water availability, related cost increases or operational disruptions. Water extraction from particular areas for refining, as well as contamination of water supplies because of refining operations, also could create regulatory risk and tensions with local communities. Water efficiency in operations and the proper treatment of effluents are therefore important for biofuels entities.

Metrics

RR-BI-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.

2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.

3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.

3.1 Water consumption is defined as:

3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge

3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the product or service

3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea

4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.

6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

RR-BI-140a.2. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.

1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:

1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change

1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits

1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to

discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).

- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
 - 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
 - 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.
- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.
- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:
 - 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
 - 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
 - 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
 - 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
 - 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.

- 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations
- 5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

- 6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

RR-BI-140a.3. Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance, including violations of a technology-based standard and exceedances of quantity or quality-based standards.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations, which include the discharge of a hazardous substance, violation of pre-treatment requirements or total maximum daily load (TMDL) exceedances.
- 3 The scope of disclosure shall only include incidents of non-compliance that resulted in a formal enforcement action(s).
 - 3.1 Formal enforcement actions are defined as governmental recognised actions that address a violation or threatened violation of water quantity or quality laws, regulations, policies or orders, and can result in administrative penalty orders, administrative orders and judicial actions, among others.
- 4 Violations shall be disclosed, regardless of their measurement methodology or frequency. These include violations for:
 - 4.1 Continuous discharges, limitations, standards and prohibitions that are

generally expressed as maximum daily, weekly and monthly averages; and

- 4.2 Non-continuous discharges, limitations that are generally expressed in terms of frequency, total mass, maximum rate of discharge and mass or concentration of specified pollutants.

Lifecycle Emissions Balance

Topic Summary

The rapid growth in global biofuels production has been encouraged by government energy policies that seek to reduce net GHG emissions from transportation fuels and dependence on fossil fuels. Most major renewable-fuel policies worldwide require that biofuels achieve lifecycle GHG emissions reductions relative to a fossil-fuel baseline to qualify for renewable fuel-mandate thresholds. The biofuel lifecycle emission calculation may include indirect and direct emissions from feedstock crop production and land use, fuel refining, fuel and feedstock transport, and vehicle exhaust emissions. Biofuel producers may influence net emissions directly during the refining process through energy management (fuel use), process innovations and by using feedstocks with lower emissions profiles. Fuel products that achieve a reduction in net emissions may qualify as advanced biofuels, which could increase future demand. Biofuel entities that cost-effectively reduce product net carbon emissions may gain a competitive product advantage, spur revenue growth and increase market share.

Metrics

RR-BI-410a.1. Lifecycle greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, by biofuel type

- 1 The entity shall disclose its lifecycle GHG emissions (in grammes of CO₂-e per megajoule) for each biofuel category produced.
 - 1.1 Lifecycle GHG emissions are defined as the aggregate quantity of GHG emissions (including direct emissions and significant indirect emissions, such as significant emissions from land-use changes) related to the full fuel lifecycle, including all stages of fuel and feedstock production and distribution, from feedstock generation or extraction through the distribution and delivery of the finished fuel, to the ultimate consumer and fuel use, in which the mass values for all GHGs are adjusted to account for their relative global warming potential.
 - 1.2 The entity shall disclose its lifecycle GHG emissions for each of the following biofuel types produced: (1) renewable fuel, (2) advanced biofuel, (3) biodiesel and (4) cellulosic biofuel.
 - 1.2.1 Renewable fuel is defined as fuel derived from biomass.
 - 1.2.2 Advanced biofuel is defined as fuel derived from algae, animal manure, corn cobs, grape marcs and wine lees, nut shells, husk wastes and residues from forestry and forest-based industries, used cooking oil, etc.
 - 1.2.3 Biodiesel is defined as fuel derived from oils such as rapeseeds, sunflowers, soybeans, palm oil and waste cooking oil, and used in place of diesel fuel.
 - 1.2.4 Cellulosic biofuel is defined as fuel derived from material composed of lignin, cellulose, hemicellulose such as biomass sourced from forests,

woody energy crops, straw, stover, husks, grasses and cover crops.

- 2 The entity shall disclose the applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations used for calculation.

Sourcing & Environmental Impacts of Feedstock Production

Topic Summary

The Biofuels industry uses a variety of plant-based feedstocks for production. Most entities purchase feedstocks from agricultural producers and distributors. A growing proportion of the world's arable land now is occupied by biofuel crops. Unsustainable cultivation practices can have negative environmental externalities, including deforestation and biodiversity loss, soil degradation, and water pollution. These factors may affect feedstock crop yields adversely over the short- and long-term. This, in turn, may influence the price and availability of feedstocks for biofuels producers. Consequently, vetting the sustainability of supply chains, such as through certifications or engagement with suppliers, is an important consideration for biofuels producers.

Metrics

RR-BI-430a.1. Discussion of strategy to manage risks associated with environmental impacts of feedstock production

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategy to manage the environmental impacts and regulatory risks associated with feedstock production, where risks may include:
 - 1.1 Risks to feedstock supply and pricing created by climate change impacts such as the increased likelihood of extreme weather events, decreased availability of clean water resources, increased competition for arable land, and decreased crop yields because of temperature increases.
 - 1.2 Long-term risks to feedstock supply associated with suppliers' impacts on environmental health including those on biodiversity and soil health that may be because of monoculture practices or fertiliser and pesticide use.
 - 1.3 Constraints created by regulation such as compliance with sustainability criteria in renewable fuel mandates; potential regulatory limits on the types of land where feedstock can be grown; potential limits on what qualifies as renewable biomass; potential for reduction or loss of public or political support for biofuel mandates because of the environmental impacts of feedstock production; and resistance to the use of genetically modified organisms (GMOs).
- 2 The disclosure scope excludes risks associated with the lifecycle GHG emissions, which are addressed in RR-BI-410a.1, respectively.
- 3 If the entity identifies the availability of clean water resources as a risk to feedstock supply or pricing, it shall discuss the vulnerability to feedstock growing regions with water stress and how it manages price variability risk because of sourcing feedstock from these regions.

3.1 The entity should identify its known sources of feedstock from growing regions with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress using the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

4 The entity shall describe how it manages risks or opportunities associated with feedstock production, including constraints created by regulation, and limits on availability and price.

4.1 Relevant strategies to discuss include sourcing from feedstock producers that are third-party certified to environmental sustainability standards, diversification of suppliers, using feedstock procurement criteria to choose suppliers for varied feedstocks with fewer environmental impacts or greater adaptability to the effects of environmental externalities (for example, drought-tolerant or disease-resistant feedstocks), supplier audits, sourcing from regions where the entity has greater control over feedstock sources, and expenditures on research and development (R&D) for alternative and substitute feedstocks that are less susceptible to environmental externalities.

4.2 The entity should disclose the sustainability criteria it uses to assess its feedstock suppliers.

RR-BI-430a.2. Percentage of biofuel production third-party certified to an environmental sustainability standard

1 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the volume of biofuel produced that is third-party certified to an environmental sustainability standard divided by the total volume of biofuel produced.

2 Environmental sustainability standards include Bonsucro, the Council on Sustainable Biomass Production (CSBP), International Sustainability & Carbon Certification, Roundtable on Sustainable Biomaterials (RSB), and Roundtable on Responsible Soy (RTRS), as well as other standards with equivalent criteria.

2.1 At a minimum, standards should include the following environmental sustainability topics:

2.1.1 GHG and other air emissions, water consumption and quality, soil health, fertiliser and pesticide use, land-use change, biodiversity and waste management.

3 The entity should disclose the certification schemes to which its biofuel is certified and the percentage of production certified to each scheme.

Management of the Legal & Regulatory Environment

Topic Summary

The Biofuels industry is dependent on government policies and regulations that create market demand and incentivise supply with tax breaks and other support for feedstock production. The Biofuels industry supports some regulations and policies related to renewable fuel policy, production tax credits and feedstock production. While regulatory support can result in positive short-term gains by supporting the biofuels market, the potential long-term adverse

environmental impacts from feedstock and biofuels production may result in a reversal of beneficial policies, leading to a more uncertain regulatory environment. Consequently, biofuels entities may benefit from developing clear strategies for engaging regulators that are aligned with long-term sustainable business outcomes and that account for environmental externalities.

Metrics

RR-BI-530a.1. Amount of subsidies received through government programmes

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of subsidies received through government programmes during the reporting year. Subsidies include tax credits such as blending and production tax credits, funding for projects such as research and development, import tariffs, direct payments, capital grants, loans and loan guarantees and any other monetary support received from government departments or programmes.
- 2 Government programmes include those worldwide at all jurisdictional levels.
- 3 The entity may disclose the type of biofuel subsidies received and the amount of each. Types of biofuel subsidies may include blending and production tax credits, capital grants, direct payments, loans and loan guarantees, surcharges or tariffs on competing products, and funding for projects such as research and development.
- 4 The entity shall disclose the amount of subsidies as an aggregate amount that was recognised during the reporting year, regardless of the accounting method (for example, deferral method, flow-through method or other GAAP methods for investment tax credits).

RR-BI-530a.2. Discussion of corporate positions related to government regulations or policy proposals that address environmental and social factors affecting the industry

- 1 The entity shall identify risks and opportunities it faces related to laws, regulations or rulemaking, (hereafter referred to collectively as 'legal and regulatory environment') related to environmental and social factors that may have a significant financial impact.
 - 1.1 The scope shall include existing, emerging and known future risks and opportunities.
 - 1.2 The scope shall include risks and opportunities that may exist domestically and globally.
 - 1.3 The regulatory environment related to material environmental and social factors includes those related to non-greenhouse gas air emissions, greenhouse gas emissions, water withdrawals and effluents, feedstock sourcing, and process and employee safety.
- 2 Relevant risks may include increased compliance costs, policy reversal (for example, changes to existing environmental regulations), loss of financial incentives (for example, reduction or elimination of tax deductions), reputation (for example, the entity's stance and actions related to the legal and regulatory environment), legal and regulatory environment misalignment with long-term strategy, and misalignment with the expectations of customers, investors and other stakeholders.

- 3 Relevant opportunities may include improved financial conditions (for example, through policies that incentivise biofuel manufacturing activities), improved community relations (for example, the entity's stance and actions related to the legal and regulatory environment), and other benefits the entity realises from the alignment of the legal and regulatory environment with long-term strategy.
- 4 The entity shall discuss its efforts to manage risks and opportunities associated with each aspect of the legal and regulatory environment associated with the topics included in this Standard that are relevant to the entity's business and may have a significant financial impact.
- 5 In addition to efforts to influence the legal and regulatory environment, the entity shall discuss its overall strategy to manage identified risks and opportunities associated with each aspect of the legal and regulatory environment.
 - 5.1 Any changes it has made or plans to make to its business structure or model
 - 5.2 The development of new technologies or services
 - 5.3 Any changes made or plans to make to operational processes, control or organisational structures

Volume 41—Forestry Management

Industry Description

Forestry Management industry entities own or manage natural and planted forestry lands and timber tracts or operate non-retail tree nurseries and rubber plantations. The industry conducts operations on lands that can be entity-owned or leased from public or private landowners. Entities typically sell timber to wood products manufacturers, pulp and paper producers, energy producers, and a variety of other customers. Although some integrated entities also may operate sawmills, wood products facilities, or pulp and paper facilities, sustainability issues arising from these activities are addressed in the Building Products & Furnishings (CG-BP) and Pulp & Paper Products (RR-PP) industries.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Ecosystem Services & Impacts	Area of forestland certified to a third-party forest management standard, percentage certified to each standard ⁶⁷	Quantitative	Hectares, Percentage (%)	RR-FM-160a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Climate Change Adaptation	Area of forestland with protected conservation status	Quantitative	Hectares	RR-FM-160a.2
	Area of forestland in endangered species habitat	Quantitative	Hectares	RR-FM-160a.3
	Description of approach to optimising opportunities from ecosystem services provided by forestlands	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-FM-160a.4
	Description of strategy to manage opportunities for and risks to forest management and timber production presented by climate change	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-FM-450a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Area of forestland owned, leased, and/or managed by the entity	Quantitative	Hectares	RR-FM-000.A
Aggregate standing timber inventory ⁶⁸	Quantitative	Cubic metres (m ³)	RR-FM-000.B
Timber harvest volume ⁶⁹	Quantitative	Cubic metres (m ³)	RR-FM-000.C

Ecosystem Services & Impacts

Topic Summary

Along with their timber output, forests provide valuable ecosystem services including carbon sequestration, wildlife habitat, water purification and storage, soil formation, and recreational opportunities. Meanwhile, in many regions, regulations related to water quality and endangered species protection, as well as harvesting rights that are contingent upon environmental preservation, may create operational risks for entities. As such, protecting or enhancing ecosystem services within managed forestlands could mitigate reputational, demand and

operational risks related to the potential adverse environmental impacts of forestry. Entities increasingly use third-party certification to show sustainable forestry management practices that serve to enhance forest asset value and productivity, as well as to meet rising consumer demand for sustainably produced forest products.

Metrics

RR-FM-160a.1. Area of forestland certified to a third-party forest management standard, percentage certified to each standard

- 1 The entity shall disclose its total forestland area, in acres, certified to a third-party forest management standard, where:
 - 1.1 The scope includes forestlands owned, leased or managed by the entity.
 - 1.2 Third-party forest management standards certify entities harvest forests in a sustainable manner based on environmental and social criteria including legal compliance, land rights, community and worker relations, environmental impact and biodiversity, forest management plans and practices, land use, wildlife habitat conservation, and water conservation, among others.
 - 1.3 Third-party forest management certifications may include those promoted by the following organisations (or the equivalent):
 - 1.3.1 American Tree Farm System (ATFS)
 - 1.3.2 Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)
 - 1.3.3 Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification (PEFC)
 - 1.3.4 Forest certification systems endorsed by the PEFC
 - 1.3.5 Sustainable Forest Initiative (SFI)
- 2 If a forestland area is certified to more than one certification standard, the entity shall not account for the acreage more than once when calculating the total forestland area certified to a third-party forest management standard.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of the total certified forestland certified to each forest management standard (for example, FSC, SFI, PEFC and ATFS) and show the associated certification(s) (for example, FSC Forest Management Certification, SFI Forest Management Standard, PEFC Sustainable Forest Management certification or ATFS Individual Third-Party certification).
 - 3.1 The entity shall calculate the percentage of forestland certified to each forest management standard as the number of acres third-party certified to the respective standard divided by the total number of certified acres owned, leased or managed by the entity.
- 4 The entity shall disclose the percentage of acres certified to more than one certification scheme.

Note to **RR-FM-160a.1**

- 1 The entity shall provide a brief description of its forestry management practices implemented for non-certified forestlands owned, leased or managed by the entity.
- 2 The entity may discuss:
 - 2.1 The topics and criteria addressed by the practices(s), such as: forest productivity and health, protection from ecological and biodiversity impacts, protection of water resources, noise impacts, discharges to water, protection of special sites, plantation farming, harvesting techniques, use of monocultures, use of genetically modified organisms (GMOs), chemical usage, community involvement, indigenous communities, and aesthetics and recreation, among others
 - 2.2 How the entity enforces the sustainable forestry management plans in its non-certified forestlands, including the type and frequency of inspections
 - 2.3 The underlying references for its forestry management plan(s) for non-certified forestlands, including the degree to which its forest management practices are aligned with criteria outlined in third-party sustainable forestry management standards and ASTM D7480, *Guide for Evaluating the Attributes of a Forest Management Plan*; whether these references are codes, guidelines, standards or regulations; and whether they were developed by the entity, an industry, organisation, a third-party organisation (for example, a non-governmental organisation), a governmental agency or some combination of these groups
- 3 If policies and practices to ensure sustainable forest management vary significantly by forestland, the entity shall describe variations for each non-certified forestland and disclose the percentage of acres to which they were applied.
- 4 The entity shall disclose whether any forest management certifications were involuntarily suspended or terminated during the reporting period (for failure to meet the standard or resolve major non-conformities).
- 5 The entity shall disclose which certification(s) was suspended or terminated, the total acreage of land for which certification was suspended or terminated, the reason stated by the certification body or bodies for why the certification was suspended or terminated, and any other explanatory information about the suspension or termination.
- 6 The entity may discuss any relevant corrective actions taken in response to a certification being suspended or terminated.

RR-FM-160a.2. Area of forestland with protected conservation status

- 1 The entity shall disclose the area of owned, leased or managed forestland (by acreage) that has protected conservation status, where an area is considered to have protected conservation status if it is located within:
 - 1.1 Areas legally designated as protected by government regulation, including national parks, national wildlife refuge sites, wilderness areas, state forests, state parks and areas under conservation easement, as well as sites categorised as such by NatureServe and State Natural Resource Agencies, and

agencies associated with the network of Natural Heritage or Conservation Data Centres, or Natura 2000 sites.

1.1.1 These sites may be listed in the World Database of Protected Areas (WDPA) and mapped on ProtectedPlanet.net.

2 The scope includes areas of conservation status actively managed by or for the entity and excludes areas of conservation status exclusively set aside for conservation and not actively managed.

2.1 The scope includes areas of conservation status that are government-owned and managed by the entity.

3 The entity may disclose the percentage of the area of forestland with protected conservation status certified to a third-party forest management standard.

4 The entity may discuss the likelihood of a change to the area of its owned, leased or managed forestland that is considered to have protected conservation status.

5 The entity may separately identify forestland areas with additional ecological, biodiversity or conservation designations, such as those listed by the A–Z Guide of Areas of Biodiversity Importance prepared by the United Nations Environment Programme's World Conservation Monitoring Centre (UNEP-WCMC).

RR-FM-160a.3. Area of forestland in endangered species habitat

1 The entity shall disclose the area of owned, leased or managed forestland (by acreage) located in endangered species habitat.

2 Forestlands are considered to be an endangered species habitat if a species that is classified by applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations as endangered or threatened inhabits the entity's forestlands.

3 The scope of disclosure includes forestlands owned, leased or managed by the entity.

4 An endangered species is defined as any species that is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range of habitat.

5 A threatened species is defined as any species that is likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range.

6 Endangered species habitats include critical habitat areas where the entity owns, leases or manages forestlands officially designated by applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations providing endangered species lists in the regions where the entity owns, leases or manages forestlands.

7 The entity may disclose the types of endangered or threatened species in its forestlands.

8 The entity shall disclose whether any overlap exists between the areas identified in RR-FM-160a.2 and RR-FM-160a.3.

- 9 The entity may provide discussion around forestlands located in endangered species habitats, but which present low risk to biodiversity or ecosystem services.
- 10 The entity may discuss the likelihood of a change to the area of its owned, leased or managed forestland considered to be an endangered species habitat.
 - 10.1 Discussion may include:
 - 10.1.1 Whether an endangered or threatened species habitat lies near, but not currently in, the entity's forestlands, and whether the habitat(s) could overlap with the entity's forestlands
 - 10.1.2 Whether species in or near the entity's forestlands are classified as endangered or threatened in non-government regulatory lists, but not currently by government regulatory lists, and whether these species may be classified as endangered or threatened by a regulatory endangered species list
 - 10.1.3 Whether the current endangered or threatened species habitat in the entity's forestlands is expected to change or expand in the future
 - 10.2 The entity may disclose the likelihood of these changes occurring and the area of its forestlands that could be affected.

RR-FM-160a.4. Description of approach to optimising opportunities from ecosystem services provided by forestlands

- 1 The entity shall discuss how it optimises the opportunities created by the ecosystem services that its forestlands provide, where:
 - 1.1 Ecosystem services are defined by the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment as the benefits obtained from ecosystems, which include: provisioning services (goods or products obtained from ecosystems), such as food, fresh water, timber and fibre; regulating services (benefits obtained from an ecosystem's control of natural processes), such as climate, erosion and pollination; cultural services (nonmaterial benefits obtained from an ecosystem), such as recreational and spiritual benefits; and supporting services (services that maintain the other ecosystem services), such as nutrient cycling, primary production and water cycling.
 - 1.2 Opportunities from effective ecosystem services management may include higher land value, increased productivity and timber yield, direct payments for timber and non-timber forest products, and improved relationships with stakeholders.
- 2 For ecosystems services for which the entity receives no direct payments, the entity shall describe how it manages these ecosystem services. The discussion shall include:
 - 2.1 The type(s) of ecosystem service(s) the entity manages, where types of ecosystem services may include: air quality, soil stabilisation and erosion control, and cultural value

- 2.2 The entity's management actions, including decisions about harvesting, management of conservation areas or areas of high biodiversity, or conserving forested watershed
- 3 For the ecosystem services for which the entity does receive direct payments, the entity may disclose the amount the entity receives for non-timber ecosystem goods and services and the type of compensation it receives, which may include:
 - 3.1 Public payments to landowners (from the government)
 - 3.2 Voluntary payments to landowners (from businesses, individuals and non-governmental organisations)
 - 3.3 Compliance-driven payments (payments made to comply with government regulations)
- 4 The entity may disclose whether the revenue received from these non-timber or timber ecosystem services may change in the future and the methods or models used to develop these scenarios, including the use of global models or scientific research provided by governmental and non-governmental organisations.
- 5 The entity may discuss how management of non-timber ecosystem services is expected to affect tree growth and timber yield.

Climate Change Adaptation

Topic Summary

Global climate change may create long-term business uncertainty for some forestry management entities. Variations in precipitation patterns and temperatures, more frequent extreme weather events and forest fires, and an increased prevalence of tree diseases and pests may impact timberlands adversely through increased mortality or diminished productivity. Conversely, positively impacting forest productivity, climate change also may facilitate forest productivity through increased atmospheric carbon dioxide, a longer growing season, moderating temperatures in high latitudes, greater precipitation, and expanded geographical ranges for some species. Considering such variability, entities may benefit from identifying and understanding potential long-term impacts of climate change on the productivity of forestlands and from adjusting forestry management strategies to optimise the productivity of their forestland assets.

Metrics

RR-FM-450a.1. Description of strategy to manage opportunities for and risks to forest management and timber production presented by climate change

- 1 The entity shall discuss the risks or opportunities presented by climate scenarios to owned, leased or managed forestlands, including, if relevant, those presented by:
 - 1.1 Physical impacts which may include increased temperatures, changes in growth rates, changes in seasonality, availability of water, pest migration, increased frequency of fires and increased frequency of extreme weather events

- 1.2 Existing and potential legislation and regulation related to climate change, including those that limit emissions, tax emissions, set up cap-and-trade systems, affect the demand for the entity's products or otherwise affect the entity
- 1.3 International accords relating to climate change
- 1.4 Indirect consequences of regulation or business trends, including legal, technological or other developments related to climate change
- 1.5 Other political and social risks, such as increased harvesting restrictions, or stakeholder perceptions or concerns (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies)

2 For each of the risks or opportunities identified, the entity shall provide:

- 2.1 A description of the risk or opportunity, including an explanation and qualitative assessment of current and anticipated (long- and short-term) significant risks or opportunities associated with climate change
 - 2.1.1 Disclosure corresponds to CDSB *Framework for reporting environmental and social information* (CDSB *Framework*) Requirement 03.
- 2.2 Strategic analysis of the long- and short-term impact climate change actually and potentially has on the entity's strategic objectives
 - 2.2.1 Disclosure corresponds to CDSB *Framework* Requirements 02, 05 and 06.
- 2.3 The potential effect (direct or indirect) the risk or opportunity may have on the entity's business, and the projected magnitude of the effect
 - 2.3.1 Where the entity has quantified the potential financial effects of the risk or opportunity (disclosure corresponds to CDSB *Framework* Requirements 03 and 06.)
- 2.4 The time frame in which the risk or opportunity is expected to manifest
 - 2.4.1 Disclosure corresponds to CDSB *Framework* Requirement 03.
- 2.5 The likelihood that the risk or opportunity will manifest
 - 2.5.1 Disclosure corresponds to CDP *Climate Change Questionnaire* CC5.1 and CC6.1.

3 The entity shall discuss how potential climate-related risks or opportunities may vary among the following, and how it prioritises the risks and opportunities identified (disclosure corresponds to CDP *Climate Change Questionnaire* CC2.1c):

- 3.1 The regions where the entity owns, leases or manages forestlands

- 3.2 The entity's products, services or markets
 - 3.3 The types of tree species harvested by the entity
 - 3.4 The entity's plantation forestlands and its natural forestlands
- 4 The entity shall provide a discussion of the scenarios used to determine the risks and opportunities presented by climate change, including:
- 4.1 The methods or models used to develop these scenarios, including the use of global models or scientific research provided by governmental and non-governmental organisations (for example, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change Climate Scenario Process)
- 5 The entity shall discuss its risk management procedures with respect to climate change risks and opportunities, including:
- 5.1 How far into the future risks are considered
 - 5.2 The frequency of monitoring
 - 5.3 The entity's alleviation strategies, which may include: use of insurance; diversification of tree species; actions to strengthen the adaptive capacity of forestlands; strategies to reduce the risk and intensity of pest, disease and fire outbreaks; or plans to reduce risk and intensity of potential damage
 - 5.4 The entity's adaptation strategies, which may include: improving ecosystem management and biodiversity; monitoring changes; developing tolerant tree varieties; and optimising the timing of planting and harvesting
 - 5.5 The costs associated with these actions
 - 5.6 Disclosure corresponds to CDP *Climate Change Questionnaire* CC2.1.

Volume 42—Fuel Cells & Industrial Batteries

Industry Description

Fuel Cells & Industrial Batteries industry entities manufacture fuel cells for energy production and energy storage equipment such as batteries. Manufacturers in this industry mainly sell products to entities for varied energy-generation and energy-storage applications and intensities, from commercial business applications to large-scale energy projects for utilities. Entities in the industry typically have global operations and sell products to a global marketplace.

Note: This industry excludes fuel cells or batteries used in light automotive vehicle applications. See the Auto Parts (TR-AP) industry for reporting this business segment. This industry also excludes non-industrial batteries for personal consumer use, which are classified under the Household & Personal Products (CG-HP) industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	RR-FC-130a.1
	Average storage capacity of batteries, by product application and technology type	Quantitative	Specific energy (Wh/kg)	RR-FC-410a.1
	Average energy efficiency of fuel cells as (1) electrical efficiency and (2) thermal efficiency, by product application and technology type	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	RR-FC-410a.2
Product Efficiency	Average battery efficiency as coulombic efficiency, by product application and technology type	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	RR-FC-410a.3
	Average operating lifetime of fuel cells, by product application and technology type	Quantitative	Hours (h)	RR-FC-410a.4
	Average operating lifetime of batteries, by product application and technology type	Quantitative	Number of cycles	RR-FC-410a.5

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of units sold	Quantitative	Number	RR-FC-000.A
Total storage capacity of batteries sold	Quantitative	Megawatt-hours (MWh)	RR-FC-000.B
Total energy production capacity of fuel cells sold	Quantitative	Megawatt-hours (MWh)	RR-FC-000.C

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Manufacturing in the Fuel Cells & Industrial Batteries industry requires energy to power machines and cooling, ventilation, lighting and product-testing systems. Purchased electricity is a major share of the energy sources used in the industry and accounts for a notable proportion of the total cost of materials and value added. Various sustainability factors are increasing the cost of conventional electricity while making alternative sources cost-competitive. Energy efficiency efforts may have a significant positive impact on operational efficiency and profitability, especially because many entities operate on relatively low or negative margins. By improving manufacturing process efficiency and exploring alternative energy sources, fuel cell and industrial battery entities may reduce both their indirect environmental impacts and their operating expenses.

Metrics

RR-FC-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of

renewable energy.

- 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Product Efficiency

Topic Summary

Both customer demand and regulatory requirements are driving innovation in energy-efficient products with lower environmental impacts and lower total cost of ownership. Therefore, research and development in the Fuel Cells & Industrial Batteries industry that drive energy and thermal efficiency and enhance storage capacities may lower barriers to adoption. Advances in battery technology to increase storage capabilities and improve charging efficiencies, while reducing costs for customers, are critical for the integration of renewable energy technologies into the grid. Pressured by stricter environmental regulations, high energy costs and customer preferences, fuel cell and industrial battery manufacturers that improve efficiency in the use phase may increase revenue and market share.

Metrics

RR-FC-410a.1. Average storage capacity of batteries, by product application and technology type

- 1 The entity shall disclose the average storage capacity of batteries by product application and technology type, weighted by unit sales volume per product application and technology type.
- 1.1 Storage capacity shall be measured as the specific energy, or gravimetric energy density, of batteries, and is calculated as the ratio of nominal energy in watt-hours to the mass of the product in kilogrammes: watt-hours / kilogrammes (Wh/kg).
- 2 The entity shall measure and disclose performance in accordance with the applicable product application or technology type standard(s), and it shall disclose the standard(s) used for performance measurement.

2.1 Applicable standard(s) include SAE J240—Automotive storage batteries and SAE J2185—Heavy-duty storage batteries.

3 The entity shall disclose performance by these application types, if applicable: portable, motive, stationary and 'all other', each further categorised by these technology types, if applicable: lead-based, nickel-based, lithium-based, sodium-based and all other types.

3.1 The entity may include additional categories of application types or technology types if appropriate, including categories for new products with low sales volumes, but strategic importance in terms of product efficiency or other attributes.

RR-FC-410a.2. Average energy efficiency of fuel cells as (1) electrical efficiency and (2) thermal efficiency, by product application and technology type

1 The entity shall disclose the average energy efficiency of fuel cells as (1) electrical efficiency and (2) thermal efficiency, weighted by unit sales volume per product application and technology type.

1.1 Electrical efficiency is calculated as net electricity produced divided by total fuel energy input.

1.2 Thermal efficiency is calculated as net useful power output divided by total fuel energy input.

1.3 The entity shall use lower heating values (LHV) in the calculation of electrical efficiency and thermal efficiency, and it shall disclose the heating values used.

2 The entity shall measure and disclose electrical and thermal efficiency in accordance with standard(s) applicable to the product application or technology type.

2.1 Applicable standard(s) may include: IEC 62282-3-200—Stationary fuel cell power systems and SAE J2615—Testing Performance of Fuel Cell Systems for Automotive Applications.

2.2 The entity shall disclose the standard(s) used for energy efficiency measurements.

3 The entity shall disclose electrical and thermal efficiency by these application types, if applicable: portable, motive, stationary and 'all other', each further categorised by these technology types, if applicable: direct methanol (DMFC), polymer electrolyte (PEM), alkaline (AFC), phosphoric acid (PAFC), molten carbonate (MCFC), solid oxide fuel cell (SOFC) and all other types.

3.1 The entity may include additional categories of application types or technology types if appropriate, including categories for new products with low sales volumes, but strategic importance in terms of product efficiency or other attributes.

4 The entity may disclose any other fuel cell outputs that have economic value (for example, hydrogen), including an appropriate measurement of sales-weighted average

value, by product application and technology type.

RR-FC-410a.3. Average battery efficiency as coulombic efficiency, by product application and technology type

- 1 The entity shall disclose the average energy efficiency of batteries as coulombic efficiency, weighted by unit sales volume per product application and technology type.
 - 1.1 Coulombic efficiency is calculated as energy removed from a battery during discharge divided by the energy used during charging to restore the original capacity.
- 2 The entity shall measure and disclose coulombic efficiency in accordance with standard(s) applicable to the product application or technology type.
 - 2.1 Applicable standard(s) include SAE J240—Automotive storage batteries and SAE J2185—Heavy-duty storage batteries.
- 3 The entity shall disclose coulombic efficiency by these application types, if applicable: portable, motive, stationary and ‘all other’, each further categorised by these technology types, if applicable: lead-based, nickel-based, lithium-based, sodium-based and all other types.
 - 3.1 The entity may include additional categories of application types or technology types if appropriate, including categories for new products with low sales volumes, but strategic importance in terms of product efficiency or other attributes.

RR-FC-410a.4. Average operating lifetime of fuel cells, by product application and technology type

- 1 The entity shall disclose the average operating lifetime of fuel cells, weighted by unit sales volume per product application and technology type.
 - 1.1 Operating lifetime of fuel cells is calculated as operating hours until 20% net power degradation occurs.
- 2 The entity shall measure and disclose operating lifetime in accordance with standard(s) applicable to the product application or technology type.
 - 2.1 Applicable standard(s) may include IEC 62282-3-200—Stationary fuel cell power systems and SAE J2615—Testing Performance of Fuel Cell Systems for Automotive Applications.
- 3 The entity shall disclose operating lifetime by these application types, if applicable: portable, motive, stationary and ‘all other’, each further categorised by these technology types, if applicable: direct methanol (DMFC), polymer electrolyte (PEM), alkaline (AFC), phosphoric acid (PAFC), molten carbonate (MCFC), solid oxide fuel cell (SOFC) and all other types.
 - 3.1 The entity may include additional categories of application types or technology types, if appropriate, including categories for new products with low sales

volumes, but strategic importance in terms of product efficiency or other attributes.

RR-FC-410a.5. Average operating lifetime of batteries, by product application and technology type

- 1 The entity shall disclose the average operating lifetime of batteries, weighted by unit sales volume per product application and technology type.
 - 1.1 The operating lifetime of batteries is calculated as the number of times the battery can be fully charged and discharged, or 'cycles', until 20% capacity degradation occurs.
- 2 The entity shall measure and disclose operating lifetime in accordance with standard(s) applicable to the product application or technology type.
 - 2.1 Applicable standard(s) include SAE J240—Automotive storage batteries and SAE J2185—Heavy-duty storage batteries.
- 3 The entity shall disclose performance by these application types, if applicable: portable, motive, stationary and 'all other', each further categorised by these technology types, if applicable: lead-based, nickel-based, lithium-based, sodium-based and all other types.
 - 3.1 The entity may include additional categories of application types or technology types if appropriate, including categories for new products with low sales volumes, but strategic importance in terms of product efficiency or other attributes.

Volume 43—Pulp & Paper Products

Industry Description

Pulp & Paper Products industry entities manufacture a range of wood pulp and paper products, including pulp fibre, paper packaging and sanitary paper, office paper, newsprint, and paper for industrial applications. Entities in the industry typically function as business-to-business entities and may have operations in multiple countries. Although some integrated entities own or manage timber tracts and are engaged in forest management, sustainability issues arising from these activities are addressed in the Forestry Management (RR-FM) industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas	Gross global Scope 1 emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	RR-PP-110a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Emissions	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-PP-110a.2
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity, (3) percentage from biomass, (4) percentage from other renewable energy and (5) total self-generated energy ⁷⁰	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	RR-PP-130a.1
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	RR-PP-140a.1
Water Management	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-PP-140a.2
Supply Chain Management	Percentage of wood fibre sourced from (1) third-party certified forestlands and percentage to each standard and (2) meeting other fibre sourcing standards and percentage to each standard ⁷¹	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by weight	RR-PP-430a.1
Supply Chain Management	Amount of recycled and recovered fibre procured ⁷²	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	RR-PP-430a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Pulp production	Quantitative	Air-dried metric tons (t)	RR-PP-000.A
Paper production	Quantitative	Air-dried metric tons (t)	RR-PP-000.B
Total wood fibre sourced ⁷³	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	RR-PP-000.C

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

The manufacturing of pulp and paper products generates direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions associated with the combustion of fossil fuels and biomass in stationary and mobile engines, cogeneration boilers, and other processing equipment. Entities in this industry also typically use significant amounts of carbon-neutral biomass for their energy needs, the use of which may reduce the costs associated with purchasing fossil fuels, as well as mitigate regulatory risk associated with carbon emissions. Emissions associated with fossil fuel sources may add regulatory compliance costs, depending on the magnitude of emissions and the prevailing emissions regulations. Entities that cost-effectively manage GHG emissions through greater energy efficiency, alternative fuels use or manufacturing process improvements may benefit from improved operating efficiency and reduced regulatory compliance costs.

Metrics

RR-PP-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.

- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.
- 3 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

RR-PP-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Pulp and paper products manufacturing is energy-intensive. In most facilities, entities generate energy primarily from the combustion of biomass and fossil fuels, although purchased electricity also may be used in some facilities. Decisions regarding on-site electricity generation versus sourcing it from the grid, as well as the use of biomass and other renewable energy, may create trade-offs related to the energy supply's cost and reliability for operations and the extent of the regulatory risk from Scope 1 or other air emissions. The way an entity manages energy efficiency, its reliance on varied types of energy and the associated sustainability risks, and its access to alternative energy sources, may mitigate the effects of energy cost variability.

Metrics

RR-PP-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity, (3) percentage from biomass, (4) percentage from other renewable energy and (5) total self-generated energy

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from sources external to the entity and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel use, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy consumed that was supplied by biomass.
 - 3.1 The percentage shall be calculated as biomass energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to:
 - 4.1 Energy from biomass sources that meets at least one of the following criteria:
 - 4.1.1 Certification to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement

of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System)

4.1.2 Classification as an 'eligible renewable' according to the Green-e Energy National Standard Version 2.5 (2014)

4.1.3 Eligibility for a jurisdictional Renewable Portfolio Standard

- 5 The entity shall disclose (4) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy, excluding biomass energy.
 - 5.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 5.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 5.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 5.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 5.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 5.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
- 6 The entity shall disclose (5) the amount of energy self-generated by the entity as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 6.1 The entity may disclose the amount of self-generated energy sold to an electric utility or end-use customer.
 - 6.2 The entity may disclose the amount of self-generated energy that was renewable energy, where renewable energy is defined above.
- 7 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion

of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Note to **RR-PP-130a.1**

- 1 The entity shall describe risks and uncertainties associated with the use of biomass as an energy source, and it shall describe how it manages those risks.
- 2 Risks and uncertainties associated with the use of biomass as an energy source may include:
 - 2.1 Risks from air emissions (such as oxides of nitrogen and sulphur), including costs to comply with emissions restrictions and reputational damage resulting from violations.
 - 2.2 Regulatory risks, including financial effects associated with compliance with potential biogenic carbon dioxide regulations, or reputational impacts associated with biomass failing to meet the definition of eligible renewable energy in a jurisdictional Renewable Portfolio Standard.
 - 2.3 Sourcing risks, including reputational risks associated with a lack of transparency about whether purchased biomass was sustainably harvested.

Water Management

Topic Summary

Pulp and paper products manufacturing is typically water-intensive in materials processing, process cooling and steam generation at on-site energy plants. Entities require ample, stable water supplies and may produce large volumes of wastewater, the majority of which is treated and returned to the environment. Process water typically contains dissolved organic compounds and other solids, underscoring the importance of water treatment. In addition to water effluents, water availability is an important consideration because water scarcity may result in higher supply costs, supply disruptions or tension with local water users. Entities may adopt various strategies to address water supply and treatment issues, such as cost-effectively enhancing the recycling of process water, improving production techniques to lower water intensity, and ensuring compliance with water-effluent regulations.

Metrics

RR-PP-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.

- 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
- 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.

3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.

3.1 Water consumption is defined as:

- 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
- 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
- 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea

4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.

6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

RR-PP-140a.2. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.

1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:

- 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
- 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and

constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits

1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).

2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:

- 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
- 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.

3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.

- 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.

4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:

- 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
- 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
- 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:

- 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
- 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
- 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations
- 5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

- 6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

Supply Chain Management

Topic Summary

Pulp and paper products entities source wood and wood fibre from forestry management entities, paper fibre recyclers and forests that the entities themselves manage. Supply chain risks include decreased productivity of forestlands because of management practices or climate change, regulations addressing sustainable forest management, and reputational effects. To mitigate such risks and satisfy growing customer demand for sustainably sourced fibre and paper products, manufacturers implement forest certification and fibre chain-of-custody standards which verify that virgin and recycled fibre originate from sustainably managed forests. In addition, pulp and paper manufacturers may face trade-offs from the use of recovered fibre. Products with recycled content are increasingly in demand, providing a possible avenue for product differentiation, while using recycled fibre can minimise the need for virgin fibre. Conversely, manufacturing products with a greater recycled content may increase waste generation and energy consumption, while recycled fibre can be costlier, given

demand–supply gaps. Therefore, entities may benefit by optimising recycled fibre use to balance its environmental and economic trade-offs.

Metrics

RR-PP-430a.1. Percentage of wood fibre sourced from (1) third-party certified forestlands and percentage to each standard and (2) meeting other fibre sourcing standards and percentage to each standard

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of total wood-fibre-based materials sourced from forestlands certified to forest management standards, where:
 - 1.1 Third-party forest management standards are those certifying forests are harvested in a sustainable manner and ensure adherence to environmental and social criteria including legal compliance, land rights, community and worker relations, environmental impact and biodiversity, forest management plans and practices, land use, wildlife habitat conservation, and water conservation, among others.
 - 1.2 Third-party forest management certifications may include those promoted by the following organisations (or the equivalent):
 - 1.2.1 American Tree Farm System (ATFS) (ATFS Certification)
 - 1.2.2 Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) (FSC Forest Management and Chain of Custody certifications)
 - 1.2.3 Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification (PEFC) (PEFC Chain of Custody certifications)
 - 1.2.4 Forest certification systems endorsed by the PEFC
 - 1.2.5 Sustainable Forest Initiative (SFI) (SFI Forest Management and Chain of Custody certifications)
 - 1.3 The scope of wood-fibre-based materials includes all inputs processed to be sold as a finished good, including recycled raw materials, virgin raw materials, and goods consumed directly in the production process and excluding biomass for energy.
- 2 The percentage of wood-fibre-based materials from third-party certified forestlands shall be calculated as the total weight (in air dried metric tons) of the entity's wood-fibre-based materials sourced from third-party certified forestlands divided by the total weight (in air dried metric tons) of wood-fibre-based materials sourced.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of the total wood-fibre-based materials from third-party certified forestlands certified to each standard (for example, FSC Chain of Custody, PEFC Chain of Custody and SFI Chain of Custody).
 - 3.1 The entity shall calculate the percentage of wood-fibre-based materials certified to each standard as the amount of wood-fibre-based materials third-party certified to the respective standard divided by the total amount of wood fibre sourced by the entity.

3.2 If wood-fibre is certified to multiple third-party certifications, the entity shall include the amount of such fibre in its calculations for each relevant certification.

4 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its total wood-fibre-based materials sourced from non-third-party certified forestlands but meets other fibre sourcing standards, including:

4.1 Responsible fibre sourcing standards (for example, SFI Fibre Sourcing Standard)

4.2 Controlled wood standards (for example, FSC Controlled Wood Certification and PEFC Controlled Wood)

4.3 Recycled fibre standards that include post- and pre-consumer reclaimed material (for example, PEFC Controlled Sources, FSC Recycled Label and SFI Recycled Label)

4.4 Any other due diligence standards that cover sourcing requirements for fibre from non-certified forestlands

5 For fibre from non-certified forestlands that meets multiple fibre sourcing standards, the entity shall not account for the weight more than once when calculating the total percentage of fibre from non-certified forestlands that meets other fibre sourcing standards.

6 The entity shall disclose the percentage of wood fibre that meets each sourcing standard (for example, FSC Controlled Wood, SFI Fibre Sourcing Standard and PEFC Controlled Sources).

6.1 If wood fibre meets multiple sourcing standards, the entity shall include the amount of such fibre in its calculations for each relevant sourcing standard.

Note to **RR-PP-430a.1**

1 The entity shall discuss its due diligence practices for fibre that is not from certified forestlands or certified to other fibre sourcing standards and its policies to verify the forestry management and harvesting practices of suppliers, which may include codes of conduct, audits or contracts, among others.

2 The entity shall disclose how it verifies that its non-certified fibre includes criteria for the following:

2.1 Wood legality

2.2 Wood sourced from areas of protected conservation status or high biodiversity value

2.3 Logging in or near areas of endangered species habitat

2.4 Logging in or near areas of indigenous peoples' land

2.5 The forestry management and harvesting practices of suppliers, including

reviews of environmental impact assessments or forestry management plans

- 2.6 The use of genetically modified organisms (GMOs), pesticides or other chemicals in forests
- 2.7 Criteria outlined in the definition of SFI 'controversial sources', the definition of FSC 'controlled wood', or the equivalent

- 3 The entity also may disclose the sources of its wood fibre (for example, from corporate, private or federally owned forestlands and whether fibre is grown domestically or internationally) and the potential risks associated with procuring fibre from these sources.

RR-PP-430a.2. Amount of recycled and recovered fibre procured

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of recycled and recovered fibre procured in metric tons from suppliers as well as recycled and recovered fibre obtained directly through collection programmes.
- 2 Recycled content is defined, consistent with definitions in ISO 14021:1999, 'Environmental labels and declarations—Self-declared environmental claims (Type II environmental labelling)', as the portion, by mass, of recycled or recovered material in a product or packaging, where only pre-consumer and post-consumer materials shall be considered as recycled content, and where:
 - 2.1 Recycled material is defined as material reprocessed from recovered (or reclaimed) material by means of a manufacturing process and made into a final product or a component for incorporation into a product.
 - 2.2 Recovered material is defined as material that would have otherwise been discarded as waste or used for energy recovery, but it has instead been collected and recovered (or reclaimed) as a material input, in lieu of new primary material, for a recycling or manufacturing process.
 - 2.3 Pre-consumer material is defined as material diverted from the waste stream during a manufacturing process. Excluded is the reuse of materials such as rework, regrind or scrap generated in a process and capable of being reclaimed within the same process that generated them.
 - 2.4 Post-consumer material is defined as material generated by households or by commercial, industrial and institutional facilities in their role as end-users of a product that can no longer be used for its intended purpose. This includes returns of material from the distribution chain.
 - 2.5 Fibre shall be considered recycled or recovered if it meets the SFI definition of recycled content, the FSC definition of reclaimed material, or the PEFC definition of recycled wood and fibres.

Note to RR-PP-430a.2

- 1 The entity shall discuss how it incorporates environmental lifecycle analyses into decisions to source recycled and recovered fibre versus virgin fibre.

- 1.1 An environmental lifecycle trade-off is defined as an environmental benefit or consequence of choosing to source one type of fibre over another.
 - 1.1.1 Environmental lifecycle benefits from using recycled and recovered fibre may include reducing the need for deforestation, reducing GHG emissions from paper in landfills and reducing landfill waste.
 - 1.1.2 Environmental lifecycle consequences of using recycled and recovered fibre can include increased resource consumption and generation of air emissions during the transportation and processing of fibre.
- 2 The entity shall discuss how lifecycle trade-off assessments are incorporated into its fibre sourcing decisions, including how the following risks and opportunities are managed:
 - 2.1 Costs of recycled and recovered materials
 - 2.2 Constraints related to accessing the necessary supply of recycled and recovered fibre
 - 2.3 Recycling infrastructure needed by the entity or external paper collection facilities
 - 2.4 Consumer behaviour to improve recovery of paper for recycling
 - 2.5 Virgin wood fibre sourcing risks
 - 2.6 Improving paper recovery rates
 - 2.7 Regulation related to consumer recycling or minimum recycled content usage
 - 2.8 Quality of fibre needed for products and the intended use of fibre for product segments
 - 2.9 Product innovation opportunities
 - 2.10 Increased revenue and reputational benefits related to products with recycled or recovered content
- 3 The entity may disclose a breakdown of its recycled and recovered fibre use by product segment.

Volume 44—Solar Technology & Project Developers

Industry Description

Solar Technology & Project Developers industry entities manufacture solar energy equipment, including solar photovoltaic (PV) modules, polysilicon feedstock, solar thermal electricity-generation systems, solar inverters and other related components. Entities also may develop, build and manage solar energy projects and offer financing or maintenance services to customers. The industry uses two primary technologies: PV and concentrated solar power

(CSP). Within solar PV, two main technologies exist: crystalline silicon-based solar and thin-film solar, which includes panels made using copper indium gallium selenide and cadmium telluride. The primary markets for solar panels are residential, non-residential (commercial and industrial) and utility-scale projects. Entities in the industry operate globally.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management in Manufacturing	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	RR-ST-130a.1
Water Management in Manufacturing	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	RR-ST-140a.1
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-ST-140a.2
Management of Energy Infrastructure Integration & Related Regulations	Description of risks associated with integration of solar energy into existing energy infrastructure and discussion of efforts to manage those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-ST-410a.1
	Description of risks and opportunities associated with energy policy and its effect on the integration of solar energy into existing energy infrastructure	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-ST-410a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Total capacity of photovoltaic (PV) solar modules produced	Quantitative	Megawatts (MW)	RR-ST-000.A
Total capacity of completed solar energy systems ⁷⁴	Quantitative	Megawatts (MW)	RR-ST-000.B
Total project development assets ⁷⁵	Quantitative	Presentation currency	RR-ST-000.C

Energy Management in Manufacturing

Topic Summary

Solar panel manufacturing typically uses electrical energy purchased from the grid. Energy can account for a considerable share of the total cost of production. Considering rising energy costs and regulatory uncertainty surrounding the future of fossil-based energy, entities that diversify their energy sources may manage the associated risks and maintain a reliable energy supply more effectively. Entities that minimise energy use through effective energy management may reduce costs and gain a competitive advantage through operational efficiency and competitive pricing of products. Competitively priced products are particularly important given the intense price competition within the solar technology industry.

RR-ST-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).

- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.

- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
 - 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management in Manufacturing

Topic Summary

Solar photovoltaic panel manufacturing can be water-intensive, and ultra-pure water is a critical input in some processes. The manufacturing process also may generate wastewater, which must be treated before disposal or reuse, and therefore may result in incremental operating costs and capital expenditures. Furthermore, depending on the location, solar equipment manufacturing facilities may face water scarcity and related cost increases or operational disruptions. Water resource use may generate tension with local water users and associated risks, potentially disrupting manufacturing operations and adversely affecting brand value. To mitigate water supply and treatment risks, entities may adopt various strategies such as recycling process water, improving production techniques to lower water intensity, and improving water treatment systems.

RR-ST-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic meters, that was withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes, and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities, or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic meters, that was consumed in its operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea.

- 4 The entity shall analyze all of its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80 percent) or Extremely High (>80 percent) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, **Aqueduct**.
- 5 The entity shall disclose its water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose its water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

RR-ST-140a.2. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits
 - 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
 - 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
 - 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.

- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.
- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:
 - 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
 - 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
 - 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
 - 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
 - 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
 - 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and
 - 5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations

5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

Management of Energy Infrastructure Integration & Related Regulations

Topic Summary

Entities in the industry have faced challenges in establishing solar energy as a cost-competitive means of energy production and GHG reduction, and they have encountered difficulty in capturing a greater market share of global energy generation. To promote greater adoption of solar, the industry may benefit by preventing systemic disruptions to the existing energy infrastructure and essential energy services. Entities are innovating to overcome the technical challenges of increasing solar integration with the grid. They also are engaging regulatory agencies and policymakers to reduce regulatory barriers to solar energy adoption, many of which are emerging because of concerns regarding increasing overall grid electricity costs and grid disruptions. Solar entities are investing in innovative technologies to reduce hardware and installation costs, and they are pursuing business-model innovation to reduce the cost of capital and facilitate the purchase of solar energy systems. Solar technology entities may improve their competitiveness through deploying one or more of these strategies successfully to ensure their ability to scale over the long term.

RR-ST-410a.1. Description of risks associated with integration of solar energy into existing energy infrastructure and discussion of efforts to manage those risks

1 The entity shall describe risks, challenges and barriers surrounding the integration of solar energy into the existing energy infrastructure in terms of its products and services.

1.1 Relevant information to provide may include:

- 1.1.1 Technological barriers to increased integration of solar energy, such as limited transmission network connectivity, lack of access to high-capacity transmission networks, variability in interconnection standards, and inverter interconnection requirements
- 1.1.2 Operational barriers to increased integration of solar energy, such as curtailment and challenges associated with the variable nature of solar energy
- 1.1.3 Customer motivations for seeking increased solar energy integration, such as economic advantages, regulatory compliance, risk mitigation, and public perception or reputational risk

2 The entity shall discuss its strategy and approach to design, development and sales to integrate solar energy into the existing energy infrastructure.

- 2.1 Relevant strategies and approaches may include:
 - 2.1.1 Technical product design
 - 2.1.2 New product or product components development (for example, smart inverters)
 - 2.1.3 Technical innovation to reduce the cost of solar energy modules or systems
 - 2.1.4 Third-party partnerships and product integrations
 - 2.1.5 Project design (for example, project siting in regions with reduced curtailment risk)
 - 2.1.6 Project risk transfer (for example, power purchase agreements (PPAs) with curtailment caps)
 - 2.1.7 Marketing and sales (for example, focus on regions or customer segments with less grid integration risk)
 - 2.1.8 Incorporating energy storage technology or 'smart grid' technology into solar energy systems, whether through proprietary technological development or collaboration with third parties
 - 2.1.9 Products designed to operate 'off-grid' or as part of 'micro-grids'
 - 2.1.10 Innovation that decreases solar energy's levelised cost of energy (LCOE) through the reduction in 'soft costs', including financing, leasing, customer acquisition and development costs
 - 2.1.11 Innovation that increases the total addressable solar energy market
- 2.2 Relevant information to provide includes:
 - 2.2.1 Whether the entity pursues more than one approach
 - 2.2.2 Whether the entity's approach varies by market
 - 2.2.3 The intensity of R&D requirements for the entity's approach and strategy
 - 2.2.4 The level of competition relative to the entity's approach and strategy
 - 2.2.5 How the entity evaluates the success of its approach

3 The scope of disclosure shall include all the entity's solar energy-related products, product components, projects, project development efforts and services, as well as the associated marketing and sales strategies, in the markets in which the entity operates.

4 The entity may describe how energy infrastructure influences the establishment of sales targets, strategies for specific product categories, technologies or marketing practices in specific regions, research and development (R&D) objectives, and partnerships.

RR-ST-410a.2. Description of risks and opportunities associated with energy policy and its effect on the integration of solar energy into existing energy infrastructure

- 1 The entity shall discuss the risks and opportunities associated with energy policy and the effect energy policy has on solar energy integration into existing energy infrastructure, in which:
 - 1.1 Relevant risks and opportunities may include:
 - 1.1.1 Direct or indirect government subsidization of solar energy
 - 1.1.2 International trade policy disputes and agreements
 - 1.1.3 Public policies that set out minimum requirements for renewable energy generation (for example, renewable portfolio standards)
 - 1.1.4 Public policies that affect the monetisation of solar energy generation, which may include net metering, time-of-use rates, feed-in tariffs, utility fixed fees and renewable energy priority dispatch
 - 1.1.5 Public policies that affect the financing and tax structure of solar energy, which may include investment tax credits, property-assessed clean energy, loan guarantees and depreciation schedules
 - 1.1.6 Public policies pertaining to any external social costs created by distributed solar energy generation
 - 1.1.7 Policies pertaining to electricity transmission, which may include regional transmission planning, interconnected transmission networks, interconnection standards and high-capacity transmission networks
 - 1.1.8 Replacements to ageing energy generation and transmission infrastructure

- 2 The entity shall identify the risks and opportunities related to legislation, regulation, rule-making and the overall political environment (hereafter referred to collectively as 'regulatory and political environment') regarding energy policy and the integration of solar energy into energy infrastructure.
 - 2.1 The scope shall include existing, emerging and known future risks and opportunities.
 - 2.2 The scope shall include risks and opportunities that may exist at each jurisdictional level, international governmental organisations, and regulatory organisations.
 - 2.2.1 The scope shall include the relevant policies of utilities, rule-makers and regulators.

- 3 Relevant information to provide includes, but is not limited to, the impact on demand for the entity's solar energy products and services and the impact on business viability related to risks and opportunities associated with energy policy and the impact energy policy has on the integration of solar energy into the existing energy infrastructure.

Volume 45—Wind Technology & Project Developers

Industry Description

Wind Technology & Project Developers manufacture wind turbines, blades, towers and other components of wind power systems. Entities that develop, build and manage wind energy projects also are included within this industry scope. Manufacturers also may offer post-sale maintenance and support services. Turbines may be installed onshore or offshore, which can create differences in wind-generating capacity and project development challenges for each type of installation. Most major wind technology entities operate globally.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Materials Efficiency	Top five materials consumed, by weight	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	RR-WT-440b.1
	Average top head mass per turbine capacity, by wind turbine class	Quantitative	Metric tons per megawatts (t/MW)	RR-WT-440b.2
	Description of approach to optimise materials efficiency of wind turbine design	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RR-WT-440b.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of delivered wind turbines, by wind turbine class ⁷⁶	Quantitative	Number	RR-WT-000.A
Aggregate capacity of delivered wind turbines, by wind turbine class ⁷⁷	Quantitative	Megawatts (MW)	RR-WT-000.B
Amount of turbine backlog ⁷⁸	Quantitative	Presentation currency	RR-WT-000.C

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Aggregate capacity of turbine backlog ⁷⁹	Quantitative	Megawatts (MW)	RR-WT-000.D

Materials Efficiency

Topic Summary

The Wind Technology & Project Developers industry's long-term success depends on producing energy at a comparatively lower cost than other energy sources. Steel and other materials purchases are one of the largest costs of turbines, and inputs such as steel have exhibited price volatility in the past. In recent years, wind turbines have grown in size, in terms of both the tower height and the swept area of the rotor, to improve energy output and increase the potential for wind energy production in more areas. To achieve this expansion cost-effectively, entities may employ innovative methods to increase turbine output while using materials more efficiently. Increased output and efficiency could influence entities' competitiveness and market share, costs of production, and operational risks related to the supply and price volatility of raw materials, as well as the ability of the entity to scale.

Metrics

RR-WT-440b.1 Top five materials consumed, by weight

- 1 For each of the following wind turbine classes, the entity shall disclose the weight, in metric tons, of the five materials consumed in the greatest amounts, by weight, in delivered wind turbines during the reporting period.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes materials weights in the final delivered turbine, including the nacelle, blades and tower, and excludes the weight of materials consumed in production (for example, waste), freight, storage and installation (for example, foundation).
- 3 Materials may include aluminium, carbon fibre, copper, fibreglass, iron or steel.
- 4 The entity may disclose the weight of the five materials consumed in the greatest amounts by wind turbine class.
 - 4.1 Wind turbine classes are defined by the International Electrotechnical Commission's (IEC) 61400-1, Edition 3.0—Design requirements:
 - 4.1.1 IEC Wind Turbine Class I
 - 4.1.2 IEC Wind Turbine Class II
 - 4.1.3 IEC Wind Turbine Class III
 - 4.1.4 IEC Wind Turbine Class IV
 - 4.1.5 IEC Wind Turbine Class S
 - 4.1.6 Turbulence characteristics
 - 4.1.7 Mixed class (e.g., IEC Wind Turbine Class I / II)

4.1.8 Onshore

4.1.9 Offshore

- 5 The entity may disclose additional materials weights that may represent significant materials costs, supply chain risks or exposure to pricing volatility.

RR-WT-440b.2. Average top head mass per turbine capacity, by wind turbine class

- 1 For each of the following wind turbine classes, the entity shall disclose the average top head mass per turbine capacity of turbines delivered during the reporting period, weighted by turbine deliveries per wind turbine class.
- 1.1 Wind turbine classes are defined by the International Electrotechnical Commission's (IEC) 61400-1, Edition 3.0—Design requirements:
 - 1.1.1 IEC Wind Turbine Class I
 - 1.1.2 IEC Wind Turbine Class II
 - 1.1.3 IEC Wind Turbine Class III
 - 1.1.4 IEC Wind Turbine Class IV
 - 1.1.5 IEC Wind Turbine Class S
- 2 Wind turbine class shall be determined by the rating of the turbine.
- 3 Average top head mass per turbine capacity shall be calculated as the mass of the top head in metric tons divided by turbine capacity in megawatts (MW).
- 3.1 The top head shall include the turbine nacelle and the turbine rotor.
 - 3.2 The top head shall exclude the blades.
 - 3.3 Turbine capacity is the rated turbine capacity, defined as the maximum output (generation) of a wind turbine, in megawatts (MW), also referred to as 'nameplate capacity'.
- 4 The entity may disclose performance in additional wind turbine classes, including:
- 4.1 Turbulence characteristics
 - 4.2 Mixed class (for example, IEC Wind Turbine Class I/II)
 - 4.3 Onshore
 - 4.4 Offshore

RR-WT-440b.3. Description of approach to optimise materials efficiency of wind turbine design

- 1 The entity shall describe how it improves wind turbine materials efficiency including design considerations and materials selection to optimise:
- 1.1 Amount of materials consumed

1.2	Capacity and capacity factor by materials consumed
1.3	Lifespan
2	The scope of disclosure shall include materials selection and modifications to wind turbine design as well as operational control software (for example, SCADA systems) that may increase the materials efficiency of wind turbines.
2.1	Materials selection may include priorities in materials selection, emphasis on materials innovation and development, materials risk assessments and objectives around materials consumption.
2.2	Modifications to wind turbine design may include design innovation to reduce materials consumption through reduced turbine weights or tower weights, design innovation to increase turbine capacity or capacity factor relative to materials consumption, strategies to reduce waste created in turbine manufacturing, and design to reduce materials consumed in installation of wind turbines (for example, foundation).

Resource Transformation Sector	-
Volume 46—Aerospace & Defence	-
Industry Description	
Entities in the Aerospace & Defence industry include manufacturers of commercial aircraft, aircraft parts, aerospace and defence products, as well as defence prime contractors. Commercial aircraft manufacturers represent approximately one quarter of industry revenue and sell mainly to commercial airlines and governments. Aerospace and defence parts manufacturers represent the largest segment of the industry by total revenue, selling primarily to governments. Both aerospace and defence manufacturers operate globally and serve a global customer base. Defence primes represent approximately one quarter of total industry revenue and manufacture products including military aircraft, space vehicles, missile systems, ammunition, small arms, naval ships, and other commercial and military vehicles. Their customers consist of various government agencies and related businesses with global operations. The defence prime category also includes firearms manufacturers that sell to law enforcement agencies, businesses, distributors, retailers and consumers. Important sustainability topics within the industry include the energy efficiency and emissions profile of products and management of manufacturing energy and waste.	
Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics	
Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics	

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	RT-AE-130a.1
Fuel	Revenue from alternative energy-related products	Quantitative	Presentation currency	RT-AE-410a.1
Economy & Emissions in Use-phase	Description of approach and discussion of strategy to address fuel economy and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions of products	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RT-AE-410a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Production by reportable segment ⁸⁰	Quantitative	Number	RT-AE-000.A
Number of employees	Quantitative	Number	RT-AE-000.B

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Energy is a critical input to aerospace and defence manufacturing processes. Purchased electricity is the largest share of the industry's energy expenditures, followed by purchased fuels. The type of energy used, magnitude of consumption and energy management strategies depend on the type of products manufactured. An entity's energy mix, including electricity generated on-site, grid-sourced electricity and alternative energy, may influence the cost and reliability of energy supply and, ultimately, affect the entity's cost structure and regulatory risk.

Metrics

RT-AE-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity

itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.

- 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
- 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).

2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.

- 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.

3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.

- 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
- 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
- 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for

example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Fuel Economy & Emissions in Use-phase

Topic Summary

Customer preferences and regulatory incentives are increasing the demand for energy-efficient and reduced-emissions products in the Aerospace & Defence industry. Many of the industry's products are powered by fossil fuels and release greenhouse gases (GHGs) and other air emissions during use. As the designers and manufacturers of most of the global aerospace and defence transportation fleet, entities in this industry have a unique opportunity to support many industries and government agencies that are striving to meet GHG emissions and fuel-management goals and imperatives. Products with higher fuel economy and lower use-phase emissions may capture expanding market share and adapt to changing customer preferences and regulations around fuel economy and emissions more effectively.

Metrics

RT-AE-410a.1. Revenue from alternative energy-related products

- 1 The entity shall disclose total revenue from the sale of alternative energy-related products, where:
 - 1.1 Alternative energy-related products include products such as vehicles, vehicle components and stationary power generation equipment that rely on alternative fuel or energy as a primary means of propulsion or energy production.
 - 1.2 Alternative energy and fuel includes:
 - 1.2.1 Renewable fuel and energy, which is defined as deriving from sources capable of being replenished quickly through ecological cycles, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydroelectric and biomass (including ethanol, first-generation biofuels and advanced biofuels)
 - 1.2.2 Hydrogen fuel and fuel cells including those that operate using natural gas, propane and methanol
 - 1.3 Electric, hybrid electric and dual-fuelled products for which one of the fuel sources is an alternative fuel shall be considered within the scope of disclosure.

RT-AE-410a.2. Description of approach and discussion of strategy to address fuel economy and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions of products

- 1 The entity shall describe its approach and discuss its strategies for improving the fuel economy and reducing the use-phase greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions of its products.
- 2 Relevant aspects of the approach and strategy include improvements to existing products and technologies, the introduction of new technologies, research and development efforts into advanced technologies, and partnerships with peers, academic institutions or customers (including governmental customers).
- 3 Relevant technologies to describe may include those related to materials design and engineering, advanced powertrains, renewable fuels, energy storage and batteries, aerodynamic design, and products and fuels that otherwise result in reduced GHG emissions, where:
 - 3.1 Advanced powertrain technologies include vehicles and vehicle components that are electric, hybrid electric, plug-in hybrid, dual-fuel and zero-emissions (for example, fuel cell).
 - 3.2 Renewable fuels and energy technologies are those that operate on sources capable of being replenished quickly through ecological cycles, including geothermal, wind, solar, hydroelectric and biomass (including ethanol, first-generation biofuels and advanced biofuels).
 - 3.3 Products that result in reduced GHG emissions include any vehicle or technology that achieves a significant reduction in petroleum consumption as well as advanced lean burn technology vehicles and technologies.
 - 3.4 Fuels that result in reduced GHG emissions further include denatured alcohol, methanol, mixtures containing up to 85% methanol or denatured ethanol, natural gas and propane (liquefied petroleum gas).
 - 3.5 If relevant, the entity shall discuss the technologies it is prioritising to improve the fuel economy and reduce the GHG emissions of its products, such as the specific type of fuel systems it is developing (for example, hybrid, electric or fuel cell).
- 4 The entity shall describe the factors influencing these efforts, such as meeting civil customer demand, alignment with industry initiatives, or meeting requirements of federal procurement programmes and initiatives, in which:
 - 4.1 Relevant programmes and initiatives to describe include the International Civil Aviation Organization Resolution A38-18.
- 5 The entity may describe the benchmarks used to measure product fuel efficiency improvements for relevant vehicles or vehicle system segments, including a description of targets for fuel efficiency improvements.
- 6 The entity may provide measurements of fuel efficiency and fuel efficiency improvements for its relevant vehicle or vehicle systems segments.
 - 6.1 Measurements of fuel efficiency and fuel efficiency improvements may include:

6.1.1 Inherent fuel efficiency measurements, such as miles per gallon for vehicles and vessels and 1/Specific Air Range for aerospace vehicles

6.1.2 Year-over-year fuel efficiency improvements

7 The entity may discuss how customer demand and requirements affect fuel efficiency measures and improvements, if relevant.

Volume 47—Chemicals

Industry Description

Entities in the Chemicals industry transform organic and inorganic feedstocks into more than 70,000 diverse products with a range of industrial, pharmaceutical, agricultural, housing, automotive and consumer applications. The industry commonly is segmented into basic (commodity) chemicals, agricultural chemicals and specialty chemicals. Basic chemicals, the largest segment by volume produced, include bulk polymers, petrochemicals, inorganic chemicals and other industrial chemicals. Agricultural chemicals include fertilisers, crop chemicals and agricultural biotechnology. Specialty chemicals include paints and coatings, agrochemicals, sealants, adhesives, dyes, industrial gases, resins and catalysts. Larger entities may produce basic, agricultural and specialty chemicals, but most entities are specialised. Chemicals entities typically manufacture and sell products globally.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	RT-CH-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RT-CH-110a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity, (3) percentage renewable and (4) total self-generated energy ⁸¹	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	RT-CH-130a.1
	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	RT-CH-140a.1
Water Management	Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	RT-CH-140a.2
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RT-CH-140a.3
Product Design for Use-phase Efficiency	Revenue from products designed for use-phase resource efficiency	Quantitative	Presentation currency	RT-CH-410a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Production by reportable segment ⁸²	Quantitative	Cubic metres (m³) or metric tons (t)	RT-CH-000.A

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Chemical manufacturing generates direct (Scope 1) greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from fossil fuel combustion in manufacturing and cogeneration processes, as well as process emissions from the chemical transformation of feedstocks. GHG emissions may result in regulatory compliance costs or penalties and operating risks for chemicals entities. However, the financial effects may vary depending on the magnitude of emissions and the prevailing emissions regulations. The industry may be subject to increasingly stringent regulations as countries try to limit or reduce emissions. Entities that cost-effectively manage GHG emissions through greater energy efficiency, the use of alternative fuels or manufacturing process advances may benefit from improved operating efficiency and reduced regulatory risk, among other financial benefits.

Metrics

RT-CH-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆) and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples include:
 - 2.1.1 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.2 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.3 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.4 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for Reporting GHG Emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.1.5 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement

(EpE)

2.1.6 WBCSD *Guidance for Accounting & Reporting Corporate GHG Emissions in the Chemical Sector Value Chain*

2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) that is described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax/fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.
 - 3.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations may include:
 - 3.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)
 - 3.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)
 - 3.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).
 - 3.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.
 - 3.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.
- 4 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 5 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 6 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

RT-CH-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans, or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.

- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Chemical manufacturing is typically energy-intensive, with energy used to power processing units, cogeneration plants, machinery and non-manufacturing facilities. The type of energy used, amount consumed and energy management strategies depends on the type of products manufactured. Typically, fossil fuels such as natural gas and natural gas liquids are the predominant form of non-feedstock energy used, while purchased electricity also may be a significant share. Therefore, energy purchases may be a significant share of production costs. An entity's energy mix may include energy generated on-site, purchased grid electricity and fossil fuels, and renewable and alternative energy. Trade-offs in the use of energy sources include cost, reliability of supply, related water use and air emissions, and regulatory compliance and risk. As such, an entity's energy intensity and energy sourcing decisions may affect its operating efficiency and risk profile over time.

Metrics

RT-CH-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity, (3) percentage renewable and (4) total self-generated energy

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind,

solar, hydro and biomass.

- 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix that is outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
- 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall disclose (4) the amount of energy self-generated by the entity as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 4.1 The entity may disclose the amount of self-generated energy sold to an electric utility or end-use customer.
 - 4.2 The entity may disclose the amount of self-generated energy that was renewable energy, where renewable energy is defined above.
- 5 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Note to **RT-CH-130a.1**

- 1 The entity shall discuss its efforts to reduce energy consumption or improve energy efficiency throughout the manufacturing and production processes.
- 2 The entity shall discuss implementation of Green Chemistry Principle 6, 'Design for Energy Efficiency', including, if relevant, efforts such as conducting reactions at ambient temperature and pressure, reducing key materials that require energy-intensive processing (for example, distillation and drying), using excess steam and heat to generate energy, improving catalytic processes, and other process improvements that result in gains in energy efficiency.
 - 2.1 Relevant strategies to discuss include the use of incremental improvement, the implementation of best practice technology, the use of emerging technologies, and the development of 'game changers', consistent with the International Council of Chemical Associations (ICCA) Technology Road Map.
- 3 The entity may disclose the aggregate energy savings (in gigajoules) achieved through such efforts and processes.

Water Management

Topic Summary

Used primarily for cooling, steam generation and feedstock processing, water is a critical input in chemicals production. Long-term historical increases in water scarcity and cost, and expectations of continued increases—because of over-consumption and reduced supplies resulting from population growth and shifts, pollution and climate change—show the importance of water management. Water scarcity may result in a higher risk of operational disruption for entities with water-intensive operations, and can increase water procurement costs and capital expenditures. Meanwhile, chemical manufacturing may generate process wastewater that must be treated before disposal. Non-compliance with water quality regulations may result in regulatory compliance and mitigation costs or legal expenses stemming from litigation. Reducing water use and consumption through increased efficiency and other water management strategies may result in lower operating costs over time and may mitigate financial effects of regulations, water supply shortages and community-related disruptions of operations.

Metrics

RT-CH-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.

- 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
- 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.

3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.

3.1 Water consumption is defined as:

- 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
- 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly included in the entity's product or service
- 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea

4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.

6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

RT-CH-140a.2. Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations

1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance, including violations of a technology-based standard and exceedances of quantity or quality-based standards.

2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations, which include the discharge of a hazardous substance, violation of pre-treatment requirements or total maximum daily load (TMDL) exceedances.

3 The scope of disclosure shall only include incidents of non-compliance that resulted in a formal enforcement action(s).

3.1 Formal enforcement actions are defined as governmental actions that address a violation or threatened violation of water quantity or quality laws, regulations, policies or orders, and can result in administrative penalty orders, administrative orders and judicial actions, among others.

- 4 Violations shall be disclosed, regardless of their measurement methodology or frequency. These include violations for:
 - 4.1 Continuous discharges, limitations, standards and prohibitions that are generally expressed as maximum daily, weekly and monthly averages; and
 - 4.2 Non-continuous discharges, limitations that are generally expressed in terms of frequency, total mass, maximum rate of discharge and mass or concentration of specified pollutants.

RT-CH-140a.3. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits
 - 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).
- 2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:
 - 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
 - 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.

- 3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.
 - 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.
- 4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:
 - 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
 - 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
 - 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.
- 5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:
 - 5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.
 - 5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.
 - 5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:
 - 5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;
 - 5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;
 - 5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;
 - 5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and

5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations

5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

Product Design for Use-phase Efficiency

Topic Summary

As increasing resource scarcity and regulations encourage greater materials efficiency and lower energy consumption and emissions, the Chemicals industry may benefit from developing products that enhance customer efficiency. From reducing automobile emissions through materials optimisation to improving building insulation performance, Chemicals industry products can enhance efficiency across many applications. Entities that develop cost-effective solutions to meet customer demand for improved efficiency may benefit from increased revenue and market share, stronger competitive positioning and enhanced brand value.

Metrics

RT-CH-410a.1. Revenue from products designed for use-phase resource efficiency

- 1 The entity shall disclose its total revenue from products designed to increase resource efficiency during their use-phase.
 - 1.1 Products designed to increase resource efficiency are defined as those that, through their use, can improve energy efficiency, eliminate or lower greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, reduce raw materials consumption, increase product longevity or reduce water consumption.
 - 1.2 The use-phase is defined as the course over which the entity's product is used by a customer or consumer as a final product or the course over which the entity's product is used by a customer or consumer to generate a final product (for example, in a manufacturing or production process).
- 2 A product shall be considered to have been designed to increase use-phase resource efficiency if documentation shows that the entity has tested, modelled or otherwise established the increase to resource efficiency its product delivers during its use-phase.
 - 2.1 The scope of disclosure includes products that eliminate emissions during the use-phase, the need for a raw material or the need for a process component like water.
 - 2.2 The scope of disclosure includes products that impart an incremental improvement to resource efficiency, as far as the entity can demonstrate the

improvement is meaningful.

- 2.3 The scope of disclosure excludes products that impart improved resource efficiency in an ancillary, indirect or minimal way (for example, a conventional product that is slightly lighter than the previous generation of the product).

- 3 Examples of products that increase resource efficiency may include insulation materials, high-albedo paints and coating, fuel additives that result in more efficient combustion, energy-efficient lighting materials, additives or materials that extend the useful life of use-phase products, materials that enable vehicle lightweighting (for example, polymers to replace metals), biofuels, solar films, solar shingles and other renewable energy materials.

Volume 48—Containers & Packaging

Industry Description

Containers and packaging industry entities convert raw materials including metal, plastic, paper and glass, into semi-finished or finished packaging products. Entities produce a wide range of products, including corrugated cardboard packaging, food and beverage containers, bottles for household products, aluminium cans, steel drums and other forms of packaging. Entities in the industry typically function as business-to-business entities and many operate globally.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e, Percentage (%)	RT-CP-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RT-CP-110a.2
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity, (3)	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ),	RT-CP-130a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Water Management	percentage renewable and (4) total self-generated energy		Percentage (%)	
	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	RT-CP-140a.1
	Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	RT-CP-140a.2
	Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations	Quantitative	Number	RT-CP-140a.3
Waste Management	Amount of waste generated, percentage hazardous and percentage recycled	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	RT-CP-150a.1
Supply Chain Management	Total wood fibre procured; percentage from certified sources	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	RT-CP-430a.1
	Total aluminium purchased; percentage from certified sources	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	RT-CP-430a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Amount of production, by substrate ⁸³	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	RT-CP-000.A
Percentage of production as: (1) paper/wood, (2) glass, (3) metal, and (4) plastic	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by revenue	RT-CP-000.B
Number of employees	Quantitative	Number	RT-CP-000.C

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

The Containers & Packaging industry generates direct (Scope 1) greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from fossil fuel combustion in manufacturing and cogeneration processes. GHG emissions may result in regulatory compliance costs or penalties and operating risks for entities. However, the financial effects may vary depending on the magnitude of emissions and the prevailing emissions regulations. The industry may be subject to increasingly stringent regulations as countries try to limit or reduce emissions. Entities that cost-effectively manage GHG emissions through greater energy efficiency, the use of alternative fuels or manufacturing process advances could benefit from improved operating efficiency and reduced regulatory risk, among other financial benefits.

Metrics

RT-CP-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions, percentage covered under emissions-limiting regulations

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting*

Standard (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).

- 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the GHG Protocol as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for Reporting GHG Emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.1.6 *Protocol for the Quantification of Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Waste Management Activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
- 2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the GHG Protocol, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 3 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions covered under an emissions-limiting regulation or programme intended to limit or reduce emissions directly, such as cap-and-trade schemes, carbon tax or fee systems, and other emissions control (for example, command-and-control approach) and permit-based mechanisms.

- 3.1 Examples of emissions-limiting regulations include:
 - 3.1.1 California Cap-and-Trade (California Global Warming Solutions Act)
 - 3.1.2 European Union Emissions Trading Scheme (EU ETS)
 - 3.1.3 Quebec Cap-and-Trade (Quebec Environment Quality Act)

- 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e) covered under emissions-limiting regulations divided by the total amount of gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions (CO₂-e).
 - 3.2.1 For emissions subject to more than one emissions-limiting regulation, the entity shall not account for those emissions more than once.
- 3.3 The scope of emissions-limiting regulations excludes emissions covered under voluntary emissions-limiting regulations (for example, voluntary trading systems), as well as reporting-based regulations.
- 4 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 5 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 6 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

RT-CP-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;

- 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
 - 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
 - 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Containers and packaging manufacturing is energy-intensive, with energy used to power processing units, cogeneration plants, machinery and non-manufacturing facilities. The type of energy used, amount consumed and energy management strategies depend on the type of products manufactured. Typically, fossil fuels such as natural gas and biomass are the predominant form of energy used, while purchased electricity also may be a significant share. Therefore, energy purchases may be a significant share of production costs. An entity's energy mix may include energy generated on site, purchased grid electricity and fossil fuels, and renewable and alternative energy. Trade-offs in the use of such energy sources include cost, reliability of supply, related water use and air emissions, and regulatory compliance and risk. As such, an entity's energy intensity and energy sourcing decisions may affect its operating efficiency and risk profile over time.

Metrics

RT-CP-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity, (3) percentage renewable and (4) total self-generated energy

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).

- 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall disclose (4) the amount of energy self-generated as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).

4.1 The entity may disclose the amount of self-generated energy sold to an electric utility or end-use customer.

5 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

Containers and packaging manufacturing requires water for various stages of production including in raw materials processing, process cooling and steam generation at on site cogeneration plants. Long-term historical increases in water scarcity and cost, and expectations of continued increases—because of over-consumption and reduced supplies resulting from population growth and shifts, pollution and climate change—show the importance of water management. Water scarcity may result in a higher risk of operational disruption for entities with water-intensive operations, and can increase water procurement costs and capital expenditures. Meanwhile, containers and packaging manufacturing may generate process wastewater that must be treated before disposal. Non-compliance with water quality regulations may result in regulatory compliance and mitigation costs or legal expenses stemming from litigation. Reducing water use and consumption through increased efficiency and other water management strategies may result in lower operating costs over time and may mitigate financial effects of regulations, water supply shortages and community-related disruptions of operations.

Metrics

RT-CP-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.

1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the

entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.

- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly included in the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

RT-CP-140a.2. Description of water management risks and discussion of strategies and practices to mitigate those risks

- 1 The entity shall describe its water management risks associated with water withdrawals, water consumption and discharge of water or wastewater.
 - 1.1 Risks associated with water withdrawals and water consumption include risks to the availability of adequate, clean water resources, which include:
 - 1.1.1 Environmental constraints—such as operating in water-stressed regions, drought, concerns of aquatic impingement or entrainment, interannual or seasonal variability, and risks from the impact of climate change
 - 1.1.2 Regulatory and financial constraints—such as volatility in water costs, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water withdrawals (for

example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies), direct competition with and impact from the actions of other users (for example, commercial and municipal users), restrictions to withdrawals because of regulations, and constraints on the entity's ability to obtain and retain water rights or permits

- 1.2 Risks associated with the discharge of water or wastewater include the ability to obtain rights or permits related to discharges, regulatory compliance related to discharges, restrictions to discharges, the ability to maintain control over the temperature of water discharges, liabilities, reputational risks and increased operating costs because of regulation, stakeholder perceptions and concerns related to water discharges (for example, those from local communities, non-governmental organisations and regulatory agencies).

2 The entity may describe water management risks in the context of:

- 2.1 How risks may vary by withdrawal source, including surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities; and
- 2.2 How risks may vary by discharge destinations, including surface water, groundwater or wastewater utilities.

3 The entity may discuss the potential effects that water management risks may have on its operations and the time line over which such risks are expected to manifest.

- 3.1 Effects include those associated with costs, revenue, liabilities, continuity of operations and reputation.

4 The entity shall discuss its short- and long-term strategies or plans to mitigate water management risks, which include:

- 4.1 The scope of its strategy, plans, goals or targets, such as how they relate to various business units, geographies or water-consuming operational processes.
- 4.2 Any water management goals or targets it has prioritised, and an analysis of performance against those goals or targets.
 - 4.2.1 Goals and targets include those associated with reducing water withdrawals, reducing water consumption, reducing water discharges, reducing aquatic impingements, improving the quality of water discharges and regulatory compliance.
- 4.3 The activities and investments required to achieve the plans, goals or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.

4.4 Disclosure of strategies, plans, goals or targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

5 For water management targets, the entity shall additionally disclose:

5.1 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target.

5.2 The time lines for the water management activities, including the start year, the target year and the base year.

5.3 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target, including:

5.3.1 Efficiency efforts, such as the use of water recycling or closed-loop systems;

5.3.2 Product innovations, such as redesigning products or services to require less water;

5.3.3 Process and equipment innovations, such as those that enable the reduction of aquatic impingements or entrainments;

5.3.4 Use of tools and technologies (for example, the World Wildlife Fund Water Risk Filter, the Global Water Tool and Water Footprint Network Footprint Assessment Tool) to analyse water use, risks and opportunities; and

5.3.5 Collaborations or programmes in place with the community or other organisations

5.4 The percentage reduction or improvement from the base year, in which the base year is the first year against which water management targets are evaluated towards the achievement of the target.

6 The entity shall discuss whether its water management practices result in any additional lifecycle impacts or trade-offs in its organisation, including trade-offs in land use, energy production and greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and why the entity chose these practices despite lifecycle trade-offs.

RT-CP-140a.3. Number of incidents of non-compliance associated with water quality permits, standards and regulations

1 The entity shall disclose the total number of incidents of non-compliance, including violations of a technology-based standard and exceedances of quantity or quality-based standards.

2 The scope of disclosure includes incidents governed by applicable jurisdictional statutory permits and regulations, which include the discharge of a hazardous substance, violation of pre-treatment requirements or total maximum daily load (TMDL) exceedances.

3 The scope of disclosure shall only include incidents of non-compliance that resulted in a formal enforcement action(s).

3.1 Formal enforcement actions are defined as governmental actions that address a violation or threatened violation of water quantity or quality laws, regulations, policies or orders, and can result in administrative penalty orders, administrative orders and judicial actions, among others.

4 Violations shall be disclosed, regardless of their measurement methodology or frequency. These include violations for:

4.1 Continuous discharges, limitations, standards and prohibitions that are generally expressed as maximum daily, weekly and monthly averages; and

4.2 Non-continuous discharges, limitations that are generally expressed in terms of frequency, total mass, maximum rate of discharge and mass or concentration of specified pollutants.

Waste Management

Topic Summary

Containers and packaging manufacturing may generate hazardous process waste which may include heavy metals, spent acids, catalysts and wastewater treatment sludge. Entities face regulatory and operational challenges in managing waste because some wastes are subject to regulations pertaining to its transport, treatment, storage and disposal. Waste management strategies include reduced generation, effective treatment and disposal, and recycling and recovery, if possible. Such activities, while requiring initial investment or operating costs, may reduce an entity's long-term cost structure and mitigate the risk of remediation liabilities or regulatory penalties.

Metrics

RT-CP-150a.1 Amount of waste generated, percentage hazardous and percentage recycled

1 The entity shall calculate and disclose the total amount of hazardous waste generated, in metric tons.

1.1 Hazardous wastes are defined in accordance with the applicable jurisdictional legal or regulatory framework(s) where the waste was generated.

2 The entity shall calculate and disclose the percentage of hazardous waste recycled as the total weight of hazardous waste generated that was recycled, divided by the total weight of hazardous waste generated.

2.1 Hazardous waste that is reused, reclaimed or remanufactured shall be considered within the scope of recycled.

2.2 Recycled, reused, reclaimed and remanufactured hazardous waste is defined in accordance with the applicable jurisdictional legal or regulatory framework(s) where the waste was generated.

2.3 Materials incinerated, including for energy recovery, shall not be considered within the scope of recycled.

- 2.3.1 Energy recovery is defined as the use of combustible waste to generate energy through direct incineration, with or without other waste, but with recovery of the heat.
- 2.3.2 The entity may separately disclose the percentage of hazardous waste generated that was incinerated.

- 3 The entity may use the United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP) Basel Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movements of Hazardous Wastes and Their Disposal for the purposes of defining hazardous waste or recycled hazardous waste for operations located in jurisdictions that lack applicable legal or regulatory definitions.
- 4 The entity shall disclose the legal or regulatory framework(s) used to define hazardous waste and recycled hazardous waste, and the amounts defined in accordance with each applicable framework.

Supply Chain Management

Topic Summary

Containers and packaging manufacturing uses large quantities of raw materials including wood fibre and aluminium. Sustainable production of these materials is an important supply chain consideration for entities in the industry because adverse environmental impacts could increase materials costs and affect the brand value of entities. To mitigate such risks, entities may implement supply chain vetting practices and implement third-party standards within internal operations and suppliers that certify that the materials were produced in a sustainable manner. Additionally, such actions may raise brand value and meet customer demand for sustainably produced packaging products, providing access to new markets and growth opportunities.

Metrics

RT-CP-430a.1. Total wood fibre procured; percentage from certified sources

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total weight (in metric tons) of wood-fibre-based raw materials procured during the reporting period.
 - 1.1 The scope of raw materials includes all inputs processed to be sold as a finished good, including recycled raw materials, virgin raw materials and goods consumed directly in the production process.
- 2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total weight (in metric tons) of its wood-fibre-based raw materials certified to a responsible sourcing standard divided by the total weight (in metric tons) of wood-fibre-based raw materials, if responsible sourcing certifications include those promulgated by the following organisations (or an equivalent):
 - 2.1 American Tree Farm System (ATFS)

- 2.2 Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) (FSC 100% label and FSC Mixed Sources and FSC Recycled labels)
- 2.3 Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification (PEFC) (PEFC Certified and PEFC Recycled labels)
- 2.4 Sustainable Forest Initiative (SFI) (SFI Chain of Custody and SFI Certified Sourcing labels)

- 3 The entity may disclose separately the percent of fibre that is certified to each relevant responsible sourcing standard (for example, FSC, SFI, PEFC and ATFS) and relevant standards (for example, FSC 100% label, FSC Mixed Sources and FSC Recycled labels, SFI Chain of Custody and SFI Certified Sourcing labels, and PEFC Certified and PEFC Recycled labels).
- 4 Wood fibre certified to more than one standard shall be accounted for by the entity only once.

RT-CP-430a.2. Total aluminium purchased; percentage from certified sources

- 1 The entity shall disclose the total weight (in metric tons) of aluminium-based raw materials purchased during the reporting period.
 - 1.1 The scope of raw materials includes all inputs processed to be sold as a finished good, including recycled raw materials, virgin raw materials and goods that will be consumed directly in the production process.
- 2 The percentage shall be calculated as the total weight (in metric tons) of its aluminium based raw materials certified to a responsible sourcing standard divided by the total weight of aluminium based raw materials.
- 3 Responsible sourcing certification includes that promulgated by the Aluminium Stewardship Initiative (ASI) (Performance Standard Version 1 and Chain of Custody Standard Draught 2) or certification to an equivalent standard.
- 4 Aluminium certified to more than one standard shall be accounted for by the entity only once.

Volume 49—Electrical & Electronic Equipment

Industry Description

Electrical and electronic equipment industry entities develop and manufacture a broad range of electric components including power generation equipment, energy transformers, electric motors, switchboards, automation equipment, heating and cooling equipment, lighting and transmission cables. These include non-structural commercial and residential building equipment, such as Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC) systems, lighting fixtures, security devices, and elevators; electrical power equipment; traditional power generation and transmission equipment; renewable energy equipment; industrial automation controls; measurement instruments; and electrical components used for industrial purposes, such as

coils, wires and cables. In a mature and competitive industry, these entities operate globally and typically generate a significant portion of their revenue from outside the country of their domicile.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	RT-EE-130a.1
	Percentage of products by revenue that contain IEC 62474 declarable substances ⁸⁴	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by revenue	RT-EE-410a.1
Product Lifecycle Management	Percentage of eligible products, by revenue, certified to an energy efficiency certification	Quantitative	Percentage (%) by revenue	RT-EE-410a.2
	Revenue from renewable energy-related and energy efficiency-related products	Quantitative	Presentation currency	RT-EE-410a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of units produced by product category ⁸⁵	Quantitative	Number	RT-EE-000.A
Number of employees	Quantitative	Number	RT-EE-000.B

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Electrical and electronic equipment entities may use significant amounts of energy. Purchased electricity is the largest share of energy expenditure in the industry, followed by purchased

fuels. The type of energy used, amount consumed and energy management strategies depend on the type of products manufactured. Including the use of electricity generated on site, grid-sourced electricity and alternative energy, an entity's energy mix may be important in reducing the cost and increasing the reliability of energy supply and, ultimately, affecting the entity's cost structure and exposure to regulatory shifts.

Metrics

RT-EE-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the

entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Product Lifecycle Management

Topic Summary

Electrical and electronic equipment entities face increasing challenges and opportunities associated with environmental and social externalities that may stem from the use of their products. Regulations are incentivising entities to reduce or eliminate the use of harmful chemicals in their products. To a lesser extent, regulations and customers are encouraging entities to reduce the environmental footprint of their products in the use-phase, primarily in terms of energy intensity. Electrical and electronic equipment entities that develop cost-effective products and energy efficiency solutions may benefit from increased revenue and market share, stronger competitive positioning and enhanced brand value. Similarly, products with reduced chemical safety concerns may provide opportunities for increased market share.

Metrics

RT-EE-410a.1. Percentage of products by revenue that contain IEC 62474 declarable substances

1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of products sold during the reporting period that contain the International Electrotechnical Commission's (IEC) 62474 declarable substances.

1.1 A product contains a declarable substance if, according to IEC 62474—*Material Declaration for Products of and for the Electrotechnical Industry*, it contains an amount of the substance above the 'reporting threshold', is within the scope of

the 'reporting application' identified, and is within the mandatory 'reporting requirement'.

- 1.2 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the revenue from products sold that contain a declarable substance(s) divided by total revenue from products sold.

- 2 The scope of disclosure includes all products, including products from an entity not required to declare or otherwise making declarations, according to IEC 62474.

Note to **RT-EE-410a.1**

- 1 The entity shall discuss how it manages the use of substances listed as declarable substance groups or declarable substances in IEC 62474, including a discussion of specific operational processes during which use of these substances is considered and the actions the entity has taken to manage the use of these substances.
- 2 Relevant management approaches and actions to describe may include:
 - 2.1 Product design criteria for the exclusion of substances (for example, banned substances lists)
 - 2.2 Use of material substitution assessments, materials and parts procurement guidelines, product safety testing, product declarations (for example, material safety data sheets) and product labelling
- 3 If the entity assesses and manages the impact of known or potentially toxic substances with reference to other regulations, industry norms or accepted chemical lists, it may identify those practices, and it shall describe the degree of overlap with IEC 62474.

RT-EE-410a.2. Percentage of eligible products, by revenue, certified to an energy efficiency certification

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its revenue from eligible products certified to an energy efficiency certification.
 - 1.1 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the revenue from products meeting the requirements for the applicable certification divided by total revenue from products eligible for certification by certification.
 - 1.1.1 Eligible products are those in a product category for which certification exists, which may include: uninterruptible power supply products, heating, cooling and ventilation equipment, and lighting and fans.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of products by revenue by energy efficiency certification.
 - 2.1 If the entity has products certified to a previous version of an energy efficiency certification, it shall disclose this information, including the version of the standard to which its products are certified, a breakdown of how many products are certified to that version of the standard, and its time lines to achieve certification to the most current version of the standard.

- 3 For each jurisdiction where the entity sells products, the entity shall disclose the applicable certification programme.

RT-EE-410a.3. Revenue from renewable energy-related and energy efficiency-related products

- 1 The entity shall disclose total revenue from renewable energy-related and energy efficiency-related products.
- 2 Renewable energy-related products are defined as products or systems that enable the inclusion of renewable energy into established energy infrastructure.
 - 2.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy derived from sources that are capable of being replenished quickly through ecological cycles, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydroelectric and biomass (including ethanol, first-generation biofuels and advanced biofuels).
 - 2.2 Examples of products and systems may include turbine controllers, relays, switchgears, solar PV fuses, SCADA systems, interconnection technologies and other balance of plant equipment designed for renewable energy applications.
 - 2.3 The scope of products and systems is limited to those that enable the integration of renewable energy into established energy infrastructure and grids; it excludes revenue from the sale or installation of renewable energy generation hardware such as wind turbines, solar photovoltaic modules and solar thermal electricity generation equipment.
- 3 A product shall be considered to have been designed to increase energy efficiency if documentation shows that the entity has tested, modelled or otherwise established an increase in energy efficiency during the product's use-phase.
 - 3.1 Examples of products that increase energy efficiency may include: smart grid technologies and infrastructure (for example, demand response systems, distribution automation, smart inverters or advanced metering equipment); smart home and intelligent building control products; flexible alternating current transmission systems and low-loss transformers.
 - 3.1.1 Smart grid is defined as a modernisation of the electricity delivery systems to monitor, protect and automatically optimise the operation of its interconnected elements—from the central and distributed generation through the transmission network and the distribution system, to industrial users and building automation systems, and to energy storage installations and to end-use consumers.
 - 3.2 The scope of disclosure includes products that impart an incremental improvement to energy efficiency, insofar as the entity can demonstrate that the improvement is meaningful, such as through alignment with the milestones set forth in Section 5, 'Key Sectors' of the European Commission's Road Map to a Resource Efficient Europe or with EU Directive 2012/27/EU, or through conformance with energy efficiency standards such as the International

Electrotechnical Commission's (IEC) IE2 High Efficiency, IE3 Premium Efficiency and IE4 Super Premium Efficiency.

- 3.3 The scope of disclosure excludes products that impart improved resource efficiency in an ancillary, indirect or minimal way (for example, a conventional product that is slightly lighter than the previous generation of the product).

Volume 50—Industrial Machinery & Goods

Industry Description

Industrial machinery and goods industry entities manufacture equipment for a variety of industries including construction, agriculture, energy, utility, mining, manufacturing, automotive and transportation. Products include engines, earth-moving equipment, trucks, tractors, ships, industrial pumps, locomotives and turbines. Machinery manufacturers use large amounts of raw materials for production, including steel, plastics, rubber, paints and glass. Manufacturers also may machine and cast parts before final assembly. Demand in the industry is tied closely to industrial production, while government emissions standards and customer demand are encouraging innovations to improve energy efficiency and limit air emissions during product use.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	RT-IG-130a.1
Fuel Economy & Emissions in Use-phase	Sales-weighted fleet fuel efficiency for medium- and heavy-duty vehicles	Quantitative	Litres per 100 tonne-kilometres	RT-IG-410a.1
	Sales-weighted fuel efficiency for non-road equipment	Quantitative	Litres per hour	RT-IG-410a.2
	Sales-weighted fuel efficiency for stationary generators	Quantitative	Kilojoules per litre	RT-IG-410a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	Sales-weighted emissions of (1) nitrogen oxides (NO _x) and (2) particulate matter (PM) for: (a) marine diesel engines, (b) locomotive diesel engines, (c) on-road medium- and heavy-duty engines and (d) other non-road diesel engines ⁸⁶	Quantitative	Grammes per kilojoule	RT-IG-410a.4

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of units produced by product category ⁸⁷	Quantitative	Number	RT-IG-000.A
Number of employees	Quantitative	Number	RT-IG-000.B

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Energy is a critical input in industrial machinery manufacturing. Purchased electricity is the largest share of energy expenditure in the industry, followed by purchased fuels. The type of energy used, amount consumed and energy management strategies depend on the type of products manufactured. Including the use of electricity generated on site, grid-sourced electricity and alternative energy, an entity's energy mix can influence the cost and reliability of energy supply and, ultimately, affect the entity's cost structure and regulatory risk.

Metrics

RT-IG-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.

- 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside of the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Fuel Economy & Emissions in Use-phase

Topic Summary

Many of the Industrial Machinery & Goods industry's products are powered by fossil fuels and release greenhouse gases (GHGs) and other air emissions during use. Customer preferences for improved fuel economy combined with regulations restricting emissions are increasing the demand for energy-efficient and lower-emission products in the industry. As such, entities that develop products with these characteristics may capture expanding market share, reduce regulatory risk and improve brand value.

Metrics

RT-IG-410a.1. Sales-weighted fleet fuel efficiency for medium- and heavy-duty vehicles

- 1 The entity shall disclose its sales-weighted average fleet fuel efficiency for medium- and heavy-duty vehicles.
 - 1.1 Fleet fuel efficiency is defined as the average fuel economy of its medium- and heavy-duty commercial vehicles, weighted by the number of each sold during the reporting period and measured in litres per 100 tonne-kilometres.
 - 1.2 The scope of disclosure includes combination tractors (commonly known as semi-trucks or lorries), heavy-duty pickup trucks and vans, and vocational vehicles.
 - 1.3 The scope of disclosure includes vehicles in the fleet that weigh a minimum of 3.5 metric tons or 8,500 pounds.
 - 1.4 If fleet averages are calculated by model year for regulatory purposes, the entity shall use these performance data.
 - 1.5 In the absence of regulatory guidance on calculating a fleet average, the entity shall calculate performance based on the fuel economy of vehicles sold during the reporting period, weighted by sales volume.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the sales-weighted fuel efficiency requirement for its medium- and heavy-duty vehicles pursuant to the entity's applicable jurisdictional heavy-duty

vehicle fuel emissions standards or regulations.

- 3 If the entity operates in more than one jurisdiction, the entity shall disclose the standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable.

RT-IG-410a.2. Sales-weighted fuel efficiency for non-road equipment

- 1 The entity shall disclose its sales-weighted average fuel efficiency for its non-road equipment and vehicles.
 - 1.1 Fuel efficiency is defined as the average fuel economy of its non-road equipment, weighted by the number of each unit sold during the reporting period and measured in litres of fuel consumed per hour of operation (litres per hour).
 - 1.1.1 In calculating litres per hour, the entity shall use the model-rated fuel efficiency value for each piece of equipment if available.
 - 1.1.2 If model-rated fuel efficiency values are not available, the entity shall calculate the litres operational efficiency for the equipment, assuming normal, reasonable operating conditions (for example, for load factor, speed and environmental conditions).
 - 1.2 Non-road equipment may include excavators and other construction equipment, farm tractors and other agricultural equipment, heavy forklifts, airport ground service equipment, and utility equipment such as generators, pumps and compressors.

RT-IG-410a.3. Sales-weighted fuel efficiency for stationary generators

- 1 The entity shall disclose the sales-weighted average fuel efficiency of its stationary generators.
 - 1.1 Sales-weighted fuel efficiency is the average fuel efficiency of stationary generators sold during the reporting period, measured in kilojoules per litre.
- 2 Sales-weighted fuel efficiency is calculated as the harmonic mean of design fuel efficiency in kilojoules per litre, in which:
 - 2.1 The harmonic mean captures the average amount of fuel needed by each generator to produce a given amount of power.
 - 2.2 The harmonic mean is the reciprocal of the average of the reciprocal values.

RT-IG-410a.4. Sales-weighted emissions of (1) nitrogen oxides (NO_x) and (2) particulate matter (PM) for: (a) marine diesel engines, (b) locomotive diesel engines, (c) on-road medium- and heavy-duty engines and (d) other non-road diesel engines

- 1 The entity shall disclose the sales-weighted average emissions of (1) nitrogen oxides (NO_x) and (2) particulate matter (PM) for each of these product categories: (a) marine diesel engines, (b) locomotive diesel engines, (c) on-road medium- and heavy-duty engines and (d) other non-road diesel engines.
 - 1.1 Emissions are calculated as the average emissions of (1) NO_x and (2) PM for engines, weighted by the number of each sold during the reporting period and

measured in grammes per kilojoule.

- 1.2 Marine diesel engines, locomotive diesel engines, on-road medium- and heavy-duty engines, and other non-road diesel engines shall be defined based on applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations.

1.2.1 Other non-road diesel engines may include: excavators and other construction equipment, farm tractors and other agricultural equipment, heavy forklifts, airport ground service equipment, and utility equipment such as generators, pumps and compressors.

- 1.3 The entity shall state the calculation method used to calculate emissions.

- 1.4 The entity may disclose if any products do not meet current emissions standards established in applicable jurisdictional laws or regulations.

- 2 The entity may discuss its progress towards, and readiness for, future jurisdictional emissions standards that could affect its products.

Note to **RT-IG-410a.4**

- 1 The entity shall discuss how it manages fleet fuel economy and emissions risks and opportunities.
- 2 Relevant aspects of the approach and strategy to discuss include improvements to existing products and technologies, the introduction of new technologies, research and development efforts into advanced technologies, and partnerships with peers, academic institutions or customers (including governmental customers).

Services Sector -

Volume 51—Casinos & Gaming -

Industry Description

Publicly held casinos and gaming entities operate gambling facilities or platforms, including brick-and-mortar casinos, riverboat casinos, online gambling websites and racetracks. The industry is characterised by intense regulatory oversight, which is the main barrier to entry for new operators. Industry regulation varies significantly worldwide.

Note: Some entities in the Casinos & Gaming industry are also engaged in activities of the Hotels & Lodging or Restaurants industries. The disclosure topics for such activities are outlined in the Hotels & Lodging (SV-HL) and Restaurants (FB-RN) industries. For the purposes of this Standard, casinos and gaming entities are assumed to be engaged solely in operating gambling facilities and providing online gaming services, and therefore issues such as water management and food safety, which may be material for entities that have significant hotel and restaurant operations, are not covered by this industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	SV-CA-130a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of tables	Quantitative	Number	SV-CA-000.A
Number of slots	Quantitative	Number	SV-CA-000.B
Number of active online gaming customers ⁸⁸	Quantitative	Number	SV-CA-000.C
Total area of gaming floor	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	SV-CA-000.D

Energy Management

Topic Summary

With many facilities open 24 hours a day, the Casinos & Gaming industry requires a large amount of energy to operate. Casino facilities often have few windows and therefore rely on their buildings' mechanical systems for heating, ventilation, air-conditioning (HVAC) and lighting. Fossil fuel-based energy production and consumption contribute to significant environmental impacts, including climate change and pollution, and have the potential to impact casino entities' results of operations. Entities that rely on electricity consumption for their operations increasingly must manage energy efficiency as well as energy availability, including the risks and opportunities associated with energy sourcing from fossil fuels or from renewable and alternative energy sources.

Metrics

SV-CA-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy all are included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

- ## Volume 52—Hotels & Lodging

Hotels and lodging industry entities provide overnight accommodation, including hotels, motels and inns. This competitive industry is comprised primarily of large hotel chains in which customers base purchase decisions on a wide range of factors including quality and consistency of services, availability of locations, price, and loyalty programme offers. Entities often are structured in one or more of the following ways: direct revenue from hotel services, including room rental and food and beverage sales; management and franchise services with fee revenue from property management; and vacation residential ownership with revenue from sales of residential units.

Note: Some entities in the Hotels & Lodging industry also are engaged in activities of the Restaurants (FB-RN) industry. This Standard assumes hotel and lodging entities do not provide food and beverage services. Therefore, disclosures regarding food safety, waste and sourcing, which may be material for entities that also offer food and beverages, are not covered by this industry.

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	SV-HL-130a.1
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m³), Percentage (%)	SV-HL-140a.1
Climate Change Adaptation	Number of lodging facilities located in 100-year flood zones	Quantitative	Number	SV-HL-450a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of available room-nights	Quantitative	Number	SV-HL-000.A
Average occupancy rate ⁸⁹	Quantitative	Rate	SV-HL-000.B
Total area of lodging facilities ⁹⁰	Quantitative	Square metres (m²)	SV-HL-000.C
Number of lodging facilities and the percentage that are: (1) managed, (2) owned and leased, (3) franchised	Quantitative	Number, Percentage (%)	SV-HL-000.D

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Hotel buildings require a significant amount of energy to operate, which is a substantial portion of hotel operating expenses. The industry purchases the majority of its electricity commercially. This purchased electricity indirectly results in greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, which is a significant contributor to climate change. Entities in the industry are implementing energy

management best practices to reduce operating expenses and environmental impacts and to improve their brand value with guests, who increasingly are concerned about environmental sustainability.

Metrics

SV-HL-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data, including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

Hotel buildings require a relatively large amount of water resources to operate. Although water is not the industry's greatest operating cost, reduced water availability or significant price increases could affect financial results. This effect may be particularly acute in water-stressed regions because of supply constraints. Entities in the industry are implementing water management best practices to reduce operating expenses and environmental impacts and to improve their brand value with guests, who increasingly are concerned about environmental sustainability.

Metrics

SV-HL-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.

- 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
- 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the total amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

Climate Change Adaptation

Topic Summary

Hotels operating in climate change-exposed areas may be impacted by physical climate risks including inclement weather and flooding. Inclement weather may damage property and disrupt operations, thereby reducing asset values and revenues. In addition, hotels may face higher insurance premiums for buildings located in coastal regions or may be unable to insure their properties. Hotel operators will likely need to adapt to shifting climate trends such as rising sea levels, hurricanes, and flooding in order to maintain their climate-exposed revenue-generating properties.

Metrics

SV-HL-450a.1. Number of lodging facilities located in 100-year flood zones

- 1 The entity shall disclose the number of its lodging facilities that are located in 100-year flood zones.
 - 1.1 100-year flood zones are defined as land areas subject to a one-percent or greater chance of flooding in any given year. Such areas may also be referred

to as being subject to the one-percent annual chance flood, the one-percent annual exceedance probability flood, or the 100-year flood.

1.1.1 Examples of 100-year flood zones may include, but are not limited to, coastal flood plains, flood plains along major rivers, and areas subject to flooding from ponding in low-lying areas.

2 The scope of disclosure shall include all of the entity’s lodging facilities that are located in 100-year flood zones, regardless of the country of their location.

Volume 53—Leisure Facilities

-

Industry Description

Entities in the Leisure Facilities industry operate entertainment, travel, and recreation facilities and services. Entities in this industry operate amusement parks, film theatres, ski resorts, sports stadiums, and athletic clubs and other venues. Leisure facilities entities mainly generate revenue by providing live, digital or interactive entertainment to millions of guests and customers annually in various locations.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	SV-LF-130a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Attendance ⁹¹	Quantitative	Number	SV-LF-000.A
Number of customer-days ⁹²	Quantitative	Number	SV-LF-000.B

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Leisure facilities entities operate large outdoor and indoor facilities that may consume a significant amount of energy. Most of the industry's electricity is purchased commercially, which indirectly results in greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, a significant contributor to climate change. Entities in the industry are implementing energy management best practices to reduce operating expenses and environmental impacts and to improve their brand value with guests, who increasingly are concerned about environmental sustainability.

Metrics

SV-LF-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.

- 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Technology & Communications Sector

Volume 54—Electronic Manufacturing Services & Original Design Manufacturing

Industry Description

The Electronic Manufacturing Services (EMS) & Original Design Manufacturing (ODM) industry consists of two main segments. EMS entities provide assembly, logistics and after-market services for original equipment manufacturers. ODM entities provide engineering and design services for original equipment manufacturers and may own significant intellectual property. Although EMS & ODM entities produce equipment for a variety of sectors, the industry is associated closely with the Hardware industry, which consists of entities that design technology hardware products such as personal computers, consumer electronics and storage devices for both personal consumers and businesses.

Note: The Electronic Manufacturing Services & Original Design Manufacturing industry does not include the design of technology hardware products. Entities that design and manufacture

technology hardware products should consider the disclosure topics and metrics in the Hardware (TC-HW) industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	TC-ES-140a.1
Product Lifecycle Management	Weight of end-of-life products and e-waste recovered; percentage recycled	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	TC-ES-410a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of manufacturing facilities	Quantitative	Number	TC-ES-000.A
Area of manufacturing facilities	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	TC-ES-000.B
Number of employees	Quantitative	Number	TC-ES-000.C

Water Management

Topic Summary

The manufacturing of computers, computer components and other electronics requires significant volumes of water. Water is becoming a globally scarce resource because of increasing consumption from population growth, rapid urbanisation and climate change. Without careful planning, water scarcity may result in higher supply costs, social tensions with local communities and governments, or loss of access to water in water-scarce regions thereby presenting a critical risk to production and revenue. Electronic Manufacturing Services (EMS) &

Original Design Manufacturing (ODM) entities that improve water use efficiency may reduce operating costs and maintain a lower risk profile, ultimately affecting cost of capital and market valuation. Furthermore, entities that prioritise water use efficiency may reduce regulatory risks as applicable jurisdictional environmental laws or regulations place more emphasis on resource conservation.

Metrics

TC-ES-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly included in the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

Product Lifecycle Management

Topic Summary

Entities in the Electronic Manufacturing Services (EMS) & Original Design Manufacturing (ODM) industry, along with the industry's customers such as hardware entities, face increasing challenges associated with environmental externalities attributed to product manufacturing, transport, use and disposal. Rapid obsolescence of hardware products may worsen such externalities. The industry's products commonly contain hazardous materials, making safe end-of-life disposal a critical aspect to manage. Entities unable to minimise the environmental externalities of their products may face increased regulatory costs as jurisdictional environmental laws or regulations place more emphasis on resource conservation and waste management. Through product innovation that facilitates end-of-life product recovery and the use of less impactful materials, EMS & ODM manufacturers can achieve improvements in lifecycle impacts, reduce regulatory risks and realise cost savings.

Metrics

TC-ES-410a.1. Weight of end-of-life products and e-waste recovered; percentage recycled

- 1 The entity shall disclose the weight, in metric tons, of end-of-life material recovered, including through reverse logistics services, recycling services, product take-back programmes and refurbishment services.
 - 1.1 End-of-life material recovered is defined as products, materials and parts, including electronic waste material (e-waste), that at the end of their useful life would have otherwise been discarded as waste or used for energy recovery, but have instead been collected.
 - 1.2 The scope of end-of-life material recovered includes materials physically handled by the entity.
 - 1.3 The scope of end-of-life material recovered includes materials of which the entity did not take physical possession, but were collected by a third party for the expressed purpose of reuse, recycling or refurbishment.
 - 1.4 The scope of end-of-life material recovered excludes materials collected for repair or that are under warranty and subject to recall.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of end-of-life material recovered and subsequently recycled.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the weight of end-of-life material recovered and subsequently recycled divided by the total weight of end-of-life material recovered.
 - 2.2 Recycled material (including remanufactured material) is defined as waste material reprocessed or treated by means of production or manufacturing processes and made into a final product or a component for incorporation into a product.

- 2.3 The scope of recycled material includes material reused or reclaimed.
 - 2.3.1 Reused material is defined as recovered products or components of products used for the same purpose for which they were conceived, including products donated or refurbished by the entity or by third parties.
 - 2.3.2 Reclaimed material is defined as material processed to recover or regenerate a usable product.
 - 2.4 The scope of recycled material includes primary recycled material, co-products (outputs of equal value to primary recycled materials), by-products (outputs of lesser value to primary recycled materials) and material sent externally for further recycling.
 - 2.5 The scope of recycled material excludes portions of products and materials that are disposed of in landfills.
- 3 Electronic waste material (e-waste) shall be considered recycled only if the entity can demonstrate that this material was transferred to entities with third-party certification to a standard for e-waste recycling such as the e-Stewards® Standard for Responsible Recycling and Reuse of Electronic Equipment or the Responsible Recycling Practices (R2) Standard for Electronic Recyclers.
- 3.1 The entity shall disclose the standard(s) complied with by the entities to which it has transferred e-waste.

Volume 55—Hardware

Industry Description

Hardware industry entities design and sell technology hardware products, including computers, consumer electronics, communications equipment, storage devices, components and peripherals. Many entities in the industry rely heavily upon the Electronic Manufacturing Services & Original Design Manufacturing (EMS & ODM) industry for manufacturing services. The industry is expected to continue to grow as technology use rapidly increases, especially among emerging market consumers.

Note: Entities engaged in activities of the Software & IT Services industry (TC-SI), Internet Media & Services (TC-IM) industry or the EMS & ODM industry (TC-ES) should consider the disclosure topics and metrics in those industries

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Product Lifecycle Management	Percentage of products by revenue that contain IEC 62474 declarable substances ⁹³	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	TC-HW-410a.1
	Percentage of eligible products, by revenue, meeting the requirements for EPEAT registration or equivalent ⁹⁴	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	TC-HW-410a.2
	Percentage of eligible products, by revenue, certified to an energy efficiency certification	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	TC-HW-410a.3
	Weight of end-of-life products and e-waste recovered; percentage recycled	Quantitative	Metric tons (t), Percentage (%)	TC-HW-410a.4

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of units produced by product category ⁹⁵	Quantitative	Number	TC-HW-000.A
Area of manufacturing facilities	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	TC-HW-000.B
Percentage of production from owned facilities	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	TC-HW-000.C

Product Lifecycle Management

Topic Summary

Entities in the Hardware industry face increasing challenges associated with environmental and social externalities attributed to product manufacturing, transport, use and disposal. Rapid obsolescence of hardware products may worsen these externalities. Entities are designing more products with the entire lifecycle in mind. Specific considerations include energy

efficiency of products, hazardous material inputs, and designing for and facilitating safe end-of-life disposal and recycling. Entities that prioritise designing and manufacturing products with improved environmental and social impacts may avoid costs associated with externalities, and they may be more likely to grow consumer demand and market share, while eliminating potentially harmful materials. Furthermore, entities that minimise environmental and social externalities of products may be less exposed to increasing regulation and costs, such as those related to extended producer responsibility.

Metrics

TC-HW-410a.1. Percentage of products by revenue that contain IEC 62474 declarable substances

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of products sold during the reporting period that contain declarable substances.
 - 1.1 A product contains a declarable substance if, according to the International Electrotechnical Commission's IEC 62474—*Material Declaration for Products of and for the Electrotechnical Industry*, it contains an amount of the declarable substance that is:
 - 1.1.1 Above the 'reporting threshold'
 - 1.1.2 Within the scope of the 'reporting application' identified
 - 1.1.3 Within the mandatory 'reporting requirement'
 - 1.2 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the revenue from electrical, electronic and related technology products sold that contain a declarable substance(s) divided by total revenue from electrical, electronic and related technology products sold.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes all electrical, electronic and related technology products, including products from an entity not required to declare or otherwise making declarations, according to IEC 62474.

Note to TC-HW-410a.1

- 1 The entity shall describe how it manages the use of substances listed as declarable substance groups or declarable substances in IEC 62474, including a discussion of specific operational processes during which use of these substances is considered and the actions the entity has taken to manage the use of these substances.
 - 1.1 Relevant management approaches and actions to describe may include:
 - 1.1.1 Product design criteria for the exclusion of substances (for example, banned substances lists)
 - 1.1.2 Use of material substitution assessments, materials and parts procurement guidelines, product safety testing, product declarations (for example, material safety data sheets) and product labelling

- 2 If the entity assesses and manages the impact of known or potentially toxic substances with reference to other regulations, industry norms or accepted chemical lists, it may identify those practices, and it shall describe the degree of overlap with IEC 62474.

TC-HW-410a.2. Percentage of eligible products, by revenue, meeting the requirements for EPEAT registration or equivalent

- 1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of products sold during the reporting period that meet the requirements for Electronic Product Environmental Assessment Tool (EPEAT) registration or an equivalent standard.
 - 1.1 A product meets the requirements of EPEAT registration if it appears on the EPEAT Registry, or the entity can otherwise demonstrate that the product meets these requirements.
 - 1.2 Standards that are equivalent to EPEAT include those that have criteria and requirements related to substantially similar topics, such as:
 - 1.2.1 Reduction or elimination of environmentally sensitive materials
 - 1.2.2 Material selection and declaration
 - 1.2.3 Design for end-of-life
 - 1.2.4 Product longevity or lifecycle extension
 - 1.2.5 Energy conservation
 - 1.2.6 End-of-life management
 - 1.2.7 Corporate performance
 - 1.2.8 Packaging
 - 1.3 Examples of standards equivalent to EPEAT may include the Total Cost of Ownership (TCO) Development fourth generation family of standards.
- 2 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the revenue from products sold during the reporting period that meet the requirements for EPEAT registration, or an equivalent standard, divided by total revenue from products eligible for EPEAT registration.
 - 2.1 Eligible products are those in a product category for which EPEAT registration exists, which includes desktop computers, notebook computers, computer displays and mobile phones.
 - 2.2 Product categories currently outside the scope of EPEAT registration, but for which an equivalent standard exists may be considered eligible products.

Note to TC-HW-410a.2

- 1 The entity shall describe how it includes environmentally focused principles into product design.
 - 1.1 Environmentally focused principles or criteria include those outlined in the International Electrotechnical Commission's (IEC) Environmentally Conscious

Design (IEC-62430 or IEC-62075).

1.2 The discussion shall include:

1.2.1 Elimination of toxic substances

1.2.2 Use of recycled materials

1.2.3 Reduction of packaging

1.2.4 Design for consolidated shipping

1.2.5 Design of low energy consumption products

1.2.6 Design for product take-back

1.2.7 Labelling for recycling

1.2.8 Elimination or replacement of materials subject to resource scarcity (for example, cobalt and rare earth elements)

TC-HW-410a.3. Percentage of eligible products, by revenue, certified to an energy efficiency certification

1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of its revenue from eligible products certified to an energy efficiency certification.

1.1 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the revenue from products meeting the requirements for the applicable certification divided by total revenue from products eligible for certification by certification.

1.1.1 Eligible products are those in a product category for which certification exists, which may include: audio and video equipment, battery charging systems, computers, data centre storage, displays, enterprise servers, imaging equipment, set-top boxes and cable boxes, large network equipment, small network equipment, telephony, televisions and uninterruptible power supplies.

2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of products by revenue by energy efficiency certification.

2.1 If the entity has products certified to a previous version of an energy efficiency certification, it shall disclose this information, including which version of the standard to which its products are certified, a breakdown of how many products are certified to that version of the standard, and time lines to achieve certification to the most current version of the standard.

3 For each jurisdiction where the entity sells products, the entity shall disclose the applicable certification programme.

TC-HW-410a.4. Weight of end-of-life products and e-waste recovered; percentage recycled

1 The entity shall disclose the weight, in metric tons, of end-of-life material recovered, including through reverse logistics services, recycling services, product take-back

programmes and refurbishment services.

- 1.1 End-of-life material recovered is defined as products, materials and parts, including electronic waste material (e-waste) that at the end of their useful life would have otherwise been disposed of as waste or used for energy recovery, but have instead been collected.
- 1.2 The scope of end-of-life material recovered includes materials physically handled by the entity.
- 1.3 The scope of end-of-life material recovered includes materials of which the entity did not take physical possession, but were collected by a third party for the expressed purpose of reuse, recycling or refurbishment.
- 1.4 The scope of end-of-life material recovered excludes materials collected for repair or that are under warranty and subject to recall.

2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of end-of-life material recovered and subsequently recycled.

- 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the weight of end-of-life material recovered and subsequently recycled divided by the total weight of end-of-life material recovered.
- 2.2 Recycled material (including remanufactured material) is defined as waste material reprocessed or treated by means of production or manufacturing processes and made into a final product or a component for incorporation into a product.
- 2.3 The scope of recycled material includes material reused or reclaimed.
 - 2.3.1 Reused material is defined as recovered products or components of products used for the same purpose for which they were conceived, including products donated or refurbished by the entity or by third parties.
 - 2.3.2 Reclaimed material is defined as material processed to recover or regenerate a usable product.
- 2.4 The scope of recycled material includes primary recycled material, co-products (outputs of equal value to primary recycled materials), by-products (outputs of lesser value to primary recycled materials) and material sent externally for further recycling.
- 2.5 The scope of recycled material excludes portions of products and materials discarded in landfills.
- 2.6 Electronic waste material (e-waste) shall be considered recycled only if the entity can demonstrate that it transferred this material to entities with third-party certification to a standard for e-waste recycling such as the e-Stewards® Standard for Responsible Recycling and Reuse of Electronic Equipment or the Responsible Recycling Practices (R2) Standard for Electronic Recyclers.

- 2.6.1 The entity shall disclose the standard(s) complied with by the entities to which it has transferred e-waste.

Volume 56—Internet Media & Services

Industry Description

The Internet Media & Services industry consists of two main segments. Entities in the Internet Media segment provide search engines and internet advertising channels, online gaming, and online communities such as social networks, as well as content, which is usually easily searchable, such as educational, medical, health, sports or news content. Entities in the internet-based Services segment sell services mainly through the internet. The industry generates revenue primarily from online advertising, usually on free content, with other revenue sources being subscription fees, content sales or the sale of user information to third parties.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Environmental Footprint of Hardware Infrastructure	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	TC-IM-130a.1
	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	TC-IM-130a.2
	Discussion of the integration of environmental considerations into strategic planning for data centre needs	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TC-IM-130a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Entity-defined measure of user activity ⁹⁶	Quantitative	See note	TC-IM-000.A
(1) Data processing capacity, (2) percentage outsourced ⁹⁷	Quantitative	See note	TC-IM-000.B
(1) Amount of data storage, (2) percentage outsourced ⁹⁸	Quantitative	Petabytes, Percentage (%)	TC-IM-000.C

Environmental Footprint of Hardware Infrastructure

Topic Summary

With the Internet & Media Services industry providing a growing amount of content and service offerings, entities in this industry increasingly own, operate or rent more data centres and other hardware. Thus, managing the energy and water use associated with IT hardware infrastructure is relevant to value creation. Data centres must be powered continuously. Energy supply disruptions may have a material impact on operations depending on the disruption magnitude and timing. Entities face a trade-off between energy and water consumption because of data centre cooling needs. Cooling data centres with water instead of chillers improves energy efficiency, but this method may create dependence on significant local water resources. Data centre specification decisions are important for managing costs, obtaining a reliable energy and water supply, and reducing reputational risks, particularly with the increasing global regulatory focus on climate change and the opportunities arising from energy efficiency and renewable energy innovations.

Metrics

TC-IM-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.

- 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
- 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
- 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).
- 5 The entity may disclose the trailing 12-month (TTM) weighted average power usage effectiveness (PUE) for its data centres.
- 5.1 PUE is defined as the ratio of the total amount of power used by a computer data centre facility to the amount of power delivered to computing equipment.
- 5.2 If disclosing PUE, the entity shall follow the guidance and calculation methodology described in *PUE™: A Comprehensive Examination of the Metric* (2014), published by ASHRAE and The Green Grid Association.

TC-IM-130a.2. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.

- 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes, and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.
 - 2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.
- 3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in operations.
 - 3.1 Water consumption is defined as:
 - 3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge
 - 3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly included in the entity's product or service
 - 3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea
- 4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.
- 5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.
- 6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

TC-IM-130a.3. Discussion of the integration of environmental considerations into strategic planning for data centre needs

- 1 The entity shall describe how it integrates environmental considerations, including energy and water use, into strategic planning for data centres.
- 2 Discussion shall include, but is not limited to, how environmental factors impact the entity's decisions regarding the siting, design, construction, refurbishment and operation of data centres.
 - 2.1 Environmental factors and criteria may include:
 - 2.1.1 Location-based environmental factors, such as regional humidity,

average temperature and water availability.

2.1.2 Environmental regulations, such as energy efficiency standards and national- or state-level carbon legislation on pricing and carbon intensity of grid electricity.

3 The scope of disclosure includes considerations for existing owned data centres, the development of new data centres, and the outsourcing of data centre services, if relevant.

Volume 57—Semiconductors

Industry Description

Semiconductors industry entities design or manufacture semiconductor devices, integrated circuits, their raw materials and components, or capital equipment. Some entities in the industry provide outsourced manufacturing, assembly or other services for designers of semiconductor devices.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	(1) Gross global Scope 1 emissions and (2) amount of total emissions from perfluorinated compounds	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	TC-SC-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TC-SC-110a.2
Energy Management in Manufacturing	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	TC-SC-130a.1

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Water Management	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	TC-SC-140a.1
Product Lifecycle Management	Percentage of products by revenue that contain IEC 62474 declarable substances ⁹⁹	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	TC-SC-410a.1
	Processor energy efficiency at a system-level for: (1) servers, (2) desktops and (3) laptops ¹⁰⁰	Quantitative	Various, by product category	TC-SC-410a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Total production ¹⁰¹	Quantitative	See note	TC-SC-000.A
Percentage of production from owned facilities	Quantitative	Percentage (%)	TC-SC-000.B

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Entities in the Semiconductors industry generate greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, particularly those from perfluorinated compounds, from semiconductor manufacturing operations. GHG emissions may create regulatory compliance costs and operating risks for semiconductors entities, although resulting financial effects may vary depending on the magnitude of emissions and the prevailing emissions regulations. Entities that cost-effectively manage GHG emissions through greater energy efficiency, the use of alternative chemicals or manufacturing process advances may benefit from improved operating efficiency and reduced regulatory risk.

Metrics

TC-SC-110a.1. (1) Gross global Scope 1 emissions and (2) amount of total emissions from perfluorinated compounds

- 1 The entity shall disclose its (1) gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e) calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 The entity shall disclose its (2) gross global Scope 1 GHG emissions, in metric tons of CO₂-e, originated from perfluorinated compounds.
- 3 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 3.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:
 - 3.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 3.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 3.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 3.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 3.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 3.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 3.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG*

Protocol, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 4 The entity may discuss any change in its emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 5 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 6 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

TC-SC-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined according to *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.3 The entity shall specifically discuss its strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 GHG emissions that originate from perfluorinated compounds.
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;

- 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 3.1 Relevant activities and investments may include energy efficiency efforts, demand-response programmes and development of renewable energy portfolios consistent with the IPCC Fifth Assessment Report: Climate Change 2014: Mitigation of Climate Change, Contribution of Working Group III.
 - 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
 - 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
 - 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

Energy Management in Manufacturing

Topic Summary

Energy is a critical input for manufacturing semiconductor devices. The price of conventional grid electricity and volatility of fossil fuel prices may increase because of evolving climate change regulations and new incentives for energy efficiency and renewable energy, among other factors, while alternative energy sources become more cost-competitive. Decisions regarding energy sourcing and type, as well as alternative energy use, may create trade-offs related to the energy supply's cost and reliability for operations. As industry innovation adds complexity to manufacturing processes, new technologies to manufacture semiconductors may consume more energy unless entities invest in the energy efficiency of their operations. The way an entity manages energy efficiency, reliance on different types of energy, the associated sustainability risks, and alternative energy source access may affect financial performance.

Metrics

TC-SC-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity

itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.

- 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
- 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).

2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.

- 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.

3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.

- 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
- 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
- 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme

for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Water Management

Topic Summary

Water is critical to the semiconductor production process, which requires significant volumes of 'ultra-pure' water for cleaning purposes, to avoid trace molecules from affecting product quality. As manufacturing becomes more complex, entities in the industry are discovering the importance of reducing ultra-pure water use. Water is becoming a scarce resource around the world, because of increasing consumption from population growth and rapid urbanisation, and reduced supplies because of climate change. Furthermore, water pollution in developing countries makes available water supplies unusable or expensive to treat. Without careful planning, water scarcity may result in higher supply costs, social tensions with local communities and governments, or loss of water access in water-scarce regions, thereby presenting a critical risk to production. Semiconductor entities that increase water use efficiency during manufacturing may maintain a lower risk profile and face reduced regulatory risks as local, regional and national environmental laws place increasing emphasis on resource conservation.

Metrics

TC-SC-140a.1. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.
 - 1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.
- 2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.
 - 2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.

2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.

3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in its operations.

3.1 Water consumption is defined as:

3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge

3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service

3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea

4 The entity shall analyse all of its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.

6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

Product Lifecycle Management

Topic Summary

As an increasing number of devices become connected to each other and to the internet, semiconductor entities face greater demand for products that increase computing power and decrease energy costs. Semiconductor machinery and device manufacturers may reduce the environmental and human health impacts of their products by increasing the energy-efficiency of equipment and chips and reducing the use of harmful materials in products. As consumer demand grows for energy-efficient devices that increase battery life, reduce heat output and decrease energy consumption, semiconductor manufacturers that satisfy these may gain a competitive advantage, driving revenue and market share growth. Entities also may benefit from reducing the use of toxic materials from chips destined for consumer devices, which has implications for the end-of-life management of electronic waste, an issue of growing legislative importance in many countries.

Metrics

TC-SC-410a.1. Percentage of products by revenue that contain IEC 62474 declarable substances

1 The entity shall disclose the percentage of products sold during the reporting period that contain declarable substances.

- 1.1 A product contains a declarable substance if, according to the International Electrotechnical Commission's IEC 62474—Material Declaration for Products of and for the Electrotechnical Industry, it contains an amount of the declarable substance that is:
 - 1.1.1 Above the 'reporting threshold'
 - 1.1.2 Within the scope of the 'reporting application' identified
 - 1.1.3 Within the mandatory 'reporting requirement'
 - 1.2 The entity shall calculate the percentage as the revenue from electrical, electronic and related technology products sold that contain a declarable substance(s) divided by total revenue from electrical, electronic and related technology products sold.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes all electrical, electronic and related technology products, including products from an entity not required to declare, or otherwise make declarations, according to IEC 62474.

Note to **TC-SC-410a.1**

- 1 The entity shall describe how it manages the use of substances that appear as declarable substance groups or declarable substances in IEC 62474, including a discussion of specific operational processes during which use of these substances is considered as well as a discussion of actions the entity has taken to manage the use of these substances.
 - 1.1 Relevant management approaches and actions to describe may include:
 - 1.1.1 Product design criteria for the exclusion of substances (for example, banned substances lists)
 - 1.1.2 Use of material substitution assessments, materials and parts procurement guidelines, product safety testing, product declarations (for example, material safety data sheets), and product labelling
- 2 If the entity assesses and manages the impact of known or potentially toxic substances with reference to other regulations, industry norms or accepted chemical lists, it may identify those practices, and it shall describe the degree of overlap with IEC 62474.

TC-SC-410a.2. Processor energy efficiency at a system-level for: (1) servers, (2) desktops and (3) laptops

- 1 The entity shall disclose the energy efficiency of its processors based on benchmarked performance per watt of energy consumed for (1) servers, (2) desktops and (3) laptops, using the following parameters:
 - 1.1 Representative product: The entity shall calculate performance using a representative product for each product category (servers, desktops, laptops), in which a representative product typically would be the entity's bestselling specification of processor in the product category. If the entity determines its

representative product differently, it shall explain the criteria it used in this determination.

- 1.2 System-level testing: Testing shall be conducted—and disclosure shall be made—at the system-level for a computer integrating the entity's processor and not at a component-level. The entity shall conduct testing using a representative computer system structure, such as the bestselling system using the entity's processor or one that is widely commercially available.
- 1.3 Specified benchmark: At a minimum, the entity shall disclose performance to the benchmarks defined below for each product category; the entity may disclose performance to additional benchmarks.

2 As described below, the entity shall conduct testing and disclose performance, depending on product category, consistent with guidance provided by:

- 2.1 The Standard Performance Evaluation Entity (SPEC)
- 2.2 MobileMark®

3 For (1) servers the entity shall conduct testing according to the SPEC Power SPECpower_ssj2008 and disclose the results as: overall ssj_ops/watt

4 For (2) desktop computers the entity shall conduct testing according to the SPEC CPU2006 benchmark and disclose results as both:

- 4.1 SPECspeed2017_int_base score/watt
- 4.2 SPECspeed2017_fp_basescore/watt

5 For (3) laptops the entity shall conduct testing according to the MobileMark® 2014 v1.5 and disclose results as both:

- 5.1 Performance qualification score
- 5.2 Battery life score (in minutes)

6 The entity shall consider the guidance references provided by SPEC and MobileMark® as normative references; thus any future updates made to them shall be considered updates to this guidance.

7 The entity may additionally disclose energy efficiency performance for other product categories, for which a benchmark is not specified above (for example, workstations, netbooks, tablets, mobile phones, and storage), using a relevant benchmark.

- 7.1 The entity shall describe the parameters it used to select and test to applicable benchmarks.

Note to **TC-SC-410a.2**

- 1 The entity shall discuss how it incorporates product energy efficiency considerations into design for new and emerging usage patterns in all relevant product categories.

- 1.2 The discussion may include how, in the entity's view, the energy efficiency of processors is influenced by factors such as growth of new product categories (for example, machine-to-machine communication), new usage patterns (for example, increased data consumption via mobile devices), purchasing specifications or consumer demand (for example, environmentally conscious consumers).

Volume 58—Software & IT Services

Industry Description

The Software & Information Technology (IT) Services industry offers products and services globally to retail, business and government customers, and includes entities that develop and sell applications software, infrastructure software and middleware. The industry generally is competitive but with dominant players in some segments. Although relatively immature, the industry is characterised by high-growth entities that place a heavy emphasis on innovation and depend on human and intellectual capital. The industry also includes IT services entities delivering specialised IT functions, such as consulting and outsourced services. New industry business models include cloud computing, software as a service, virtualisation, machine-to-machine communication, big data analysis and machine learning. Additionally, brand value is important for entities in the industry to scale and achieve network effects, whereby wide adoption of a particular software product may result in self-perpetuating growth in sales.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Environmental Footprint of Hardware Infrastructure	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	TC-SI-130a.1
	(1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress	Quantitative	Thousand cubic metres (m ³), Percentage (%)	TC-SI-130a.2
	Discussion of the integration of environmental	Discussion and	n/a	TC-SI-130a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Managing Systemic Risks from Technology Disruptions	considerations into strategic planning for data centre needs	Analysis		
	Number of (1) performance issues and (2) service disruptions; (3) total customer downtime ¹⁰²	Quantitative	Number, Days	TC-SI-550a.1
	Description of business continuity risks related to disruptions of operations	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TC-SI-550a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
(1) Number of licences or subscriptions, (2) percentage cloud-based	Quantitative	Number, Percentage (%)	TC-SI-000.A
(1) Data processing capacity, (2) percentage outsourced ¹⁰³	Quantitative	See note	TC-SI-000.B
(1) Amount of data storage, (2) percentage outsourced ¹⁰⁴	Quantitative	Petabytes, Percentage (%)	TC-SI-000.C

Environmental Footprint of Hardware Infrastructure

Topic Summary

With the growth of cloud-based service offerings, entities in this industry own, operate or rent increasingly more data centres and other hardware. Thus, managing the energy and water use associated with IT hardware infrastructure is relevant to value creation. Data centres must be powered continuously, and disruptions to the energy supply can have a material effect on operations, depending on the magnitude and timing of the disruption. Entities face a trade-off between energy and water consumption because of data centre cooling needs. Cooling data centres with water instead of chillers improves energy efficiency, but this method may create dependence on significant local water resources. Data centre specification decisions are important for managing costs, obtaining a reliable supply of energy and water, and reducing

reputational risks, particularly with the increasing global regulatory focus on climate change and the opportunities arising from energy efficiency and renewable energy innovations.

Metrics

TC-SI-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

5 The entity may disclose the trailing 12-month (TTM) weighted average power usage effectiveness (PUE) for its data centres.

5.1 PUE is defined as the ratio of the total amount of power used by a computer data centre facility to the amount of power delivered to computing equipment.

5.2 If disclosing PUE, the entity shall follow the guidance and calculation methodology described in *PUE™: A Comprehensive Examination of the Metric* (2014), published by ASHRAE and The Green Grid Association.

TC-SI-130a.2. (1) Total water withdrawn, (2) total water consumed; percentage of each in regions with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress

1 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, withdrawn from all sources.

1.1 Water sources include surface water (including water from wetlands, rivers, lakes and oceans), groundwater, rainwater collected directly and stored by the entity, and water and wastewater obtained from municipal water supplies, water utilities or other entities.

2 The entity may disclose portions of its supply by source if, for example, significant portions of withdrawals are from non-freshwater sources.

2.1 Fresh water may be defined according to the local laws and regulations where the entity operates. If no legal definition exists, fresh water shall be considered to be water that has less than 1,000 parts per million of dissolved solids.

2.2 Water obtained from a water utility in compliance with jurisdictional drinking water regulations can be assumed to meet the definition of fresh water.

3 The entity shall disclose the amount of water, in thousands of cubic metres, consumed in operations.

3.1 Water consumption is defined as:

3.1.1 Water that evaporates during withdrawal, use and discharge

3.1.2 Water that is directly or indirectly incorporated into the entity's product or service

3.1.3 Water that does not otherwise return to the same catchment area from which it was withdrawn, such as water returned to another catchment area or the sea

4 The entity shall analyse all its operations for water risks and identify activities that withdraw and consume water in locations with High (40–80%) or Extremely High (>80%) Baseline Water Stress as classified by the World Resources Institute's (WRI) Water Risk Atlas tool, Aqueduct.

5 The entity shall disclose water withdrawn in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water withdrawn.

6 The entity shall disclose water consumed in locations with High or Extremely High Baseline Water Stress as a percentage of the total water consumed.

TC-SI-130a.3. Discussion of the integration of environmental considerations into strategic planning for data centre needs

1 The entity shall describe how it integrates environmental considerations, including energy and water use, into strategic planning for data centres.

2 Discussion shall include, but is not limited to, how environmental factors impact the entity's decisions regarding the siting, design, construction, refurbishment, and operations of data centres.

2.1 Environmental factors and criteria may include:

2.1.1 Location-based environmental factors, such as regional humidity, average temperature and water availability.

2.1.2 Environmental regulations, such as energy efficiency standards and national- or state-level carbon legislation on pricing, and carbon intensity of grid electricity.

3 The scope of disclosure includes considerations for existing owned data centres, development of new data centres and outsourcing of data centre services, where relevant.

Managing Systemic Risks from Technology Disruptions

Topic Summary

With trends towards increased cloud computing and Software as a Service (SaaS), software and IT service providers must ensure they have robust infrastructure and policies in place to minimise disruptions to their services. Disruptions such as programming errors or server downtime may generate systemic risks, because computing and data storage functions move from individual entity servers in various industries to data centres of cloud-computing service providers. The risks are increased particularly if the affected customers are in sensitive sectors, such as financial institutions or utilities, which are considered critical national infrastructure. Entities' investments in improving the reliability and quality of their IT infrastructure and services may attract and retain customers, thereby creating revenue and opportunities in new markets.

Metrics

TC-SI-550a.1. Number of (1) performance issues and (2) service disruptions; (3) total customer downtime

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the number of performance issues in software and information technology (IT) services provided to customers.
 - 1.1 Performance issues are defined as any planned or unplanned downtime causing an interruption, of more than 10 minutes but less than or equal to 30 minutes, in the provision of cloud-based services to customers.
 - 1.2 Performance issues may include those caused by technical failures, programming errors, cyber-attacks, weather events or natural disasters at hosting facilities.
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the number of service disruptions in software and IT services provided to customers.
 - 2.1 Service disruptions are defined as any planned or unplanned downtime causing an interruption of more than 30 minutes in provision of cloud-based services to customers.
 - 2.2 Service disruptions may include those caused by technical failures, programming errors, cyber-attacks, weather events or natural disasters at hosting facilities.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the total customer downtime related to performance issues and service disruptions in software and IT services provided to customers.
 - 3.1 Total customer downtime is defined as the interruption duration of each service disruption multiplied by the number of software and IT services licences affected, reported in licence-days. For context, the entity shall indicate the licensing basis (for example, number of seats, number of CPU cores, number of cloud subscriptions) and whether the licences are consumption-based or capacity-based.

Note to **TC-SI-550a.1**

- 1 For each significant service disruption, the entity shall disclose the duration of the disruption, the extent of disruption and the root cause, as well as any corrective actions taken to prevent future disruptions. Where material, the entity shall disclose the associated cost incurred, such as remediation costs to correct technology or process issues, as well as any liability costs.
- 2 A service disruption is considered significant if the cost to correct it is material or if it is disruptive to a large number of customers or fundamental business operations in a manner that affects time to market, revenue capture or other material parameters.

TC-SI-550a.2. Description of business continuity risks related to disruptions of operations

- 1 The entity shall describe potential business continuity risks associated with technology disruptions affecting operations.
 - 1.1 Examples of disruptions may include those caused by technical failures, programming errors, cyber-attacks, weather events or natural disasters at hosting facilities.
- 2 The entity shall discuss measures implemented to manage business continuity risks, such as technologies or processes that reduce the effects of disruptions, enhance the resilience of systems, insure against loss, or provide redundancies to critical business operations.
- 3 The entity shall identify which critical business operations support cloud-based services, and the entity shall further note whether those operations are owned or outsourced.
- 4 The entity may discuss estimated amount of potential loss, probability of that loss and the associated time frame. These estimates may be based on insurance figures or other third-party or internal assessments of potential loss.

Volume 59—Telecommunication Services

Industry Description

Telecommunication Services industry entities provide a range of services from wireless and wireline telecommunications to cable and satellite services. The wireless services segment provides direct communication through radio-based cellular networks and operates and maintains the associated switching and transmission facilities. The wireline segment provides local and long-distance voice communication via the Public Switched Telephone Network. Wireline carriers also offer voice over internet protocol (VoIP) telephone, television and broadband internet services over an expanding network of fibre optic cables. Cable providers distribute television programming from cable networks to subscribers. They typically also provide consumers with video services, high-speed internet service and VoIP. Traditionally, these services are bundled into packages that charge subscribers a single payment. Satellite entities distribute TV programming through broadcasting satellites orbiting the earth or through

ground stations. Entities serve customers primarily in their domestic markets, although some entities operate in more than one country.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Environmental Footprint of Operations	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	TC-TL-130a.1
Managing Systemic Risks from Technology Disruptions	(1) System average interruption duration, (2) system average interruption frequency and (3) customer average interruption duration ¹⁰⁵	Quantitative	Minutes, Number	TC-TL-550a.1
	Discussion of systems to provide unimpeded service during service disruptions	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TC-TL-550a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of wireless subscribers ¹⁰⁶	Quantitative	Number	TC-TL-000.A
Number of wireline subscribers ¹⁰⁷	Quantitative	Number	TC-TL-000.B
Number of broadband subscribers ¹⁰⁸	Quantitative	Number	TC-TL-000.C
Network traffic	Quantitative	Petabytes	TC-TL-000.D

Environmental Footprint of Operations

Topic Summary

Individual telecommunication services entities consume substantial amounts of energy. Depending on the source of energy and generation efficiency, electricity consumption by

telecom network infrastructure can contribute significantly to environmental externalities, such as climate change, creating sustainability risks for the industry. Although network equipment and data centres are becoming more energy efficient, their overall energy consumption is increasing with the expansion in telecommunications infrastructure and data traffic. How telecommunication services entities manage their overall energy efficiency or intensity, reliance on different types of energy, and how they access alternative sources of energy may become increasingly material as the global regulatory focus on climate change increases, creating incentives for energy efficiency and renewable energy as well as pricing of greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions. Because energy expenditures may be significant in the industry, entities that improve operational energy efficiency may increase cost savings and profit margins.

Metrics

TC-TL-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of

Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.

3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.

3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.

3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

5 The entity may disclose the trailing 12-month (TTM) weighted average power usage effectiveness (PUE) for its data centres.

5.1 PUE is defined as the ratio of the total amount of power used by a computer data centre facility to the amount of power delivered to computing equipment.

5.2 If disclosing PUE, the entity shall follow the guidance and calculation methodology described in *PUE™: A Comprehensive Examination of the Metric* (2014), published by ASHRAE and The Green Grid Association.

Managing Systemic Risks from Technology Disruptions

Topic Summary

Given the systemic importance of telecommunications networks, systemic or economy-wide disruption may result if the telecommunication services network infrastructure is unreliable and prone to business continuity risks. As the frequency of extreme weather events associated with climate change increases, telecommunication services entities may face growing physical threats to network infrastructure, with potentially significant social or systemic impacts. In the absence of resilient and reliable infrastructure, entities may lose revenue associated with service disruptions or face unplanned capital expenditures to repair damaged or compromised

equipment. Entities that successfully manage business continuity risks, including identifying critical business operations, and that enhance resilience of the system may substantially reduce their risk exposure and decrease their cost of capital. While implementation of such measures may have upfront costs, entities may gain long-term benefits in terms of lower remediation expenses in cases of high-impact disruptions.

Metrics

TC-TL-550a.1. (1) System average interruption duration, (2) system average interruption frequency and (3) customer average interruption duration

- 1 The entity shall disclose its (1) system average interruption duration in minutes.
 - 1.1 The system average interruption duration is defined as the total duration of service disruptions for the average customer during the reporting period.
 - 1.2 A service disruption is defined as a significant degradation or interruption in the ability of a significant number of end users to establish and maintain a channel of communications in a particular service offered by the entity (voice, SMS, broadband, mobile data, etc.) because of failure or degradation in the performance of a communications provider's network.
 - 1.3 The entity shall calculate its system average interruption duration as the sum of the number of customers interrupted in each service disruption multiplied by the duration of each service disruption (restoration time), divided by the total number of customers served, written as $\sum(r_i \times N_i) / N_T$.
 - 1.3.1 $\sum$ = Summation function
 - 1.3.2 r_i = Restoration time for each service disruption, in minutes
 - 1.3.3 N_i = Total number of customers interrupted in each service disruption
 - 1.3.4 N_T = Average number of unique customer accounts with active service during the reporting period
- 2 The entity shall disclose its (2) system average interruption frequency as a number of service disruptions per customer.
 - 2.1 The system average interruption frequency is defined as the average number of times a customer experienced a service disruption during the reporting period.
 - 2.2 The entity shall calculate its system average interruption frequency as the total number of customers interrupted divided by the total number of customers served, written as $\sum(N_i) / N_T$.
 - 2.2.1 $\sum$ = Summation function
 - 2.2.2 N_i = Number of customers interrupted in each service disruption
 - 2.2.3 N_T = Average number of unique customer accounts with active service during the reporting period
- 3 The entity shall disclose its (3) customer average interruption duration in minutes.

- 3.1 The customer average interruption duration is defined as the average amount of time required to restore service once a service disruption has occurred.
- 3.2 The entity shall calculate its customer average interruption duration as the sum of the number of customers interrupted in each incident multiplied by the duration of each service disruption (restoration time), divided by the total number of customers interrupted, written as

$$\sum(N_i \times r_i) / \sum(N_i).$$
 - 3.2.1 $\sum$ = Summation function
 - 3.2.2 r_i = Restoration time for each service disruption, in minutes
 - 3.2.3 N_i = Number of customers interrupted in each service disruption

- 4 The scope of disclosure is restricted to:
 - 4.1 Wireline communications services
 - 4.2 Wireless communications services
 - 4.3 Internet service provider (ISP) services

Note to **TC-TL-550a.1**

- 1 The system average interruption duration, system average interruption frequency, and customer average interruption duration are related metrics, and one can be derived from the other two. For example, the system average interruption duration (sub-metric 1) can be calculated by multiplying the system average interruption frequency (sub-metric 2) by the customer average interruption duration (sub-metric 3).
- 2 For each significant service interruption, the entity shall disclose the duration of the disruption, the extent of impact and the root cause, as well as any corrective actions taken to prevent future disruptions.
 - 2.1 If relevant, the entity shall show costs incurred, such as those because of organisational change, training or technology expenditures required for remediation, lost revenue, payment of warranties or costs associated with breach of contract.

TC-TL-550a.2. Discussion of systems to provide unimpeded service during service disruptions

- 1 The entity shall discuss business continuity risks associated with service disruptions affecting operations.
 - 1.1 Examples of disruptions may include those caused by technical failures, programming errors, cyberattacks, weather events or natural disasters at hosting facilities.
- 2 The entity shall discuss how it manages business continuity risks, including an identification of critical business operations and redundancies or other measures

implemented to enhance resilience of the system or to reduce impact, including insurance against loss.

- 3 The entity may discuss the estimated amount of potential loss, probability of that loss and the associated time frame. These estimates may be based on insurance figures or other third-party or internal assessments of potential loss.

Transportation Sector -

Volume 60—Air Freight & Logistics -

Industry Description

Air Freight & Logistics industry entities provide freight services and transportation logistics to both businesses and individuals. The industry consists of three main segments: air freight transportation, post and courier services, and transportation logistics services. Entities in the industry earn revenue from one or more of the segments and range from non-asset-based to asset-heavy. Transportation logistics services include contracting with road, rail, marine and air freight entities to select and hire appropriate transportation. Services also may include customs brokerage, distribution management, vendor consolidation, cargo insurance, purchase order management and customised logistics information. The industry is crucial to global trade, granting it a degree of demand stability.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	TR-AF-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TR-AF-110a.2
	Fuel consumed by (1) road transport, percentage (a) natural gas and (b) renewable,	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ),	TR-AF-110a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	and (2) air transport, percentage (a) alternative and (b) sustainable		Percentage (%)	
Supply Chain Management	Total greenhouse gas (GHG) footprint across transport modes	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e per ton-kilometre	TR-AF-430a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Revenue ton kilometres (RTK) for: (1) road transport and (2) air transport ¹⁰⁹	Quantitative	RTK	TR-AF-000.A
Load factor for: (1) road transport and (2) air transport ¹¹⁰	Quantitative	Rate	TR-AF-000.B
Number of employees, number of truck drivers	Quantitative	Number	TR-AF-000.C

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Air Freight & Logistics industry entities generate direct greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions that contribute to climate change. Emissions are generated from fuel combustion by both air and road freight operations. Given the altitude of the emissions from jet fuel, air freight makes an especially potent contribution to climate change. Management of GHG emissions is likely to affect air freight and logistics entities' cost structure over time because emissions are tied directly to fuel use, and thus to operating expenses. Fuel efficiency and alternative fuels usage may reduce fuel costs or limit exposure to volatile fuel pricing, future regulatory costs and other consequences of GHG emissions. While newer aircraft and trucks are generally more fuel efficient, existing fleets may be retrofitted. Capital investments in more fuel-efficient aeroplanes or vehicles and emerging fuel-management technology may reduce fuel expenses and improve profitability. These investments also may help entities capture market share of customers seeking low-carbon shipping solutions.

Metrics

TR-AF-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 3 The entity may discuss any change in emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data is from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

TR-AF-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.

- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 3.1 Aviation-related activities and investments may include fuel optimisation efforts such as the use of ground power and pre-conditioned air rather than auxiliary power units (APU) when parked at a gate, adjusting flight speed to optimise fuel efficiency, route design (for example, NextGen), use of winglets, reduction in aircraft weight and upgrading of the fleet with new aircraft.
 - 3.2 Road transportation-related activities and investments may include fuel optimisation efforts such as route and load optimisation, adoption of technology such as engine and powertrain efficiency and aerodynamic improvements, use of electric- or natural gas-powered vehicles, weight reduction, improved tyre rolling resistance, hybridisation and automatic engine shutdown.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

TR-AF-110a.3. Fuel consumed by (1) road transport, percentage (a) natural gas and (b) renewable, and (2) air transport, percentage (a) alternative and (b) sustainable

- 1 The entity shall disclose the amount of fuel consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ), categorised by (1) road transport-related operations, and separately, (2) air transport-related operations.
 - 1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.
 - 1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:
 - 1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, less any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period
 - 1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicles
 - 1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses
- 2 In disclosing fuel consumed by (1) road transport-related operations, the entity additionally shall disclose the percentage of fuel consumed that was (a) natural gas.

2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of fuel consumed by road transport-related operations that was natural gas (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed by road transport-related operations (in GJ).

3 In disclosing fuel consumed by (1) road transport-related operations, the entity shall additionally disclose the percentage of fuel consumed that was (b) renewable fuel.

3.1 Renewable fuel is generally defined as fuel that meets all of these requirements:

3.1.1 Produced from renewable biomass

3.1.2 Used to replace or reduce the quantity of fossil fuel present in a transportation fuel, heating oil or jet fuel

3.1.3 Achieved net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a life cycle basis.

3.2 The entity shall disclose the standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable.

3.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of renewable fuel consumed by road transport-related operations (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed by road transport-related operations (in GJ).

4 In disclosing fuel consumed by (2) air transport-related operations, the entity additionally shall disclose the percentage of fuel consumed that was (a) alternative fuel.

4.1 Alternative fuel is defined by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) as fuel from sources other than petroleum that has the potential to generate lower carbon emissions than petroleum-based fuel on a life cycle basis.

4.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of alternative fuel consumed by air transport-related operations (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed by air transport-related operations (in GJ).

5 In disclosing fuel consumed by (2) air transport-related operations, the entity shall additionally disclose the percentage of fuel consumed that was (b) sustainable fuel.

5.1 Sustainable fuel is defined as a subset of alternative fuel that meets all of the following criteria described by ICAO:

5.1.1 Achieves net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a life cycle basis

5.1.2 Avoids competition with food and water through utilisation of marginal or unviable land

5.1.3 Contributes to local social and economic development, such as through expanded employment and revitalised infrastructure.

5.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of sustainable fuel consumed by air transport-related operations (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed by air transport-related operations (in GJ).

6 The scope of disclosure is limited to fuel the entity directly consumed.

7 In calculating energy consumption from fuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).

8 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels).

Supply Chain Management

Topic Summary

Many entities in the Air Freight & Logistics industry contract with large, complex networks of asset-based third-party providers to provide freight transportation services to their customers. Contracting is common among entities providing freight forwarding, logistics, brokerage and intermodal services. Contractors range across all modes of transport such as motor carriers, railroads, air freight and ocean carriers. Entities must manage contractor relationships to ensure contractor actions that may have environmental or social impacts do not result in material adverse effects on their own operations, such as decreased brand value. At the same time, entities that offer low-carbon logistics solutions may capture market share from customers seeking to reduce the carbon footprint of their shipment.

Metrics

TR-AF-430a.2. Total greenhouse gas (GHG) footprint across transport modes

1 The entity shall disclose the complete tank-to-wheels greenhouse gas (GHG) footprint in metric tons of CO₂-e per metric ton-kilometre.

2 Tank-to-wheels emissions relate to vehicle processes and exclude upstream emissions associated with primary energy production (well-to-tank emissions).

2.1 The entity shall calculate its disclosure according to EN 16258:2012 – Methodology for calculation and declaration of energy consumption and GHG emissions of transport services (freight and passengers).

2.1.1 Calculations shall be consistent with the methodology used to calculate the ‘tank-to-wheels GHG emissions (Gt)’ result that is described in EN 16258:2012.

2.1.2 Determination of transportation system scope, boundaries and any necessary allocations shall be consistent with the methodology described in EN 16258:2012.

3 The scope of disclosure includes emissions from all freight transportation and logistics activities, including those from the entity’s own assets (Scope 1) and those from

contract carriers and outsourced freight forwarding services.

- 4 The scope of disclosure includes emissions from all modes of transportation, such as road freight, air freight, barge transport, marine transport and rail transport.
- 5 Consistent with EN 16258:2012, disclosure may be based on calculations from a mix of categories of emissions values (specific measured values, transport operator vehicle-type- or route-type-specific values, transport operator fleet values and default values).
- 6 If relevant and necessary for interpretation of disclosure, the entity shall describe its allocation methods, emissions values, boundaries, mix of transport services used and other information.

Volume 61—Airlines

Industry Description

Airlines industry entities provide air transportation globally to passengers for both leisure and business purposes. This includes commercial full-service, low-cost and regional airlines. Full-service carriers typically use a hub-and-spoke model to design their routes within countries and internationally. Low-cost carriers usually offer a smaller number of routes as well as no-frills service to their customers. Regional carriers typically operate under contract to full-service carriers, expanding the network of the larger carriers. Many airline entities also have a cargo segment in their operations to generate additional revenue. Entities in the industry commonly form partnerships or join alliances to increase network size. Operating as an alliance allows airlines to offer customers access to international or otherwise underserved itineraries on more than one airline under one ticket. At the same time, airlines share some overhead costs and increase their competitive position in the global market without having to operate outside their home country.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	TR-AL-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TR-AL-110a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	(1) Total fuel consumed, (2) percentage alternative and (3) percentage sustainable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	TR-AL-110a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Available seat kilometres (ASK) ¹¹¹	Quantitative	ASK	TR-AL-000.A
Passenger load factor ¹¹²	Quantitative	Rate	TR-AL-000.B
Revenue passenger kilometres (RPK) ¹¹³	Quantitative	RPK	TR-AL-000.C
Revenue ton kilometres (RTK) ¹¹⁴	Quantitative	RTK	TR-AL-000.D
Number of departures	Quantitative	Number	TR-AL-000.E
Average age of fleet	Quantitative	Years	TR-AL-000.F

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

As a result of a heavy reliance on hydrocarbon fuels, the Airlines industry generates significant emissions, more than 99% of which are in the form of carbon dioxide (CO₂). Therefore, the industry is subject to compliance costs and risks associated with climate change mitigation policies. The main sources of greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions for airlines entities are aircraft fuel use and emissions, ground equipment and facility electricity. Aircraft fuel consumption is the largest contributor to total emissions from the industry, and fuel management is a critical part of reducing emissions. Management of fuel-related environmental impacts includes increasing fuel efficiency through fleet upgrades, retrofits, and flight speed and route design optimisation, as well as using alternative and sustainable fuels. These initiatives require capital expenditures, but in the long term, they may reduce fuel costs and decrease exposure to GHG emissions programmes and regulatory risk.

Metrics

TR-AL-110a.1 Gross global Scope 1 emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which is generally aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards

Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 3 The entity may discuss any change in emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

TR-AL-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined according to *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).

- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 3.1 Relevant activities and investments may include fuel optimisation efforts such as the use of ground power and pre-conditioned air rather than auxiliary power units (APU) when parked at gate, adjusting flight speed to optimise fuel efficiency, route design (for example, NextGen), use of winglets, reduction in aircraft weight and upgrading of the fleet with new aircraft.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

TR-AL-110a.3. (1) Total fuel consumed, (2) percentage alternative and (3) percentage sustainable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of fuel consumed from all sources as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.

- 1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:
 - 1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, less any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period
 - 1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicles
 - 1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of fuel consumption that was alternative fuel.
 - 2.1 Alternative fuel is defined by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) as fuel from sources other than petroleum that has the potential to generate lower carbon emissions than petroleum-based fuel on a life cycle basis.
 - 2.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of alternative fuel consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of fuel consumed that was sustainable fuel.
 - 3.1 Sustainable fuel is defined as a subset of alternative fuel that meets all of the following criteria described by ICAO:
 - 3.1.1 Achieves net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a life cycle basis
 - 3.1.2 Avoids competition with food and water through marginal or unviable land use
 - 3.1.3 Contributes to local social and economic development, such as through expanded employment and revitalised infrastructure.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of sustainable fuel consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).
- 4 The scope of disclosure is limited to fuel the entity directly consumes. In calculating energy consumption from fuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, the US Department of Energy or the US Energy Information Agency.
- 5 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels).

Industry Description

Entities in the Auto Parts industry supply motor vehicle parts and accessories to original equipment manufacturers (OEM). Auto parts entities typically specialise in manufacturing and assembling parts or accessories, such as engine exhaust systems, alternative drivetrains, hybrid systems, catalytic converters, aluminium wheels (rims), tyres, rear-view mirrors, and onboard electrical and electronic equipment. Although the larger automotive industry includes several tiers of suppliers that provide parts and raw materials used to assemble motor vehicles, the scope of these Auto Parts industry disclosures includes only Tier 1 suppliers that supply parts directly to OEMs. The scope of the industry excludes captive suppliers, such as engine and stamping facilities, owned and operated by OEMs. It also excludes Tier 2 suppliers, which provide inputs for the Auto Parts industry.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Energy Management	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	TR-AP-130a.1
Design for Fuel Efficiency	Revenue from products designed to increase fuel efficiency or reduce emissions	Quantitative	Presentation currency	TR-AP-410a.1

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of parts produced	Quantitative	Number	TR-AP-000.A
Weight of parts produced	Quantitative	Metric tons (t)	TR-AP-000.B
Area of manufacturing plants	Quantitative	Square metres (m ²)	TR-AP-000.C

Energy Management

Topic Summary

Most energy consumed in the automobile manufacturing process occurs in the supply chain. Auto parts manufacturers use electricity and fossil fuels in their production processes, resulting in direct and indirect emissions of greenhouse gases (GHGs). Purchased electricity is a majority of the energy used in the Auto Parts industry. Sustainability initiatives such as incentives for energy efficiency and renewable energy are making alternative sources of energy more cost competitive. Regulators and consumers also are encouraging the industry to reduce GHG emissions. While managing the cost and risks associated with overall energy efficiency, reliance on various types of energy and access to alternative energy sources may become increasingly important.

Metrics

TR-AP-130a.1. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage grid electricity and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from grid electricity.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as purchased grid electricity consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.

- 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
- 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
- 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
- 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards or materials that are eligible for an applicable state renewable portfolio standard.

- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

Design for Fuel Efficiency

Topic Summary

Automobile manufacturers increasingly are demanding motor parts and components that reduce vehicle fuel consumption. Fuel-efficient components and parts are critical in reducing automobile tailpipe emissions through energy efficiency gains and weight reductions, among other factors. Auto parts entities that design and manufacture such parts may increase sales to auto manufacturers that increasingly are facing stricter environmental regulations and customer preferences for more environmentally friendly cars.

Metrics

TR-AP-410a.1. Revenue from products designed to increase fuel efficiency or reduce emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose total revenue from products designed to increase fuel efficiency or reduce emissions during their use phase.
 - 1.1 Products designed to increase fuel efficiency or reduce emissions are defined as products the entity has tested, modelled or otherwise shown to improve fuel efficiency or eliminate or lower emissions of greenhouse gases (GHG), nitrogen oxide (NO_x), particulate matter (PM), sulphur oxides (SO_x) and other air pollutants during their use phase.
 - 1.2 The use phase is defined as the course over which the product is used by a customer or consumer as a final product or to generate a final product (for example, in a manufacturing or production process).
 - 1.3 The disclosure scope includes products that provide incremental improvement to fuel efficiency or emission reduction, if the entity can demonstrate the improvement is meaningful, such as through alignment with the milestones set forth in Section 5, 'Key Sectors/Ensuring efficient mobility', of the European Commission's Road Map to a Resource Efficient Europe or with EU Directive 2012/27/EU (Energy Efficiency Directive).
 - 1.4 The scope of disclosure excludes products that offer improved fuel efficiency or reduced emissions in an ancillary or indirect way (for example, a conventional product that is slightly lighter than the previous generation of the product).
- 2 Examples of products that may increase fuel efficiency or reduce emissions may include those relating to: electrification of auxiliary systems such as oil and water pumps, waste heat recovery, improved aerodynamics, hybrid and advanced fuel technologies, improvements to combustion efficiency, idle reduction, alternative cooling systems, electric power steering, hybrid-enabled braking technologies, low rolling resistance (LRR), new and retread tyre technologies, and engine management systems/products.
- 3 For products designed to both increase fuel efficiency and reduce emissions, the entity shall account only for the products' revenue once.

Volume 63—Automobiles

Industry Description

Automobiles industry entities manufacture passenger vehicles, light trucks and motorcycles. Industry players design, build and sell vehicles that use a range of traditional and alternative fuels and powertrains. They sell these vehicles to dealers for consumer retail sales as well as sell directly to fleet customers, including car rental and leasing entities, commercial fleets and governments. Because of the industry's global nature, nearly all entities have manufacturing facilities, assembly plants and service locations in several countries around the world. The Automobiles industry is concentrated, with a few large manufacturers and a diversified supply chain. Given the industry's reliance on natural resources and sensitivity to the business cycle, revenue is typically cyclical.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	Sales-weighted average passenger fleet fuel economy, by region	Quantitative	Mpg, L/km, gCO ₂ /km, km/L	TR-AU-410a.1
Fuel Economy & Use-phase Emissions	Number of (1) zero emission vehicles (ZEV), (2) hybrid vehicles and (3) plug-in hybrid vehicles sold	Quantitative	Number	TR-AU-410a.2
	Discussion of strategy for managing fleet fuel economy and emissions risks and opportunities	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TR-AU-410a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of vehicles manufactured	Quantitative	Number	TR-AU-000.A
Number of vehicles sold	Quantitative	Number	TR-AU-000.B

Fuel Economy & Use-phase Emissions

Topic Summary

Motor vehicle fossil fuel combustion accounts for a significant share of the greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions contributing to global climate change. Engine exhaust also generates local air pollutants such as nitrogen oxides (NO_x), volatile organic compounds (VOCs) and particulate matter (PM), which can threaten human health and the environment. In this context, vehicle emissions increasingly concern consumers and regulators around the world. Although use-phase emissions are downstream from auto manufacturers, regulations often focus on auto manufacturers to reduce these emissions, such as through fuel economy standards. More stringent emissions standards and changing consumer demands are driving electric vehicle and hybrid market expansion, as well as for high fuel-efficiency conventional vehicles. Moreover, manufacturers are designing innovative vehicles made with lighter-weight materials

to improve fuel efficiency. Entities that meet current fuel-efficiency and emissions standards and continue to innovate to meet or exceed future regulatory standards in various markets may strengthen their competitive position and expand their market share, while mitigating the risk of reduced demand for conventional vehicles.

Metrics

TR-AU-410a.1. Sales-weighted average passenger fleet fuel economy, by region

- 1 The entity shall disclose the average fuel economy of its passenger and light-duty vehicle fleet, weighted for the footprint of vehicles sold, by geographical region.
 - 1.1 The average fuel economy shall be calculated by model year as required for regulatory purposes.
 - 1.2 In the absence of regulatory guidance on calculating a fleet average, the entity shall calculate performance based on the fuel economy of vehicles sold during the reporting period weighted by sales volume.
 - 1.3 The calculation shall be made on a fleet-average basis regardless of whether regulations are based on vehicle weight.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the percentage by geographic region.
 - 2.1 Geographical regions are defined as the regions for which the entity conducts segment financial reporting and which are subject to fleet fuel economy, fuel consumption or emissions standards.
- 3 Disclosure may be provided in various units for each geographical region, which may include:
 - 3.1 Grams of carbon dioxide per kilometre (gCO₂/km) for (1) passenger cars and (2) light commercial vehicles sold in the European Union
 - 3.2 Litres of petrol per kilometre (L/km) for passenger vehicles sold in Japan
 - 3.3 Miles per gallon (mpg) for (1) domestic passenger cars, (2) imported passenger cars and (3) light trucks sold in the US and subject to Corporate Average Fuel Economy (CAFE) standards, where these vehicle categories are defined in US 49 CFR Part 523
 - 3.4 Kilometres per litre (km/L) for passenger vehicles sold in New Zealand
- 4 The scope of disclosure shall include all vehicles subject to national passenger vehicle standards for fleet fuel economy, fuel consumption or emissions.
- 5 The entity may disclose fleet performance for other vehicle segments such as:
 - 5.1 Cargo vehicles in Japan
 - 5.2 Heavy-duty vehicles in the US
 - 5.3 Light commercial vehicles in the EU

TR-AU-410a.2. Number of (1) zero emission vehicles (ZEV), (2) hybrid vehicles and (3) plug-in hybrid vehicles sold

- 1 The entity shall disclose the number of vehicles sold during the reporting period classified as: (1) zero emission vehicles (ZEV), (2) hybrid vehicles and (3) plug-in hybrid electric vehicles.
 - 1.1 ZEVs are vehicles driven only by an electric motor that are powered by advanced-technology batteries or hydrogen fuel cell, and they have no tailpipe emissions over their entire lifetime under all possible operational modes and conditions.
 - 1.2 Hybrid vehicles (hybrid electric vehicle or HEVs) are vehicles that can draw propulsion energy from both of these on-vehicle sources of stored energy: (a) a consumable fuel and (b) an energy storage device such as a battery, capacitor or flywheel.
 - 1.3 Plug-in hybrid electric vehicles are vehicles that offer electric driving with an electric motor powered by a large battery pack that is charged by plugging into a source of electricity.

- 2 The scope of disclosure includes all vehicles sold globally that are eligible to be classified in accordance with the above guidance.

TR-AU-410a.3. Discussion of strategy for managing fleet fuel economy and emissions risks and opportunities

- 1 The entity shall discuss its strategy for improving the fuel economy and reducing the use-phase emissions of its fleet.
 - 1.1 Use-phase emissions include greenhouse gases and air pollutants such as carbon dioxide, nitrogen oxides, volatile organic compounds, and particulate matter.
- 2 Relevant aspects of the strategy include improvements to existing vehicles and technologies, the introduction of new technologies, research and development efforts into advanced technologies, and partnerships with peers, academic institutions or customers.
- 3 Relevant technologies may include those related to materials design and engineering, advanced powertrains, renewable fuels, energy storage and batteries, aerodynamic design, fuel injection systems, particulate filters, and products and fuels that otherwise result in reduced emissions.
 - 3.1 Advanced powertrain technologies include vehicles and vehicle components that are electric, hybrid electric, plug-in hybrid, dual-fuel and zero-emissions (for example, fuel cell).
 - 3.2 Renewable fuels and energy technologies are those that operate on sources capable of being replenished in a short time through ecological cycles, including biomass (including ethanol, first-generation biofuels and advanced biofuels).
 - 3.3 Products that result in reduced emissions include any vehicle or technology that achieves a significant reduction in fuel consumption.

- 3.4 Fuels that result in reduced emissions include biodiesel, ethanol, natural gas, propane and hydrogen.
- 3.5 Internal combustion engines include those equipped with technology (for example, selective catalytic reduction) to reduce nitrogen oxide emissions.
- 3.6 Particulate filters (for example, wall-flow filter or partial-flow filter) include those that reduce emissions (including carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons and particulate matter).
 - 3.6.1 If relevant, the entity shall discuss the technologies it is prioritising to improve the fuel economy and reduce emissions of its vehicles, such as the specific type of fuel systems it is developing (for example, hybrid, electric or fuel cell).
- 4 The entity shall discuss the factors influencing fuel economy and emissions efforts, such as meeting customer demand or meeting regulatory requirements of the markets it operates in or plans to operate in.
 - 4.1 Relevant programmes and initiatives may include:
 - 4.1.1 California Low-Emission Vehicle Program – LEV III
 - 4.1.2 China VI emission standard
 - 4.1.3 Euro 6 standards for light duty vehicles
 - 4.1.4 US Clean Air Act
 - 4.1.5 US Corporate Average Fuel Economy (CAFE) standards
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether it is complying with fuel economy and use-phase regulatory obligations, whether such existing regulations require future improvements, progress towards meeting such regulations and strategies to maintain compliance with emerging regulations.
- 6 The scope of disclosure includes all vehicles subject to national and local vehicle standards.
- 7 The entity may discuss the benchmarks used to measure improvements in fuel economy and emissions reductions, including targets for fuel economy improvements and emissions reductions.

Volume 64—Car Rental & Leasing

Industry Description

Entities in this industry rent or lease passenger vehicles to customers. Consumers typically rent vehicles for periods of less than a month, whereas leases may last a year or more. The industry includes car-sharing business models in which rentals are measured hourly and

typically include subscription fees. Car rental entities operate out of airport locations, which serve business and leisure travellers, and out of neighbourhood locations, which mostly provide repair-shop and weekend rentals. The industry is concentrated, with several dominant market players, who operate globally using a franchise model. The growth of public transit and ride-sharing services in major metropolitan areas may represent a threat to the long-term profitability of the Car Rental & Leasing industry if customers choose to hail rides or take public transit rather than rent vehicles.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Fleet Fuel Economy & Utilisation	Rental day-weighted average rental fleet fuel economy, by region	Quantitative	Mpg, L/km, gCO ₂ /km, km/L	TR-CR-410a.1
	Fleet utilisation rate	Quantitative	Rate	TR-CR-410a.2

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Average vehicle age	Quantitative	Months	TR-CR-000.A
Total available rental days ¹¹⁵	Quantitative	Days	TR-CR-000.B
Average rental fleet size ¹¹⁶	Quantitative	Number of vehicles	TR-CR-000.C

Fleet Fuel Economy & Utilisation

Topic Summary

By providing fuel-efficient and alternative fuel vehicles, car rental and leasing entities may improve the environmental sustainability of their operations while also achieving financial benefits. Consumer demand for more efficient vehicles is growing, motivated by both environmental stewardship and lower operating costs associated with fuel efficiency. In addition to providing fuel-efficient and low-emission fleets, entities in the industry are adapting to changing vehicle needs by providing car-sharing services. In urban settings, car sharing is an attractive alternative to vehicle ownership that reduces congestion and the environmental

impacts associated with private ownership of vehicles. By maximising fleet utilisation rates through car-sharing, entities may improve operational efficiency.

Metrics

TR-CR-410a.1. Rental day-weighted average rental fleet fuel economy, by region

- 1 The entity shall disclose the average fuel economy of its passenger vehicle rental fleet, weighted for the rental days of each vehicle model during the reporting period, by geographic region.
 - 1.1 The average fuel economy shall be calculated as the rental day-weighted harmonic mean of vehicle fuel efficiency.
 - 1.1.1 The harmonic mean is calculated as the reciprocal of the average of the reciprocals.
 - 1.1.2 Rental day weighting is performed by incorporating into calculations a factor for the fraction of total rental days for which each vehicle model accounted.
- 2 The entity shall disclose the average fuel economy of its passenger vehicle rental fleet by geographic region.
 - 2.1 Geographic regions are defined as the regions for which the entity conducts segment financial reporting and which are subject to fleet fuel economy, fuel consumption or emissions standards.
- 3 Disclosure may be provided in different units for each geographic region which may include:
 - 3.1 Grams of CO₂ per kilometre (gCO₂/km) for (1) passenger cars and (2) light commercial vehicles in the European Union
 - 3.2 Litres of petrol per kilometre (L/km) for passenger vehicles in Japan
 - 3.3 Miles per gallon (mpg) for (1) domestic passenger cars, (2) imported passenger cars and (3) light trucks in the US that are subject to Corporate Average Fuel Economy (CAFE) standards, where these vehicle categories are defined in US 49 CFR Part 523
 - 3.4 Kilometres per litre (km/L) for passenger vehicles in New Zealand
- 4 The scope of disclosure shall include all vehicles subject to national passenger vehicle standards for fleet fuel economy, fuel consumption or emissions.
- 5 The entity may disclose fleet fuel economy for other vehicle segments such as:
 - 5.1 Cargo vehicles in Japan
 - 5.2 Heavy-duty vehicles in the US
 - 5.3 Light commercial vehicles in the EU

TR-CR-410a.2. Fleet utilisation rate

- 1 The entity shall disclose its fleet utilisation rate.
 - 1.1 The rate shall be calculated as the total number of rental days divided by the total number of available rental days.
 - 1.1.1 Rental days are defined as the number of 24-hour periods—or portions thereof—that vehicles were rented.
 - 1.1.2 Available rental days are defined as the number of 24-hour periods—or portions thereof—that the entity offered vehicles for rental during the reporting period. This figure shall exclude the time when vehicles were undergoing inspection, cleaning or maintenance, and any time when they were subject to recall.
- 2 The scope of disclosure includes vehicles at all the entity's rental locations, including airport locations, off-airport locations and vehicles in the entity's car-sharing fleet.

Volume 65—Cruise Lines

Industry Description

Cruise Lines industry entities provide passenger transportation and leisure entertainment, including deep sea cruises and river cruises. A few large entities dominate the industry. Cruises provide a luxury resort experience for thousands of passengers at a time. The Cruise Lines industry often has been the fastest-growing segment of the travel industry, but it is very cyclical.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	TR-CL-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TR-CL-110a.2
	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage heavy fuel oil, (3) percentage onshore power	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ),	TR-CL-110a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	supply (OPS) and (4) percentage renewable		Percentage (%)	
	Average Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships	Quantitative	Grammes of CO ₂ per ton-nautical mile	TR-CL-110a.4

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Available lower berth kilometres (ALB-KM) ¹¹⁷	Quantitative	ALB-KM	TR-CL-000.A
Average passenger cruise days (APCD) ¹¹⁸	Quantitative	APCD	TR-CL-000.B
Number of shipboard employees ¹¹⁹	Quantitative	Number	TR-CL-000.C
Cruise passengers ¹²⁰	Quantitative	Number	TR-CL-000.D
Number of vessel port calls	Quantitative	Number	TR-CL-000.E

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Cruise lines generate emissions mainly from the combustion of diesel in ship engines. The industry's reliance on heavy fuel oil ('bunker fuel') is of material concern because of rising fuel costs and intensifying greenhouse gas (GHG) regulations. Evolving environmental regulations are encouraging the adoption of more fuel-efficient engines, engine retrofits and the use of cleaner-burning fuels. Fuel constitutes a major expense for industry players, providing a further incentive for investing in upgrades or retrofits to boost fuel efficiency. In addition, GHG regulation violations may result in fines and compliance costs.

Metrics

TR-CL-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalent (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits, or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which is generally aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 3 The entity may discuss any change in emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

TR-CL-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined according to *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or

targets.

3.1 Relevant activities and investments may include route optimisation, use of alternative fuels and energy sources, system improvements, optimisation of ship operation, improving efficiency through ship design and propulsion systems (including hull and propeller improvements), and upgrading the fleet with new ships.

4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.

5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.

6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

TR-CL-110a.3. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage heavy fuel oil, (3) percentage onshore power supply (OPS) and (4) percentage renewable

1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).

1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.

1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy the entity directly consumed during the reporting period.

1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).

2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from heavy fuel oil.

2.1 Heavy fuel oils are defined as heavier oils that remain after distillate fuel oils and lighter hydrocarbons are distilled away in refinery operations.

2.2 The percentage shall be calculated as heavy fuel oil consumption divided by total energy consumption.

3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that was onshore power supply (OPS).

- 3.1 OPS includes the shoreside electrical power consumed by a ship at berth while the main and auxiliary engines are turned off.
- 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as OPS consumption divided by total energy consumption.

4 The entity shall disclose (4) the percentage of energy it consumed that was renewable energy.

- 4.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
- 4.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
- 4.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 4.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 4.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 4.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
- 4.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification, or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards, or materials that are eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.

5 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

TR-CL-110a.4. Average Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships

- 1 The entity shall disclose the average Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships in grammes of carbon dioxide per ton-nautical mile.
 - 1.1 An EEDI value is the product of power installed, specific fuel consumption and carbon conversion, divided by the product of available capacity and vessel speed at design load
 - 1.2 The entity shall calculate the average EEDI as a simple average of the EEDI value of all new ships added to the entity's fleet during the reporting period.
 - 1.2.1 New ships are limited to those built after 2013 and for which the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) has adopted EEDI as a metric.
 - 1.3 The entity shall follow calculation methodologies outlined in IMO MEPC 66/21/Add.1, Annex 5, *2014 Guidelines on the Method of Calculation of the Attained Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) For New Ships*.

Volume 66—Marine Transportation**Industry Description**

Marine Transportation industry entities provide deep-sea, coastal or river-way freight shipping services. The industry is of strategic importance to international trade, and its revenues are tied to macroeconomic cycles. Important activities include transportation of containerised and bulk freight, including consumer goods and a wide range of commodities, and transportation of chemicals and petroleum products in tankers. Because of the industry's global scope, entities may operate under many diverse applicable jurisdictional legal and regulatory frameworks.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	TR-MT-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TR-MT-110a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	(1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage heavy fuel oil and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	TR-MT-110a.3
	Average Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships	Quantitative	Grammes of CO ₂ per ton-nautical mile	TR-MT-110a.4

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of shipboard employees ¹²¹	Quantitative	Number	TR-MT-000.A
Total distance travelled by vessels	Quantitative	Nautical miles (nm)	TR-MT-000.B
Operating days ¹²²	Quantitative	Days	TR-MT-000.C
Deadweight tonnage ¹²³	Quantitative	Thousand deadweight tons	TR-MT-000.D
Number of vessels in total shipping fleet	Quantitative	Number	TR-MT-000.E
Number of vessel port calls	Quantitative	Number	TR-MT-000.F
Twenty-foot equivalent unit (TEU) capacity	Quantitative	TEU	TR-MT-000.G

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

Marine transportation entities generate emissions mainly from the combustion of diesel in ship engines. The industry's reliance on heavy fuel oil ('bunker fuel') is of material concern because of rising fuel costs and intensifying greenhouse gas (GHG) regulations. The industry is among the most fuel efficient of the major transportation modes in terms of fuel use per ton shipped. However, because of the industry's size, its contribution to the global GHG emissions is still significant. Recent environmental regulations are encouraging the adoption of more fuel-efficient engines and the use of cleaner-burning fuels. Fuel constitutes a major expense for industry players, providing a further incentive for investing in upgrades or retrofits to boost fuel efficiency.

Metrics

TR-MT-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA

2.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)

2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which is generally aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary,' of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 3 The entity may discuss any change in emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

TR-MT-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined according to *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆) and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;

- 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
- 3.1 Relevant activities and investments may include: route optimisation, use of alternative fuels and energy sources, system improvements, optimisation of ship operation, improving efficiency through ship design and propulsion systems (including hull and propeller improvements), and upgrading the fleet with new ships.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.
- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

TR-MT-110a.3. (1) Total energy consumed, (2) percentage heavy fuel oil and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of energy it consumed as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
- 1.1 The scope of energy consumption includes energy from all sources, including energy purchased from external sources and energy produced by the entity itself (self-generated). For example, direct fuel usage, purchased electricity, and heating, cooling and steam energy are all included within the scope of energy consumption.
 - 1.2 The scope of energy consumption includes only energy directly consumed by the entity during the reporting period.
 - 1.3 In calculating energy consumption from fuels and biofuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which

are measured directly or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).

- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of energy it consumed that was supplied from heavy fuel oil.
 - 2.1 Heavy fuel oils are defined as heavier oils that remain after distillate fuel oils and lighter hydrocarbons are distilled away in refinery operations.
 - 2.2 The percentage shall be calculated as heavy fuel oil consumption divided by total energy consumption.

- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of energy it consumed that is renewable energy.
 - 3.1 Renewable energy is defined as energy from sources that are replenished at a rate greater than or equal to their rate of depletion, such as geothermal, wind, solar, hydro and biomass.
 - 3.2 The percentage shall be calculated as renewable energy consumption divided by total energy consumption.
 - 3.3 The scope of renewable energy includes renewable fuel the entity consumed, renewable energy the entity directly produced and renewable energy the entity purchased, if purchased through a renewable power purchase agreement (PPA) that explicitly includes renewable energy certificates (RECs) or Guarantees of Origin (GOs), a Green-e Energy Certified utility or supplier programme, or other green power products that explicitly include RECs or GOs, or for which Green-e Energy Certified RECs are paired with grid electricity.
 - 3.3.1 For any renewable electricity generated on-site, any RECs and GOs shall be retained (not sold) and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.2 For renewable PPAs and green power products, the agreement shall explicitly include and convey that RECs and GOs be retained or replaced and retired or cancelled on behalf of the entity for the entity to claim them as renewable energy.
 - 3.3.3 The renewable portion of the electricity grid mix outside the control or influence of the entity is excluded from the scope of renewable energy.
 - 3.4 For the purposes of this disclosure, the scope of renewable energy from biomass sources is limited to materials certified to a third-party standard (for example, Forest Stewardship Council, Sustainable Forest Initiative, Programme for the Endorsement of Forest Certification or American Tree Farm System), materials considered eligible sources of supply according to the *Green-e Framework for Renewable Energy Certification, Version 1.0* (2017) or Green-e regional standards or materials eligible for an applicable jurisdictional renewable portfolio standard.
- 4 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels) and conversion of kilowatt hours (kWh) to GJ (for energy data including electricity from solar or wind energy).

TR-MT-110a.4. Average Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships

- 1 The entity shall disclose the average Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) for new ships in grammes of carbon dioxide per ton-nautical mile.
 - 1.1 An EEDI value is the product of power installed, specific fuel consumption and carbon conversion, divided by the product of available capacity and vessel

speed at design load.

- 1.2 The entity shall calculate the average EEDI as a simple average of the EEDI value of all new ships added to the entity's fleet during the reporting period.

1.2.1 New ships are limited to those built after 2013 and for which the International Maritime Organisation (IMO) has adopted EEDI as a metric.

- 1.3 The entity shall follow calculation methodologies outlined in IMO MEPC 66/21/Add.1, Annex 5, *2014 Guidelines on the Method of Calculation of the Attained Energy Efficiency Design Index (EEDI) For New Ships*.

Volume 67—Rail Transportation

Industry Description

Rail Transportation industry entities provide rail freight shipping and support services. Important activities include shipping containerised and bulk freight, including consumer goods and commodities. Rail entities typically own, maintain and operate their rail networks, which may require significant capital expenditures. The industry exhibits economies of density because of its network effects, potentially fostering natural monopoly conditions. Together with the large sunk costs of rail infrastructure, this provides a competitive advantage to incumbent entities in the industry and creates barriers to entry for new entities.

Note: The scope of the Rail Transportation industry does not include passenger rail transportation.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	TR-RA-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TR-RA-110a.2

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
	Total fuel consumed, percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ), Percentage (%)	TR-RA-110a.3

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Number of carloads transported ¹²⁴	Quantitative	Number	TR-RA-000.A
Number of intermodal units transported ¹²⁵	Quantitative	Number	TR-RA-000.B
Track kilometres ¹²⁶	Quantitative	Kilometres (km)	TR-RA-000.C
Revenue tonne-kilometres (RTK) ¹²⁷	Quantitative	RTK	TR-RA-000.D
Number of employees	Quantitative	Number	TR-RA-000.E

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

The Rail Transportation industry generates emissions mainly through the combustion of diesel in locomotive engines. Despite relatively low emissions compared to other transportation industries, fuel management has implications for industry entities in terms of operating costs and regulatory compliance. Greenhouse gases (GHGs) including carbon dioxide (CO₂) are of particular importance to government regulators concerned about climate change. Intensifying regulation of locomotive exhaust emissions and high fuel costs encourage rail entities to invest in fuel efficiency enhancements to manage emissions. These investments can improve an entity's operational efficiency and cost structure, with effects on value and competitive position both within the industry and compared to other modes of transport.

Metrics

TR-RA-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).
 - 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.

- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.1.6 *Protocol for the Quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.

- 3 The entity may discuss any change in emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data are from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering calculations or mass balance calculations.

TR-RA-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined according to *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year, and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or

targets.

3.1 Relevant activities and investments may include operational improvements (such as decreased idling, trip optimisation and maximising loads) and fleet enhancements (such as new engines, fuel optimisation technology and aerodynamic fleet modifications, and upgrading the fleet with new locomotives).

4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions sources.

5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.

6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

TR-RA-110a.3. Total fuel consumed, percentage renewable

1 The entity shall disclose the total amount of fuel consumed from all sources as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).

1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.

1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:

1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, minus any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period

1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicles

1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses

2 The entity shall disclose the percentage of fuel consumed that was renewable fuel.

2.1 Renewable fuel generally is defined as fuel that meets all of these requirements:

2.1.1 Produced from renewable biomass;

2.1.2 Used to replace or reduce the quantity of fossil fuel present in a transportation fuel, heating oil or jet fuel; and

2.1.3 Achieved net greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions reduction on a lifecycle basis.

2.2 The entity shall disclose the standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable

2.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of renewable fuel consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).

3 The scope of disclosure only includes fuel directly consumed by the entity.

4 In calculating energy consumption from fuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are directly measured or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC).

5 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel usage (including biofuels).

Volume 68—Road Transportation

Industry Description

Road Transportation industry entities provide long- and short-haul freight trucking services. Important activities include containerised and bulk freight shipment, including consumer goods and a wide variety of commodities. Generally, the industry may be categorised two ways: truckload (vehicles carrying the goods of only one customer) and less-than-truckload (vehicles carrying the goods of multiple customers). Owner-operators comprise the vast majority of the industry because of the relative ease of entry. A few large operators maintain market share through contracts with major shippers. Large entities often subcontract with owner-operators to supplement their owned fleet.

Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Table 1. Sustainability Disclosure Topics & Metrics

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Greenhouse Gas Emissions	Gross global Scope 1 emissions	Quantitative	Metric tons (t) CO ₂ -e	TR-RO-110a.1
	Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets	Discussion and Analysis	n/a	TR-RO-110a.2
	(1) Total fuel consumed, (2) percentage natural gas and (3) percentage renewable	Quantitative	Gigajoules (GJ),	TR-RO-110a.3

Topic	Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
			Percentage (%)	

Table 2. Activity Metrics

Activity Metric	Category	Unit of Measure	Code
Revenue tonne-kilometres (RTK) ¹²⁸	Quantitative	RTK	TR-RO-000.A
Load factor ¹²⁹	Quantitative	Number	TR-RO-000.B
Number of employees, number of truck drivers	Quantitative	Number	TR-RO-000.C

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Topic Summary

The Road Transportation industry generates emissions mainly through the combustion of diesel and other fossil fuels in truck engines. Greenhouse gases (GHGs) including carbon dioxide (CO₂) are of particular importance to government regulators concerned about climate change and to consumers demanding low-carbon or carbon-neutral transportation solutions. Because GHG emissions from trucks constitute a significant portion of transportation-related emissions, the industry is a focal point for regulations to limit GHG emissions. Operational changes that increase fuel efficiency may reduce fuel costs while also limiting exposure to volatile fuel pricing, regulatory costs and other consequences of GHG emissions. Although newer trucks are more fuel-efficient, other measures also may improve efficiency and reduce emissions in existing fleets.

Metrics

TR-RO-110a.1. Gross global Scope 1 emissions

- 1 The entity shall disclose its gross global Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the atmosphere of the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
 - 1.1 Emissions of all GHGs shall be consolidated and disclosed in metric tons of carbon dioxide equivalents (CO₂-e) and calculated in accordance with published 100-year time horizon global warming potential (GWP) values. To date, the preferred source for GWP values is the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) Fifth Assessment Report (2014).

- 1.2 Gross emissions are GHGs emitted into the atmosphere before accounting for offsets, credits or other similar mechanisms that have reduced or compensated for emissions.
- 2 Scope 1 emissions are defined and shall be calculated according to the methodology contained in *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 2.1 Acceptable calculation methodologies include those that conform to the *GHG Protocol* as the base reference, but provide additional guidance, such as industry- or region-specific guidance. Examples may include:
 - 2.1.1 *GHG Reporting Guidance for the Aerospace Industry* published by the International Aerospace Environmental Group (IAEG)
 - 2.1.2 *Greenhouse Gas Inventory Guidance: Direct Emissions from Stationary Combustion Sources* published by the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 2.1.3 India GHG Inventory Program
 - 2.1.4 ISO 14064-1
 - 2.1.5 *Petroleum Industry Guidelines for reporting GHG emissions*, 2nd edition, 2011, published by IPIECA
 - 2.1.6 *Protocol for the quantification of greenhouse gas emissions from waste management activities* published by Entreprises pour l'Environnement (EpE)
 - 2.2 GHG emissions data shall be consolidated and disclosed according to the approach with which the entity consolidates its financial reporting data, which generally is aligned with the 'financial control' approach defined by the *GHG Protocol*, and the approach published by the Climate Disclosure Standards Board (CDSB) described in REQ-07, 'Organisational boundary', of the *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and social information*.
- 3 The entity may discuss any change in emissions from the previous reporting period, including whether the change was because of emissions reductions, divestment, acquisition, mergers, changes in output or changes in calculation methodology.
- 4 In the case that current reporting of GHG emissions to the CDP or other entity (for example, a national regulatory disclosure programme) differs in terms of the scope and consolidation approach used, the entity may disclose those emissions. However, primary disclosure shall be according to the guidelines described above.
- 5 The entity may discuss the calculation methodology for its emissions disclosure, such as if data is from continuous emissions monitoring systems (CEMS), engineering

calculations or mass balance calculations.

TR-RO-110a.2. Discussion of long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage Scope 1 emissions, emissions reduction targets, and an analysis of performance against those targets

- 1 The entity shall discuss its long- and short-term strategy or plan to manage its Scope 1 greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions.
 - 1.1 Scope 1 emissions are defined according to *The Greenhouse Gas Protocol: A Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard* (GHG Protocol), Revised Edition, March 2004, published by the World Resources Institute and the World Business Council on Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD).
 - 1.2 The scope of GHG emissions includes the seven GHGs covered under the Kyoto Protocol—carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (N₂O), hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), sulphur hexafluoride (SF₆), and nitrogen trifluoride (NF₃).
- 2 The entity shall discuss its emission reduction target(s) and analyse its performance against the target(s), including, if relevant:
 - 2.1 The scope of the emission reduction target (for example, the percentage of total emissions to which the target is applicable);
 - 2.2 Whether the target is absolute or intensity-based, and the metric denominator if it is an intensity-based target;
 - 2.3 The percentage reduction against the base year, with the base year representing the first year against which emissions are evaluated towards the achievement of the target;
 - 2.4 The time lines for the reduction activity, including the start year, the target year and the base year;
 - 2.5 The mechanism(s) for achieving the target; and
 - 2.6 Any circumstances in which the target or base year emissions have been, or may be, recalculated retrospectively or the target or base year has been reset.
- 3 The entity shall discuss the activities and investments required to achieve the plans or targets, and any risks or limiting factors that might affect achievement of the plans or targets.
 - 3.1 Relevant activities and investments may include fuel optimisation efforts such as route and load optimisation, adoption of technology such as engine and powertrain efficiency and aerodynamic improvements, use of electric- or natural gas-powered vehicles, weight reduction, improved tyre rolling resistance, hybridisation, and automatic engine shutdown.
- 4 The entity shall discuss the scope of its strategies, plans or reduction targets, such as whether they pertain differently to different business units, geographies or emissions

sources.

- 5 The entity shall discuss whether its strategies, plans or reduction targets are related to, or associated with, emissions limiting or emissions reporting-based programmes or regulations (for example, the EU Emissions Trading Scheme, Quebec Cap-and-Trade System, California Cap-and-Trade Program), including regional, national, international or sectoral programmes.
- 6 Disclosure of strategies, plans or reduction targets shall be limited to activities that were ongoing (active) or reached completion during the reporting period.

TR-RO-110a.3. (1) Total fuel consumed, (2) percentage natural gas and (3) percentage renewable

- 1 The entity shall disclose (1) the total amount of fuel consumed from all sources as an aggregate figure, in gigajoules (GJ).
 - 1.1 The calculation methodology for fuel consumed shall be based on actual fuel consumed as opposed to design parameters.
 - 1.2 Acceptable calculation methodologies for fuel consumed may include methodologies based on:
 - 1.2.1 Adding fuel purchases made during the reporting period to beginning inventory at the start of the reporting period, minus any fuel inventory at the end of the reporting period
 - 1.2.2 Tracking fuel consumed by vehicles
 - 1.2.3 Tracking fuel expenses
- 2 The entity shall disclose (2) the percentage of fuel consumed that is natural gas.
 - 2.1 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of natural gas consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).
- 3 The entity shall disclose (3) the percentage of fuel consumed that was renewable fuel.
 - 3.1 Renewable fuel generally is defined as fuel that meets all of these requirements:
 - 3.1.1 Produced from renewable biomass
 - 3.1.2 Used to replace or reduce the quantity of fossil fuel present in a transportation fuel, heating oil or jet fuel
 - 3.1.3 Achieved net greenhouse gas (GHG) emission reduction on a lifecycle basis
 - 3.2 The entity shall disclose the standard or regulation used to determine if a fuel is renewable.

3.3 The percentage shall be calculated as the amount of renewable fuel consumed (in GJ) divided by the total amount of fuel consumed (in GJ).

- 4 The scope of disclosure only includes fuel directly consumed by the entity.
- 5 In calculating energy consumption from fuels, the entity shall use higher heating values (HHV), also known as gross calorific values (GCV), which are directly measured or taken from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change.
- 6 The entity shall apply conversion factors consistently for all data reported under this disclosure, such as the use of HHVs for fuel use (including biofuels).

Footnotes

- 1 Note to **CG-AA-000.A** – Tier 1 suppliers are defined as suppliers that transact directly with the entity, such as finished goods manufacturers (for example cut and sew facilities). Suppliers beyond Tier 1 are the key suppliers to the entity's Tier 1 suppliers and can include manufacturers, processing plants, and providers of raw materials extraction (for example mills, dye houses and washing facilities, sundry manufacturers, tanneries, embroiderers, screen printers, farms, and/or slaughter houses). The entity shall disclose whether any supplier data beyond Tier 1 is based on assumptions, estimates, or otherwise includes any uncertainty. [\(back\)](#)
- 2 Note to **CG-AM-000.A** – Production shall be disclosed as the number of units produced by product category, where relevant product categories may include small appliances and major appliances. [\(back\)](#)
- 3 Note to **CG-BF-430a.1** – The entity shall describe its practices for sourcing: (1) wood fibre materials from forestlands that are not certified to a third-party forest management standard, and (2) wood fibre materials not certified to other wood fibre certification standards. [\(back\)](#)
- 4 Note to **CG-BF-000.A** – Production shall be disclosed in typical units tracked by the entity such as number of units, weight, and/or square feet. [\(back\)](#)
- 5 Note to **CG-BF-000.B** – The scope shall be limited to total area under roof, including manufacturing and administrative functions. [\(back\)](#)
- 6 Note to **CG-EC-000.A** – The entity shall define and disclose a basic measure of user activity suitable for its business activities. This measure may be sales transactions, purchase transactions, number of searches, monthly active users, page views, and/or unique URLs. [\(back\)](#)
- 7 Note to **CG-EC-000B** – Data processing capacity shall be reported in units of measure typically tracked by the entity or used as the basis for contracting its IT services needs, such as million service units (MSUs), million instructions per second (MIPS), mega floating-point operations per second (MFLOPS), compute cycles, or other units of measure. Alternatively, the entity may disclose owned and outsourced data processing

needs in other units of measure, such as rack space or data centre square footage. The percentage outsourced shall include co-location facilities and cloud services (e.g., Platform as a Service and Infrastructure as a Service). [\(back\)](#)

- 8 Note to **EM-CM-000.A** – Determination of major product line (e.g., cement and aggregates, composites, roofing materials, fibreglass, brick, and tile, or others) should be based on revenue generation, and may include a category of “other” construction materials products that combines multiple smaller revenue streams. [\(back\)](#)
- 9 The ISSB is not affiliated with any of the standards or organisations listed, and listing should not be taken as an endorsement of any standard or organisation. Listing of standards is not meant to imply that standards are identical in scope, underlying requirements or criteria, or that standards are interchangeable. [\(back\)](#)
- 10 Note to **EM-IS-000.B** – The scope of production includes iron ore consumed internally and that which is made available for sale. [\(back\)](#)
- 11 Note to **EM-IS-000.C** – The scope of production includes coking coal consumed internally and that which is made available for sale. [\(back\)](#)
- 12 Note to **EM-EP-140a.4** – The entity shall disclose its policies and practices related to ground and surface water quality management. [\(back\)](#)
- 13 Note to **EM-MD-000.A** – Relevant modes of transport include: pipeline, tanker, truck, etc. [\(back\)](#)
- 14 Note to **EM-RM-000.A** – The total volume of crude oil and other feedstocks processed in the refinery system during the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)
- 15 Note to **EM-RM-000.B** – Operating (or operable) capacity is: the amount of capacity that, at the beginning of the period, is in operation; not in operation and not under active repair, but capable of being placed in operation within 30 days; or not in operation but under active repair that can be completed within 90 days. Operable capacity is the sum of the operating and idle capacity and is measured in barrels per calendar day. [\(back\)](#)
- 16 Note to **EM-SV-000.A** – Rigs that are on location and involved in drilling, completions, cementing, fracturing, decommissioning etc., are considered active. Rigs that are in transit from one location to another, or are otherwise idled, are inactive. [\(back\)](#)
- 17 Note to **EM-SV-000.B** – The number of well sites for which the entity has provided or is providing (on an ongoing basis) drilling, completion, fracturing, and/or decommissioning services. [\(back\)](#)
- 18 Note to **FN-CB-000.B** – Mortgage loans as well as revolving credit loans shall be excluded from the scope of disclosure. [\(back\)](#)
- 19 Note to **FN-IN-450a.1** – The entity shall describe climate-related scenarios used, including the critical input parameters, assumptions and considerations, analytical choices, and time frames, in calculation of the PML. [\(back\)](#)

- 20 Note to **FN-IN-450a.2** – The entity shall discuss how climate change-related impacts and variability of weather-related losses impact the cost of reinsurance and the entity's approach to transferring risk through reinsurance. [\(back\)](#)
- 21 Note to **FN-IN-000.A** – The entity additionally may disaggregate the number of policies in force by product line. [\(back\)](#)
- 22 Note to **FN-IB-000.A** – For syndicate transactions, the entity shall include only the value for which it was accountable. [\(back\)](#)
- 23 Note to **FN-IB-000.B** – The entity shall use the Global Industry Classification Standard (GICS) for classifying investees and borrowers. [\(back\)](#)
- 24 Note to **FB-AG-000.A** – Principal crops are those crops that accounted for 10 percent or more of consolidated revenue in any of the last three fiscal years. [\(back\)](#)
- 25 Note to **FB-AG-000.B** – Processing facilities include those facilities that are involved in the manufacturing, processing, packing, or holding of agricultural products and exclude administrative offices. [\(back\)](#)
- 26 Note to **FB-AG-000.C** – Agricultural products are defined as food, feed, and biofuel ingredients that are sourced for use in the entity's operations. The scope of agricultural products sourced externally excludes agricultural products grown on land that is owned or operated by the entity. [\(back\)](#)
- 27 Note to **FB-MP-000.B** – Categories of animal protein production may be based on animal (e.g., chicken, pork, beef) and/or product type (e.g., milk, shell eggs). Units of measure shall be appropriate to the animal or product category (e.g., metric tons, number/head, gallons). [\(back\)](#)
- 28 Pharmacists are employees who dispense drugs prescribed by physicians and other health practitioners and provide information to patients about medications and their use. Pharmacists may advise physicians and other health practitioners on the selection, dosage, interactions, and side effects of medications. [\(back\)](#)
- 29 Note to **IF-EU-420a.2** – The entity shall discuss the opportunities and challenges associated with the development and operations of a smart grid. [\(back\)](#)
- 30 Note to **IF-EU-420a.3** – The entity shall discuss customer efficiency regulations relevant to each market in which it operates. [\(back\)](#)
- 31 Note to **IF-EU-550a.2** – The entity shall discuss notable service disruptions such as those that affected a significant number of customers or disruptions of extended duration. [\(back\)](#)
- 32 Note to **IF-EU-000.A** – The number of customers served for each category shall be considered as the number of meters billed for residential, commercial, and industrial customers. [\(back\)](#)
- 33 Note to **IF-EU-000.C** – The length of transmission and distribution lines shall be calculated on a circuit kilometre basis, where a circuit-kilometre is defined as the total length of

circuits, regardless of conductors used per circuit. [\(back\)](#)

- 34 Note to **IF-EU-000.D** – Generation shall be disclosed by each of the following major energy sources: coal, natural gas, nuclear, petroleum, hydropower, solar, wind, other renewables, and other gases. The scope includes owned and/or operated assets. The scope excludes electricity consumed at the generating facilities. [\(back\)](#)
- 35 Note to **IF-EU-000.E** – The scope excludes electricity consumed at the generating facilities. [\(back\)](#)
- 36 Note to **IF-EN-250a.2** – The entity shall briefly describe the nature, context, and any corrective actions taken as a result of the monetary losses. [\(back\)](#)
- 37 Note to **IF-EN-000.A** – Active projects are defined as buildings and infrastructure projects under development that the entity was actively providing services to as of the close of the reporting period, including, but not limited to, both the design and construction stages. Active projects exclude projects that were commissioned during the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)
- 38 Note to **IF-EN-000.B** – Commissioned projects are defined as projects that were completed and deemed ready for service during the reporting period. The scope of commissioned projects shall only include projects that the entity provided construction services to. [\(back\)](#)
- 39 Note to **IF-EN-000.C** – Backlog is defined as the value of projects not completed as of the close of the reporting period (i.e., revenue contractually expected in the future but that has not been recognised), or is defined by the entity, consistent with its existing disclosure of backlog. Backlog may also be referred to as revenue backlog or unsatisfied performance obligations. The scope of disclosure is limited to buildings and infrastructure projects where the entity provides engineering, construction, architecture, design, installation, planning, consulting, repair, and/or maintenance services, or other similar services. [\(back\)](#)
- 40 Note to **IF-GU-420a.2** – The entity shall discuss customer efficiency measures that are required by regulations for each of its relevant markets. [\(back\)](#)
- 41 Note to **IF-GU-540a.1** – The entity shall discuss notable incidents such as those that affected a significant number of customers, created extended disruptions to service, or resulted in serious injury or death. [\(back\)](#)
- 42 Note to **IF-GU-000.A** – The number of customers served for each category shall be considered as the number of meters billed for residential, commercial, and industrial customers. [\(back\)](#)
- 43 Note to **IF-GU-000.B** – The amount of natural gas delivered to residential, commercial, and industrial customers shall be disclosed by bundled gas and transportation service only. [\(back\)](#)
- 44 Note to **IF-GU-000.C** – Transmission pipeline is defined as a pipeline, other than a gathering line, that: transports gas from a gathering line or storage facility to a distribution centre, storage facility, or large volume customer that is not down-stream from a

distribution centre; (2) operates at a hoop stress of 20 percent or more of SMYS; or (3) transports gas within a storage field. A distribution pipeline is defined as a pipeline other than a gathering or transmission line. [\(back\)](#)

- 45 Note to **IF-HB-160a.3** – The entity shall briefly describe the nature, context, and any corrective actions taken as a result of the monetary losses. [\(back\)](#)
- 46 Note to **IF-HB-000.A** – The scope of controlled lots includes all lots owned or contractually available for ownership through option contracts or other equivalent types of contracts as of the last day of the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)
- 47 Note to **IF-HB-000.B** – The scope of homes shall include single-family dwelling units whether detached, attached, or part of multi-family residential buildings. [\(back\)](#)
- 48 Note to **IF-HB-000.C** – The scope of active selling communities includes those communities or developments open for sales with at least five homes or lots remaining to sell as of the last day of the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)
- 49 Note to **IF-RE-000.A** – Number of assets shall include the number of distinct real estate property or building assets and is aligned with the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide. Number of assets shall be disclosed separately for each portion of the entity's portfolio where properties are classified into sectors that are aligned with the FTSE Nareit Classification Structure. The total number of assets reported across all sectors can exceed the actual number of assets due to the fact that mixed-use assets can be reported in multiple sectors. [\(back\)](#)
- 50 Note to **IF-RE-000.B** – Leasable floor area shall be disclosed separately for each portion of the entity's portfolio where properties are classified into sectors that are aligned with the FTSE Nareit Classification Structure. Number of units may be used in place of floor area in the Apartments and Lodging/Resorts property sectors when floor area is not available. [\(back\)](#)
- 51 Note to **IF-RE-000.C** – The definition of "indirectly managed assets" is solely based on the landlord/tenant relationship and is aligned with the 2018 GRESB Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide: "Where a single tenant has the sole authority to introduce and implement operating and/or environmental policies and measures, the tenant should be assumed to have operational control, so [the asset] should be considered to be an Indirectly Managed Asset." Percentage of indirectly managed assets shall be disclosed separately for each portion of the entity's portfolio where properties are classified into sectors that are aligned with the FTSE Nareit Classification Structure. [\(back\)](#)
- 52 Note to **IF-RE-000.D** – Average occupancy rate shall be disclosed separately for each portion of the entity's portfolio where properties are classified into sectors that are aligned with the FTSE Nareit Classification Structure. [\(back\)](#)
- 53 Note to **IF-RS-410a.1** – The entity shall provide a description of the energy and sustainability services it offers. [\(back\)](#)

- 54 Note to **IF-RS-000.B** – The scope of floor area under management with owner operational control shall only include that portion of gross rentable floor area where property management services are provided and for which the real estate owner has operational control, where operational control is defined consistent with the 2018 GRESB® Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as “having the ability to introduce and implement operating policies, health and safety policies, and/or environmental policies.” [\(back\)](#)
- 55 Note to **IF-RS-000.C** – The scope of buildings under management shall only include distinct buildings or real estate assets where property management services are provided and for which the real estate owner has operational control, where operational control is defined consistent with the 2018 GRESB® Real Estate Assessment Reference Guide as “having the ability to introduce and implement operating policies, health and safety policies, and/or environmental policies.” [\(back\)](#)
- 56 Note to **IF-RS-000.D** – Dual agency transactions shall be included in both the (1) tenants and (2) real estate owners categories. Subleases shall only be included in the (2) real estate owners category. [\(back\)](#)
- 57 Note to **IF-WM-000.A** – The scope of “residential” shall only include those residential customers that have direct contracts with the entity. For the purposes of this disclosure, residential customers serviced through contracts with a municipality shall be considered in the “municipal” category. The scope of each customer type shall be consistent with the entity’s financial reporting. [\(back\)](#)
- 58 Note to **IF-WM-000.C** – Landfills include landfills that are active and landfills owned by the entity that are closed. The scope of “all other facilities” excludes corporate offices. The scope of each customer type shall be consistent with the entity’s financial reporting. [\(back\)](#)
- 59 Note to **IF-WM-000.D** – “Managed” is defined as the handling of discarded materials, whether those materials are treated or not. The scope of “residential” shall only include those residential customers that have direct contracts with the entity. For the purposes of this disclosure, residential customers serviced through contracts with a municipality shall be considered in the “municipal” category. The scope of each customer type shall be consistent with the entity’s financial reporting. [\(back\)](#)
- 60 Note to **IF-WU-140a.1** – The entity shall discuss the use of and challenges associated with planned and corrective maintenance in its distribution system. [\(back\)](#)
- 61 Note to **IF-WU-420a.2** – The entity shall discuss customer efficiency measures that are required by regulations for each of its relevant markets. [\(back\)](#)
- 62 Note to **IF-WU-450a.3** – The entity shall discuss notable service disruptions such as those that affected a significant population or those of extended duration. [\(back\)](#)
- 63 Note to **IF-WU-000.A** – The number of customers served is defined as the number of individual service agreements for water or wastewater services at single properties, where an individual may own more than one property and be counted as a customer more than once. The entity may disclose additional customer types if such customer types exist that

do not fall within the scope of the customer types described above. Disclosure of the number of customers by customer type shall additionally be broken out by the number of customers (in each customer type) provided with water services, and separately, provided with wastewater services. The entity may additionally disclose the number of customers (in each customer type) by other types of services. [\(back\)](#)

- 64 Note to **IF-WU-000.B** – Water sourced shall be disclosed by the direct source in which the entity obtains water, as classified by the following water source types: groundwater, surface water, ocean water, recycled water, water purchased from third parties, and other sources. [\(back\)](#)
- 65 Note to **IF-WU-000.C** – The amount of water delivered includes drinking water, industrial process water, and recycled water. [\(back\)](#)
- 66 Note to **RR-BI-000.C** – The amount of feedstock consumed in production is defined as feedstock purchases adjusted for changes in inventory throughout the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)
- 67 Note to **RR-FM-160a.1** – The entity shall describe forestry management practices for non-certified forestlands, and for any forest management certifications that were suspended or terminated, the entity shall disclose the number, associated acreage, and stated reason for suspension or termination. [\(back\)](#)
- 68 Note to **RR-FM-000.B** – The entity may additionally note if it uses other units of measure to define its standing timber inventory, and it shall disclose any conversion factors used. [\(back\)](#)
- 69 Note to **RR-FM-000.C** – The entity may additionally note if it uses other units of measure to define its timber harvest volume, and it shall disclose any conversion factors used. [\(back\)](#)
- 70 Note to **RR-PP-130a.1** – The entity shall discuss risks and uncertainties associated with the use of biomass for energy. [\(back\)](#)
- 71 Note to **RR-PP-430a.1** – The entity shall discuss due diligence practices for fibre that is not from certified forestlands or certified to other fibre sourcing standards. [\(back\)](#)
- 72 Note to **RR-PP-430a.2** – The entity shall discuss its strategy to incorporate environmental lifecycle analyses into decisions to source recycled and recovered fibre versus virgin fibre. [\(back\)](#)
- 73 Note to **RR-PP-000.C** – The scope of wood-fibre-based raw materials includes all inputs that are processed to be sold as a finished good, including recycled raw materials, virgin raw materials, and goods that will be consumed directly in the production process and excluding biomass for energy use. [\(back\)](#)
- 74 Note to **RR-ST-000.B** – Solar energy systems are defined as any system that converts sunlight into electrical energy, including photovoltaic (PV) systems and solar thermal electric systems. Completed systems are defined by the entity, consistent with its existing public disclosure of completed systems. [\(back\)](#)

- 75 Note to **RR-ST-000.C** – Project development assets are defined by the entity, consistent with its existing public disclosure of project development assets, regardless of terminology used by the entity (e.g., “Project assets,” “Project assets—plants and land,” “Solar Energy Systems Held for Development and Sale,” etc.). At a minimum, project development assets include assets that are associated with solar energy systems that are under development or fully developed, owned by the entity, and held for sale or intended to be sold to a third party prior to the execution of a definitive sales agreement, and assets that consist primarily of capitalised costs incurred in connection with the development of solar energy systems. [\(back\)](#)
- 76 Note to **RR-WT-000.A** – Wind turbine class is defined by the International Electrotechnical Commission’s IEC 61400-1, Edition 3.0—Design requirements. Wind turbine class shall be determined by the rating of the turbine. [\(back\)](#)
- 77 Note to **RR-WT-000.B** – Wind turbine class is defined by the International Electrotechnical Commission’s IEC 61400-1, Edition 3.0—Design requirements. Wind turbine class shall be determined by the rating of the turbine. [\(back\)](#)
- 78 Note to **RR-WT-000.C** – Turbine backlog is defined by the entity, consistent with its existing public disclosure of order backlog. Turbine backlog excludes any backlog amounts resulting from operating and maintenance agreements or other service agreements. [\(back\)](#)
- 79 Note to **RR-WT-000.D** – Turbine backlog is defined by the entity, consistent with its existing public disclosure of order backlog. Turbine backlog excludes any backlog amounts resulting from operating and maintenance agreements or other service agreements. [\(back\)](#)
- 80 Note to **RT-AE-000.A** – Production should be disclosed as the number of units produced by product category, where relevant product categories include (1) ground vehicles, (2) aircraft, (3) marine vehicles, (4) vehicle and aircraft components, and (5) space and weapons systems. [\(back\)](#)
- 81 Note to **RT-CH-130a.1** – The entity shall discuss its efforts to reduce energy consumption and/or improve energy efficiency throughout the production processes. [\(back\)](#)
- 82 Note to **RT-CH-000.A** – Production should be disclosed for each of the entity’s reportable segments, where production is reported as weight for solid products and volume for liquid and gas products. [\(back\)](#)
- 83 Note to **RT-CP-000.A** – Relevant substrates include paper and/or wood fibre, glass, metal, and petroleum-based substrates (i.e., polymers). [\(back\)](#)
- 84 Note to **RT-EE-410a.1** – Disclosure shall include a discussion of approach to managing the use of IEC 62474 declarable substances. [\(back\)](#)
- 85 Note to **RT-EE-000.A** – Production should be disclosed as number of units produced by product category, where relevant product categories include energy generation, energy delivery, and lighting and indoor climate control electronics. [\(back\)](#)

- 86 Note to **RT-IG-410a.4** – The entity shall discuss how it manages fleet fuel economy and emissions risks and opportunities. [\(back\)](#)
- 87 Note to **RT-IG-000.A** – At a minimum, the entity should indicate the number of units produced for the following product categories: (1) vehicles and agricultural and construction equipment, (2) engines and power generation equipment, and (3) parts and components. [\(back\)](#)
- 88 Note to **SV-CA-000.C** – The number of active customers shall be considered as the number for which there was at least one financial transaction (bet, deposit, withdraw) with real currency within the reporting period, where real currency is defined by the U.S. Financial Crimes Enforcement Network. [\(back\)](#)
- 89 Note to **SV-HL-000.B** – Measured as number of (1) occupied room-nights divided by (2) available room-nights across all properties. [\(back\)](#)
- 90 Note to **SV-HL-000.C** – The scope includes facilities that were owned, operated, leased, or franchised during any portion of the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)
- 91 Note to **SV-LF-000.A** – Attendance is the total number of visits by customers to any leisure facility in the entity's portfolio that is branded by the operator (i.e., licensed) or in which it has controlling ownership. [\(back\)](#)
- 92 Note to **SV-LF-000.B** – Customer-days is the aggregate total amount of time customers spent visiting any leisure facility in the entity's portfolio, calculated as the sum of the visitation time of each customer. For facilities that sell day passes (e.g., amusement parks), but do not track entry and exit times, the hours of operation open to guests can be used for estimation. For facilities that sell single unit entry passes (e.g., film theatres), the average visitation time can be used for estimation. [\(back\)](#)
- 93 Note to **TC-HW-410a.1** – Disclosure shall include a discussion of the approach to managing the use of IEC 62474 declarable substances. [\(back\)](#)
- 94 Note to **TC-HW-410a.2** – Disclosure shall include a discussion of efforts to incorporate environmentally focused principles into product design. [\(back\)](#)
- 95 Note to **TC-HW-000.A** – The entity shall indicate the number of units produced during the reporting period and whether they were manufactured in its own facilities or produced by contract manufacturers or suppliers. Categories may include communications equipment, components, computer hardware, computer peripherals, computer storage, consumer electronics, other hardware, printing & imaging, and transaction management systems. [\(back\)](#)
- 96 Note to **TC-IM-000.A** – The entity shall define and disclose a basic measure of customer activity suitable for its business activities. This may include, but is not limited to, sales transactions, purchase transactions, number of searches, monthly active users, or page views. [\(back\)](#)

- 97 Note to **TC-IM-000.B** – Data processing capacity shall be reported in units of measure typically tracked by the entity or used as the basis for contracting software and IT services, such as Million Service Units (MSUs), Million Instructions per Second (MIPS), Mega FloatingPoint Operations per Second (MFLOPS), compute cycles, or other. Alternatively, the entity may disclose owned and outsourced data processing needs in other units of measure, such as rack space or data centre square footage. The percentage outsourced shall include o-premise cloud services, those that are hosted on public cloud, and those that are residing in colocation data centres. (back)
- 98 Note to **TC-IM-000.C** – The percentage outsourced shall include on-premise cloud services, those that are hosted on public cloud, and those that are residing in colocation data centres. (back)
- 99 Note to **TC-SC-410a.1** – Disclosure shall include a discussion of efforts to minimise usage of these substances. (back)
- 100 Note to **TC-SC-410a.2** – Disclosure shall include a discussion of efforts to design for new and emerging usage patterns with respect to energy efficiency in all product categories (i.e., applications for servers, desktops, laptops, workstations, netbooks, tablets, mobile phones, and storage). (back)
- 101 Note to **TC-SC-000.A** – The entity shall disclose total production from its own manufacturing facilities and those with which it contracts for manufacturing services. For semiconductor equipment manufacturers the total production shall be reported on a per unit basis. For semiconductor device manufacturers the total production shall be reported consistent with International SEMATECH Manufacturing Initiative's Semiconductor Key Environment Performance Indicators Guidance, Technology Transfer #09125069A-ENG. (back)
- 102 Note to **TC-SI-550a.1** – Disclosure shall include a description of each significant performance issue or service disruption and any corrective actions taken to prevent future disruptions. (back)
- 103 Note to **TC-SI-000.B** – Data processing capacity shall be reported in units of measure typically tracked by the entity or used as the basis for contracting software and IT services, such as Million Service Units (MSUs), Million Instructions per Second (MIPS), Mega Floating- Point Operations per Second (MFLOPS), compute cycles, or other. Alternatively, the entity may disclose owned and outsourced data processing needs in other units of measure, such as rack space or data centre square footage. The percentage outsourced shall include on-premise cloud services, those that are hosted on public cloud, and those that are residing in colocation data centres. (back)
- 104 Note to **TC-SI-000.C** – The percentage outsourced shall include On-Premise cloud services, those that are hosted on public cloud, and those that are residing in colocation data centres. (back)
- 105 Note to **TC-TL-550a.1** – Disclosure shall include a description of each significant performance issue or service disruption and any corrective actions taken to prevent future

disruptions. [\(back\)](#)

106 Note to **TC-TL-000.A** – Wireless subscribers are defined as those customers that contract with the entity for mobile services, which include cellular phone service and/or wireless data service. [\(back\)](#)

107 Note to **TC-TL-000.B** – Wireline subscribers are defined as those customers that contract with the entity for fixed line phone services. [\(back\)](#)

108 Note to **TC-TL-000.C** – Broadband subscribers are defined as those customers that contract with the entity for fixed line cable and internet services, which include WiFi connections. [\(back\)](#)

109 Note to **TR-AF-000.A** – Revenue ton kilometres (RTK) is defined as one metric ton of revenue traffic transported one kilometre. RTK is computed by multiplying the vehicle-kilometres travelled on each leg by the number of tons of revenue traffic carried on that leg. [\(back\)](#)

110 Note to **TR-AF-000.B** – Load factor is a measure of capacity utilisation and is calculated as kilometres travelled by cargo divided by total kilometres travelled. [\(back\)](#)

111 Note to **TR-AL-000.A** – Available seat kilometres (ASK) is defined as the maximum potential cumulative kilometres travelled by passengers (that is, kilometres travelled by occupied and unoccupied seats). [\(back\)](#)

112 Note to **TR-AL-000.B** – Load factor is a measure of capacity utilisation and is calculated as passenger kilometres travelled divided by available seat kilometres. [\(back\)](#)

113 Note to **TR-AL-000.C** – Revenue passenger kilometres (RPK) is defined as the cumulative total kilometres travelled by revenue passengers. A revenue passenger is a passenger for whose transportation an air carrier receives commercial remuneration. [\(back\)](#)

114 Note to **TR-AL-000.D** – Revenue ton kilometres (RTK) is defined as one metric ton of revenue traffic transported one kilometre. RTK is computed by multiplying the aircraft kilometres flown on each flight stage by the number of metric tons of revenue traffic carried on that flight stage (for example, passengers, baggage, freight, and mail). [\(back\)](#)

115 Note to **TR-CR-000.B** – The total number of available rental days is the number of 24-hour periods—or portions thereof—that the entity offered vehicles for rental during the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)

116 Note to **TR-CR-000.C** – The average rental fleet size is the simple average of the maximum number of vehicles available for rental each month during the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)

117 Note to **TR-CL-000.A** – Available lower berth (ALB) is a measure of the standard capacity of a cruise ship, usually assuming two people per available cabin. It accounts for changes in fleet size, itineraries, and passenger capacity. Available lower berth kilometres (ALB-KM) are computed by multiplying ALB on each leg by the number of kilometres travelled on that leg. [\(back\)](#)

- 118 Note to **TR-CL-000.B** – Average passenger cruise days (APCD) is computed as the number of available lower berths on a ship multiplied by the number of days that those berths are available to passengers during the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)
- 119 Note to **TR-CL-000.C** – Shipboard employees are those employees who work aboard the entity's vessels (including direct and contract employees) during the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)
- 120 Note to **TR-CL-000.D** – Cruise passengers is the number of passengers aboard the entity's vessels, excluding employees. [\(back\)](#)
- 121 Note to **TR-MT-000.A** – Shipboard employees are those employees who work aboard the entity's vessels (including direct and contract employees) during the reporting period. [\(back\)](#)
- 122 Note to **TR-MT-000.C** – Operating days are calculated as the number of available days in a reporting period minus the aggregate number of days that the vessels are off-hire due to unforeseen circumstances (i.e., a measure of days in a reporting period during which vessels actually generate revenue). [\(back\)](#)
- 123 Note to **TR-MT-000.D** – Deadweight tonnage is the sum, for all of the entity's vessels, of the difference in displacement in deadweight tons between the light displacement and the actual loaded displacement. [\(back\)](#)
- 124 Note to **TR-RA-000.A** – The scope of disclosure includes all carloads that the entity transported in conjunction with the shipping of freight (including freight that is not containerised) for its customers. [\(back\)](#)
- 125 Note to **TR-RA-000.B** – Intermodal units include shipping containers and truck trailers that can be transported across modes of transportation. [\(back\)](#)
- 126 Note to **TR-RA-000.C** – Track kilometres include route kilometres (the total extent of routes available for trains to operate) and take into account multiple track routes such that each route kilometre with double track is considered two track kilometres. [\(back\)](#)
- 127 Note to **TR-RA-000.D** – A revenue tonne-kilometre (RTK) is defined as one metric ton of revenue traffic transported one kilometre. Revenue tonne-kilometres are calculated by multiplying the kilometres travelled on each leg by the number of metric tons of revenue traffic carried on that leg. [\(back\)](#)
- 128 Note to **TR-RO-000.A** – A revenue tonne-kilometre (RTK) is defined as one metric ton of revenue traffic transported one kilometre. RTK is computed by multiplying the vehicle-kilometres travelled on each leg by the number of metric tons of revenue traffic carried on that leg. [\(back\)](#)
- 129 Note to **TR-RO-000.B** – Load factor is a measure of capacity utilisation and is calculated as cargo distance travelled divided by total distance travelled. [\(back\)](#)

Share this page

[About us](#)[Around the world](#)[Contact us](#)[Funding](#)[IFRS Accounting Standards](#)[IFRS Sustainability Standards](#)[IFRS translations](#)[Jobs](#)[News and events](#)[Products and services](#)[Projects](#)[Shop](#)[Speaking requests](#)[Supporting implementation](#)[Academics](#)[Accounting profession](#)[Investors](#)[Media](#)[National standard-setters](#)[Preparers](#)[Regulators](#)[Students](#)

Stay in touch

[Register for news alerts](#)

The IFRS Foundation's logo and the *IFRS for SMEs*[®] logo, the IASB[®] logo, the 'Hexagon Device', IAS[®], IASB[®], ISSB[™], IFRIC[®], IFRS[®], *IFRS for SMEs*[®], IFRS Foundation[®], International Accounting Standards[®], International Financial Reporting Standards[®], NIIF[®] and SIC[®] are registered trade marks of the IFRS Foundation, further details of which are available from the IFRS Foundation on request.

The International Financial Reporting Standards Foundation is a not-for-profit corporation incorporated in the State of Delaware, United States of America, with the Delaware Division of Companies (file no: 3353113), and is registered as an overseas company in England and Wales (reg no: FC023235). Head office: Columbus Building, 7 Westferry Circus, Canary Wharf, London E14 4HD, UK.

© IFRS Foundation 2024

[Accessibility](#) | [Privacy and Cookies Policy](#) | [Terms and Conditions](#) | [Trade mark guidelines](#) | [All legal information](#)
| [Using our website](#)

